

**ORACLE®**

PEOPLESOFT

---

# PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Cash Management

---

July 2013

**ORACLE®**

PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Cash Management  
CDSKU fscm92pbr1\_r03\_hosted-doc  
Copyright © 1992, 2013, Oracle and/or its affiliates. All rights reserved.

## **Trademark Notice**

Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates. Other names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

Intel and Intel Xeon are trademarks or registered trademarks of Intel Corporation. All SPARC trademarks are used under license and are trademarks or registered trademarks of SPARC International, Inc. AMD, Opteron, the AMD logo, and the AMD Opteron logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Advanced Micro Devices. UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group.

## **License Restrictions Warranty/Consequential Damages Disclaimer**

This software and related documentation are provided under a license agreement containing restrictions on use and disclosure and are protected by intellectual property laws. Except as expressly permitted in your license agreement or allowed by law, you may not use, copy, reproduce, translate, broadcast, modify, license, transmit, distribute, exhibit, perform, publish, or display any part, in any form, or by any means. Reverse engineering, disassembly, or decompilation of this software, unless required by law for interoperability, is prohibited.

## **Warranty Disclaimer**

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice and is not warranted to be error-free. If you find any errors, please report them to us in writing.

## **Restricted Rights Notice**

If this is software or related documentation that is delivered to the U.S. Government or anyone licensing it on behalf of the U.S. Government, the following notice is applicable:

U.S. GOVERNMENT END USERS: Oracle programs, including any operating system, integrated software, any programs installed on the hardware, and/or documentation, delivered to U.S. Government end users are "commercial computer software" pursuant to the applicable Federal Acquisition Regulation and agency-specific supplemental regulations. As such, use, duplication, disclosure, modification, and adaptation of the programs, including any operating system, integrated software, any programs installed on the hardware, and/or documentation, shall be subject to license terms and license restrictions applicable to the programs. No other rights are granted to the U.S. Government.

## **Hazardous Applications Notice**

This software or hardware is developed for general use in a variety of information management applications. It is not developed or intended for use in any inherently dangerous applications, including applications that may create a risk of personal injury. If you use this software or hardware in dangerous applications, then you shall be responsible to take all appropriate fail-safe, backup, redundancy, and other measures to ensure its safe use. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates disclaim any liability for any damages caused by use of this software or hardware in dangerous applications.

## **Third Party Content, Products, and Services Disclaimer**

This software or hardware and documentation may provide access to or information on content, products, and services from third parties. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates are not responsible for and expressly disclaim all warranties of any kind with respect to third-party content, products, and services. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates will not be responsible for any loss, costs, or damages incurred due to your access to or use of third-party content, products, or services.

## **Alpha and Beta Draft Documentation Notice**

If this document is in preproduction status:

This documentation is in preproduction status and is intended for demonstration and preliminary use only. It may not be specific to the hardware on which you are using the software. Oracle Corporation and its affiliates are not responsible for and expressly disclaim all warranties of any kind with respect to this documentation and will not be responsible for any loss, costs, or damages incurred due to the use of this documentation.



# Contents

- Preface.....xiii**
  - Understanding the PeopleSoft Online Help and PeopleBooks.....xiii
  - PeopleSoft Hosted Documentation.....xiii
  - Locally Installed Help.....xiii
  - Downloadable PeopleBook PDF Files.....xiii
  - Common Help Documentation.....xiii
  - Field and Control Definitions.....xiv
  - Typographical Conventions.....xiv
  - ISO Country and Currency Codes.....xv
  - Region and Industry Identifiers.....xv
  - Access to Oracle Support.....xvi
  - Documentation Accessibility.....xvi
  - Using and Managing the PeopleSoft Online Help.....xvi
  - PeopleSoft FSCM Related Links.....xvi
  - Contact Us.....xvii
  - Follow Us.....xvii
- Chapter 1: Getting Started with PeopleSoft Cash Management..... 19**
  - Cash Management Business Processes..... 19
  - Cash Management Integrations..... 19
  - Cash Management Implementation..... 20
- Chapter 2: Defining Cash Management Processing Options..... 23**
  - Establishing Cash Management Options..... 23
  - Defining Treasury Business Unit Options..... 25
    - Page Used to Define Treasury Business Unit Options..... 25
    - Treasury Options Page..... 26
  - Defining Cross-Referenced Currency Codes and Holiday List IDs..... 30
    - Page Used to Define Cross-Referenced Currency Codes and Holiday List IDs..... 30
    - Currency Code - Holiday List ID Cross Reference Page..... 30
  - Defining Market Rates..... 31
    - Pages Used to Define Market Rates..... 31
    - Market Rates Page..... 32
    - Market Rates - Market Rate Page..... 33
    - Rate Definition Page..... 35
  - Securing ChartFields for PeopleSoft Treasury..... 35
  - Integrating PeopleSoft Treasury with JD Edwards General Accounting..... 35
- Chapter 3: Navigating in Treasury Management.....37**
  - Navigating in Treasury Management..... 37
    - Pages Used to Navigate in Treasury Management..... 37
- Chapter 4: Managing Facilities..... 39**
  - Understanding Facilities..... 39
  - Understanding Facility Review..... 39
  - Prerequisites..... 39
  - Defining Facilities..... 40
    - Pages Used to Define Facilities..... 41
    - Memo Attributes Page..... 41
    - Facility Definition Page..... 42
  - Monitoring Facilities..... 44

Pages Used to Monitor Facilities.....	44
Schedule Facility Review Page.....	44
<b>Chapter 5: Managing Fees and Account Analysis.....</b>	<b>47</b>
Understanding Managing Fees and Account Analysis.....	47
Common Elements Used to Manage Fees and Analyze Accounts.....	48
Setting Up Fee Structures.....	49
Pages Used to Set Up Fee Structure.....	49
Fee Transaction Tables Page.....	50
Fee Codes Page.....	50
SQL Where Criteria Page.....	53
Fee Structures - Structure Accounts Page.....	53
Fee Structures - Structure Definition Page.....	54
Fee Calculation Type – Fee Structure Page.....	55
Comparing Fee Structures.....	55
Pages Used to Compare Fee Structures.....	56
Fee Structure Comparison Page.....	56
Performing Account Analysis.....	56
Pages Used to Perform Account Analysis.....	57
Common Elements Used to Perform Account Analysis.....	57
Creating Statements Manually.....	58
Fee Statements - Information Page.....	58
Fee Statements - Rates Page.....	59
Fee Statements - Balance Compensation Page.....	60
Fee Statements - Balance Adjustments Page.....	60
Fee Statements - Service Charges Page.....	61
Fee Statements - Service Adjustments Page.....	63
Automatically Importing Statement Information.....	64
Account Analysis Validation Page.....	64
Using the Account Analysis Manager.....	65
Page Used for the Account Analysis Manager.....	65
Account Analysis Manager Page.....	65
Creating Fee Entries.....	66
Pages Used to Create Fee Entries.....	66
Enter Fees Page.....	67
<b>Chapter 6: Using Cash Forecasting to Manage Cash Positions.....</b>	<b>69</b>
Understanding Cash Forecasting.....	69
Setting Up Cash Forecasting.....	70
Pages Used to Set Up Cash Forecasting.....	70
Defining Time Sets.....	72
Define Time Sets Page.....	72
Position Field Types Page.....	74
Understanding Forecast Mapping.....	75
Forecast Mapping Page.....	76
Position Source Set Page.....	77
Setting Up Position Sources.....	78
Position Source Page.....	79
Position Source Contacts Page.....	80
Drill Back Details Page.....	80
Selection Criteria Page.....	82
Working with Forecast Rules.....	84
Forecast Rules Page.....	84

Calculate Time Spans Page.....	86
Create Position Source SQL Page.....	87
Worksheet Definition Page.....	87
Worksheet Line Items Page.....	90
Generating the Cash Forecast.....	92
Pages Used to Generate the Cash Forecast.....	92
Understanding Manual Positions.....	93
Enter Manual Position Page.....	93
Understanding Cash Forecast Calculations.....	95
Schedule Cash Forecast Page.....	96
Working with Cash Forecasting Presentation and Results.....	97
Pages Used to Work with Cash Forecasting Presentation and Results.....	97
Understanding Cash Forecasting Presentation and Results.....	98
Cash Forecasting Results Page.....	100
Understanding the Cash Forecast Search.....	112
Cash Forecast Search Page.....	112
Cash Forecast User Preferences Page.....	116
Performing the Cash Sweep from Cash Forecast Results.....	117
Understanding Copy Cash Forecast Results.....	118
Copy Cash Forecast Results Page.....	118
Copying Cash Forecast Results.....	119
Importing Cash Forecast Data.....	122
Integrating External Sources into Cash Forecasting.....	122
Page Used to Import Cash Forecasting Data.....	123
Setting Up Integration Broker to Import Cash Forecast Data.....	124
Import Cash Forecast Data Page.....	125
Creating Cash Forecast Reports.....	128
Pages Used to Create Cash Forecast Reports.....	129
Worksheet Definition (Report) Page.....	129
Cash Position Report Page.....	130
Cash Position Variance Report Page.....	132
<b>Chapter 7: Managing Bilateral Netting.....</b>	<b>135</b>
Understanding the Bilateral Netting Process.....	135
Discounts Applied to Netted Transactions.....	137
Common Elements Used to Manage Bilateral Netting.....	139
Prerequisites.....	140
Setting Up Bilateral Nets.....	141
Pages Used to Set Up Bilateral Nets.....	142
Prerequisites.....	143
Netting Participants Page.....	143
Add Multiple Suppliers Page.....	145
Add Multiple Customers Page.....	145
Netting Rules Page.....	146
Netting Contracts - Primary Information Page.....	147
Netting Contracts - Settlement Information Page.....	149
Netting Exclusion Parameters Page.....	150
Selecting Nets Automatically.....	150
Pages Used to Automatically Select Nets.....	150
Automatic Netting Selection Page.....	151
Creating Nets Manually.....	151
Pages Used to Manually Create Nets.....	152

Common Elements Used to Manually Create Nets.....	152
Manual Selection Page.....	152
Manual Select Netting - Settlement Inst Page.....	153
Manual Select Netting - Payables Page.....	154
Adding Multiple Vouchers for Payables Manual Netting.....	155
Manual Select Netting - Receivables Page.....	155
Adding Multiple Items for Receivables Manual Netting.....	156
Adjusting Manually Netted Information.....	156
Pages Used to Adjust Manually Netted Information.....	157
Common Elements Used to Adjust Manually Netted Information.....	157
Manual Adjustment Page.....	157
Adjust Netting - Settlement Instr Page.....	159
Adjust Netting - Payables Page.....	159
Adjust Netting - Receivables Page.....	160
Processing Multicurrency Nets.....	161
Multicurrency Netting Functionality.....	161
Prerequisites.....	162
Processing Multicurrency Nets.....	162
Administering Nets.....	164
Pages Used to Administer Nets.....	164
Approve Netting Page.....	164
Cancel Netting Page.....	165
Closing Nets.....	165
Understanding the Net Closing Process in Pay Cycle Manager.....	166
Inquiring on Bilateral Nets.....	166
Pages Used to Inquire on Bilateral Nets.....	166
<b>Chapter 8: Performing Cash Sweep to Manage Liquidity.....</b>	<b>167</b>
Understanding Cash Sweep Functionality.....	167
Prerequisites.....	168
Defining and Approving a Cash Sweep Structure.....	168
Pages Used to Define and Approve a Cash Sweep Structure.....	169
Overview of a Cash Sweep Structure.....	169
Cash Sweep Structure Page.....	173
Approve Cash Sweep Structure Page.....	178
Processing Cash Sweep and Reviewing the Results.....	180
Pages Used to Run the Cash Sweep Process and Review the Results.....	180
Overview of the Cash Sweep Processing and Results.....	180
Cash Sweep Request Page.....	181
Cash Sweep Results Page.....	182
Generating Cash Sweep Reports.....	185
Pages Used to Generate Cash Sweep Reports.....	186
<b>Chapter 9: Transferring Funds.....</b>	<b>187</b>
Understanding the Funds Transfer Process.....	187
Common Elements Used to Transfer Funds.....	191
Prerequisites.....	191
Creating and Approving Funds Transfer Templates.....	191
Pages Used to Create and Approve Funds Transfer Templates.....	192
Enter Transfer Templates - Origin Page.....	193
Prenotification Details Page.....	195
Enter Transfer Templates - Destination Page.....	195
Enter Transfer Templates - Bank Routings Page.....	199

Enter Transfer Templates - Addenda Page.....	199
Enter Transfer Templates - Detailed Description Page.....	199
Enter Transfer Templates - Template Field Security Page.....	200
Managing Funds Transfer Template Approval.....	201
Page Used to Manage Funds Transfer Template Approval.....	201
Approve Transfer Templates Page.....	201
Beginning Transfer Funds Requests.....	202
Page Used to Begin a Transfer Funds Request.....	202
Transfer Funds Page.....	202
Creating EFT Requests.....	203
Pages Used to Create an EFT Request.....	203
EFT Request - Origin Page.....	204
EFT Request - Destination Page.....	206
Creating Fee Entries for EFT Requests.....	210
Pages Used to Create Fee Entries for EFT Requests.....	210
Creating Bank Account Transfers.....	210
Pages Used to Create Bank Account Transfers.....	210
Understanding Bank Account Transfers.....	211
Prerequisites.....	211
Bank Account Transfer Page.....	212
Accounting Events Page.....	214
Reviewing Repetitive Transfers.....	215
Page Used to Review Repetitive Transfers.....	215
Review Repetitive Templates Page.....	215
<b>Chapter 10: Working with Settlements.....</b>	<b>217</b>
Understanding the Settlements Payment Process.....	217
Settlement Workflow.....	218
Settlement Approval.....	218
Common Elements Used to Work with Settlements.....	219
Selecting Settlements for Outbound Submission.....	220
Pages Used to Select Settlements.....	221
Selecting Settlements Page.....	221
Sanction Review Page.....	223
Treasury Payment Life-Cycle Page.....	224
Manually Approving Settlements.....	226
Pages Used to Manually Approve Settlements.....	226
Approve Settlements Page.....	226
Using the Settlement Manager.....	228
Pages Used with the Settlement Manager.....	228
Settlement Manager Page.....	228
Settlement Manager Preferences Page.....	230
Specifying Deal Settlement Netting.....	230
Page Used to Specify Deal Settlement Netting.....	230
Deal Settlement Netting Page.....	231
<b>Chapter 11: Managing Investment Pools.....</b>	<b>233</b>
Understanding Investment Pools.....	233
Setting Up Investment Pools.....	233
Pages Used to Set Up an Investment Pool.....	234
Pool Information Page.....	234
Concentration Limits Page.....	236
Adding Participants to an Investment Pool.....	237

Pages Used to Add Participants to an Investment Pool.....	238
Pool Participation Information.....	238
Participant Information Page.....	238
Managing Participants' Funds.....	239
Pages Used to Create Participant Transactions.....	240
Understanding Participant Transactions.....	240
Participant Transactions Page.....	241
Approve Transactions Page.....	243
View Transactions Page.....	243
Viewing Investment Pool Positions.....	243
Pages Used to Manage Investment Pool Positions.....	244
Pool Position Page.....	244
Participant Position Page.....	246
Maintaining Pool Positions.....	246
Pages Used to Update Pool Positions.....	247
Updating Investment Pools.....	247
Import Pool Position Page.....	248
Update Pool Position Page.....	250
<b>Chapter 12: Managing Treasury Accounting.....</b>	<b>251</b>
Understanding the Treasury Management Accounting Process.....	251
Accounting Templates.....	251
Accounting Events.....	251
Interunit and Intraunit Processing in Accounting.....	253
Defining and Maintaining Accounting Substitution Rules.....	254
Pages Used to Define and Maintain Substitution Rules.....	255
Substitution Rule Definition Page.....	255
Manage Substitution Rules Page.....	256
Running Accounting Substitution Rule Reports.....	257
Establishing Accounting Templates.....	258
Pages Used to Establish Accounting Templates.....	258
Accounting Templates Page.....	259
Accounting Templates - Substitution Rule Page.....	264
Linking Templates with the Associated Accounting Events.....	264
Processing Accounting Entries.....	265
Page Used to Process Accounting Entries.....	265
Understanding the Inbound and Outbound Transaction Process Flow.....	265
Understanding the Automated Accounting Build Process.....	266
Automated Accounting Page.....	267
Managing Accounting Entries.....	270
Pages Used to Manage Accounting Entries.....	270
Common Elements Used to Manage Accounting Entries.....	270
Accounting Entries Page.....	271
Creating Ad Hoc Accounting Entries.....	277
View/Approve Entries Page.....	279
Accounting Summary Page.....	281
Understanding Reverse Accounting.....	281
Reverse Accounting Request Page.....	282
Reviewing Accounting Information.....	286
Pages Used to Review Accounting Information.....	287
Common Elements Used in Accounting Information.....	287
Treasury Journal Drill Page.....	288

Maintaining Fiscal Period Closure.....	288
Page Used to Maintain Fiscal Period Closure.....	288
Understanding the Fiscal Period Summary Page.....	288
Prerequisites.....	289
Maintaining Fiscal Period Closure.....	289
<b>Chapter 13: Processing VAT Transactions in Treasury Management.....</b>	<b>291</b>
Understanding VAT Processing in Treasury Management.....	291
Prerequisites.....	292
Setting Up VAT for Treasury Management.....	292
Pages Used to Set Up VAT for Treasury Management.....	293
Prerequisites.....	294
Treasury - VAT Options Page.....	294
Editing VAT External Transaction Details.....	295
Pages Used to Edit VAT External Transaction Details.....	295
Effects of Changing VAT Defaults.....	296
Treasury VAT Processing Page.....	296
Creating VAT Transactions for Fees.....	304
Pages Used to Create VAT Transactions for Fees.....	304
Creating VAT Transactions Using Automatic Reconciliation.....	304
Page Used to Create VAT Using Automatic Reconciliation.....	305
Forcing the Reconciliation of VAT-Applicable Transactions.....	305
Managing VAT Accounting.....	305
Pages Used to Manage VAT Accounting.....	306
Processing VAT with Automated Accounting.....	306
Reviewing VAT Accounting Entries.....	306
Treasury VAT Information Page.....	308
Processing Final Treasury Management VAT Transactions.....	311
<b>Chapter 14: Performing In-House Banking Activities.....</b>	<b>313</b>
Prerequisites.....	313
Managing In-House Banking Activities.....	313
Pages Used to Manage In-House Banking Activities.....	314
Calculate Interest Accruals Page.....	314
Generating the In-House Bank Statement Report.....	315
Page Used to Generate the In-House Bank Statement Report.....	315
<b>Chapter 15: Using the Treasury Dashboard.....</b>	<b>317</b>
Understanding the Treasury Dashboard.....	317
Cash Management Dashboard.....	318
Deal Management Dashboard.....	319
Operational Dashboards.....	320
Configuring and Displaying Treasury Dashboards.....	321
Pages Used to Configure and Display Treasury Dashboards.....	321
Dashboard Configuration - Cash Position Page.....	322
Dashboard Configuration - Bank Statement Load Page.....	326
Dashboard Configuration - Payment by Source Page.....	327
Dashboard Configuration - Deals Page.....	329
Dashboard Configuration - Time Series Page.....	331
<b>Chapter 16: Configuring Batch Processes for Cash Management.....</b>	<b>333</b>
Configuring Temporary Tables for Batch Processing.....	333
<b>Appendix A: Delivered Workflows for Cash Management.....</b>	<b>335</b>
Delivered Workflows for Cash Management.....	335
Settlement Selection and Settlement Approval.....	335

<b>Appendix B: Cash Management Reports</b> .....	<b>337</b>
Cash Management Reports: A to Z.....	337

# Preface

---

## Understanding the PeopleSoft Online Help and PeopleBooks

The PeopleSoft Online Help is a website that enables you to view all help content for PeopleSoft Applications and PeopleTools. The help provides standard navigation and full-text searching, as well as context-sensitive online help for PeopleSoft users.

### PeopleSoft Hosted Documentation

You access the PeopleSoft Online Help on Oracle's PeopleSoft Hosted Documentation website, which enables you to access the full help website and context-sensitive help directly from an Oracle hosted server. The hosted documentation is updated on a regular schedule, ensuring that you have access to the most current documentation. This reduces the need to view separate documentation posts for application maintenance on My Oracle Support, because that documentation is now incorporated into the hosted website content. The Hosted Documentation website is available in English only.

### Locally Installed Help

If your organization has firewall restrictions that prevent you from using the Hosted Documentation website, you can install the PeopleSoft Online Help locally. If you install the help locally, you have more control over which documents users can access and you can include links to your organization's custom documentation on help pages.

In addition, if you locally install the PeopleSoft Online Help, you can use any search engine for full-text searching. Your installation documentation includes instructions about how to set up Oracle Secure Enterprise Search for full-text searching.

See *PeopleTools 8.53 Installation* for your database platform, "Installing PeopleSoft Online Help." If you do not use Secure Enterprise Search, see the documentation for your chosen search engine.

---

**Note:** Before users can access the search engine on a locally installed help website, you must enable the Search portlet and link. Click the Help link on any page in the PeopleSoft Online Help for instructions.

---

### Downloadable PeopleBook PDF Files

You can access downloadable PDF versions of the help content in the traditional PeopleBook format. The content in the PeopleBook PDFs is the same as the content in the PeopleSoft Online Help, but it has a different structure and it does not include the interactive navigation features that are available in the online help.

### Common Help Documentation

Common help documentation contains information that applies to multiple applications. The two main types of common help are:

- Application Fundamentals

- Using PeopleSoft Applications

Most product lines provide a set of application fundamentals help topics that discuss essential information about the setup and design of your system. This information applies to many or all applications in the PeopleSoft product line. Whether you are implementing a single application, some combination of applications within the product line, or the entire product line, you should be familiar with the contents of the appropriate application fundamentals help. They provide the starting points for fundamental implementation tasks.

In addition, the *PeopleTools: PeopleSoft Applications User's Guide* introduces you to the various elements of the PeopleSoft Pure Internet Architecture. It also explains how to use the navigational hierarchy, components, and pages to perform basic functions as you navigate through the system. While your application or implementation may differ, the topics in this user's guide provide general information about using PeopleSoft Applications.

## Field and Control Definitions

PeopleSoft documentation includes definitions for most fields and controls that appear on application pages. These definitions describe how to use a field or control, where populated values come from, the effects of selecting certain values, and so on. If a field or control is not defined, then it either requires no additional explanation or is documented in a common elements section earlier in the documentation. For example, the Date field rarely requires additional explanation and may not be defined in the documentation for some pages.

## Typographical Conventions

The following table describes the typographical conventions that are used in the online help.

<i>Typographical Convention</i>	<i>Description</i>
<b>Bold</b>	Highlights PeopleCode function names, business function names, event names, system function names, method names, language constructs, and PeopleCode reserved words that must be included literally in the function call.
<i>Italics</i>	Highlights field values, emphasis, and PeopleSoft or other book-length publication titles. In PeopleCode syntax, italic items are placeholders for arguments that your program must supply.  Italics also highlight references to words or letters, as in the following example: Enter the letter <i>O</i> .
Key+Key	Indicates a key combination action. For example, a plus sign (+) between keys means that you must hold down the first key while you press the second key. For Alt+W, hold down the Alt key while you press the W key.
Monospace font	Highlights a PeopleCode program or other code example.
... (ellipses)	Indicate that the preceding item or series can be repeated any number of times in PeopleCode syntax.

<b>Typographical Convention</b>	<b>Description</b>
{ } (curly braces)	Indicate a choice between two options in PeopleCode syntax. Options are separated by a pipe (   ).
[ ] (square brackets)	Indicate optional items in PeopleCode syntax.
& (ampersand)	When placed before a parameter in PeopleCode syntax, an ampersand indicates that the parameter is an already instantiated object.  Ampersands also precede all PeopleCode variables.
=>	This continuation character has been inserted at the end of a line of code that has been wrapped at the page margin. The code should be viewed or entered as a single, continuous line of code without the continuation character.

## ISO Country and Currency Codes

PeopleSoft Online Help topics use International Organization for Standardization (ISO) country and currency codes to identify country-specific information and monetary amounts.

ISO country codes may appear as country identifiers, and ISO currency codes may appear as currency identifiers in your PeopleSoft documentation. Reference to an ISO country code in your documentation does not imply that your application includes every ISO country code. The following example is a country-specific heading: "(FRA) Hiring an Employee."

The PeopleSoft Currency Code table (CURRENCY\_CD\_TBL) contains sample currency code data. The Currency Code table is based on ISO Standard 4217, "Codes for the representation of currencies," and also relies on ISO country codes in the Country table (COUNTRY\_TBL). The navigation to the pages where you maintain currency code and country information depends on which PeopleSoft applications you are using. To access the pages for maintaining the Currency Code and Country tables, consult the online help for your applications for more information.

## Region and Industry Identifiers

Information that applies only to a specific region or industry is preceded by a standard identifier in parentheses. This identifier typically appears at the beginning of a section heading, but it may also appear at the beginning of a note or other text.

Example of a region-specific heading: "(Latin America) Setting Up Depreciation"

### Region Identifiers

Regions are identified by the region name. The following region identifiers may appear in the PeopleSoft Online Help:

- Asia Pacific
- Europe
- Latin America

- North America

## Industry Identifiers

Industries are identified by the industry name or by an abbreviation for that industry. The following industry identifiers may appear in the PeopleSoft Online Help:

- USF (U.S. Federal)
- E&G (Education and Government)

## Access to Oracle Support

Oracle customers have access to electronic support through My Oracle Support. For information, visit <http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=info> or visit <http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=trs> if you are hearing impaired.

## Documentation Accessibility

For information about Oracle's commitment to accessibility, visit the Oracle Accessibility Program website at <http://www.oracle.com/pls/topic/lookup?ctx=acc&id=docacc>.

---

## Using and Managing the PeopleSoft Online Help

Click the Help link in the universal navigation header of any page in the PeopleSoft Online Help to see information on the following topics:

- What's new in the PeopleSoft Online Help.
- PeopleSoft Online Help accessibility.
- Accessing, navigating, and searching the PeopleSoft Online Help.
- Managing a locally installed PeopleSoft Online Help website.

---

## PeopleSoft FSCM Related Links

Financial and Supply Chain Management information for Secure Enterprise Search (SES) can be found in PeopleSoft Application Fundamentals documentation. For application specific information, see the "Understanding Search Pages within Components (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Application Fundamentals*)" topic.

[My Oracle Support](#)

[PeopleSoft Information Portal on Oracle.com](#)

[PeopleSoft Training from Oracle University](#)

[PeopleSoft Video Feature Overviews on YouTube](#)

---

## Contact Us

Send us your suggestions Please include release numbers for the PeopleTools and applications that you are using.

---

## Follow Us



Get the latest PeopleSoft updates on [Facebook](#).



Follow PeopleSoft on [Twitter@PeopleSoft\\_Info](#).



## Chapter 1

# Getting Started with PeopleSoft Cash Management

---

## Cash Management Business Processes

Cash Management provides the following business processes:

- Bank fee and account analysis.
- Position tree creation and maintenance.
- Cash position calculation and review.
- Transactional bilateral netting.
- Electronic funds transfers (EFTs).
- Cash flow settlement payments.
- Investment Pools.
- Accounting events and accounting entry creation, maintenance, and review.
- VAT (value-added tax) accounting creation and adjustment.
- In-house banking activities.

This documentation covers these business processes in the business process topics.

---

## Cash Management Integrations

Cash Management integrates with the following PeopleSoft applications:

- Deal Management
- Risk Management
- Payables
- Receivables
- General Ledger
- JD Edwards General Ledger

We cover integration considerations in the implementation topics of this documentation.

Supplemental information about third-party application integrations is located on the My Oracle Support web site.

## Cash Management Implementation

PeopleSoft Setup Manager enables you to review a list of setup tasks for your organization for the products that you are implementing. The setup tasks include the components that you must set up, listed in the order in which you must enter data into the component tables, and links to the corresponding documentation.

Cash Management also provides component interfaces to help you load data from your existing system into Cash Management tables. Use the Excel to Component Interface utility with the component interfaces to populate the tables.

This table lists all of the components that have component interfaces:

<b>Component</b>	<b>Component Interfaces</b>	<b>References</b>
Account (GL_ACCOUNT)	ACCOUNT_CF	See "Adding Account Values ( <i>PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Application Fundamentals</i> )".
Alternate Account (ALTACCT)	ALTACCT_CF	See "Adding and Mapping Accounts and Alternate Accounts ( <i>PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Application Fundamentals</i> )".
Operating Unit (OPERATING_UNIT)	OPER_UNIT_CF	See "Operating Unit Page ( <i>PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Application Fundamentals</i> )".
Department (DEPARTMENT)	DEPT_CF	See "Department Page ( <i>PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Application Fundamentals</i> )".
Fund Code (FUND_DEFINITION)	FUND_CF	See "Fund Code Page ( <i>PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Application Fundamentals</i> )".
Statistics Code (STATISTICS_TBL)	STATISTICS_CODE	See "Statistics Code Page ( <i>PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Application Fundamentals</i> )".
Class Field (CLASS_PNL)	CLASS_CF	See "Class Field Page ( <i>PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Application Fundamentals</i> )".
Budget Reference (BUDREF_PNL)	BUDGET_REF	See "Budget Reference Page ( <i>PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Application Fundamentals</i> )".
Program Code (PROGRAM_DEFINITION)	PROGRAM_CF	See "Program Code Page ( <i>PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Application Fundamentals</i> )".
Scenario (BD_SCENARIO)	BUDGET_SCENARIO	See "Scenario Page ( <i>PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Application Fundamentals</i> )".
ChartField 1 (CHARTFIELD1)	CHARTFIELD1	See "ChartField 1 Page ( <i>PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Application Fundamentals</i> )".
ChartField 2 (CHARTFIELD2)	CHARTFIELD2	See "ChartField 1 Page ( <i>PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Application Fundamentals</i> )".

<b>Component</b>	<b>Component Interfaces</b>	<b>References</b>
ChartField 3 (CHARTFIELD3)	CHARTFIELD3	See "ChartField 1 Page ( <i>PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Application Fundamentals</i> )".
Interunit Template (IU_INTER_TMPLT)	IU_INTER_TMPLT	See "InterUnit Template Page ( <i>PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Application Fundamentals</i> )".
Intraunit Template (IU_INTRA_TMPLT)	IU_INTRA_TMPLT	See "Intraunit Template Page ( <i>PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Application Fundamentals</i> )".
Interunit Pair Maintenance (IU_INTER_PR_BASIC)	IU_INTER_PR_BASIC	See "Interunit Pairs ( <i>PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Application Fundamentals</i> )".
Ledgers for a Unit (BUSINESS_UNIT_LED)	EM_BUS_UNIT_LED	See "Defining Ledgers for a Business Unit ( <i>PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Application Fundamentals</i> )".
Value Added Tax Code (TAX_CODE_VAT)	TAX_CODE_VAT	See "Value Added Tax Code Page ( <i>PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Global Options and Reports</i> )".
VAT Accounts by Business Unit (TAX_BU_CODE_VAT)	TAX_BU_CODE_VAT	See "General Ledger Definition - VAT Defaults Page ( <i>PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: General Ledger</i> )".
VAT Entity (VAT_ENTITY_ID)	VAT_ENTITY_ID	See "Setting Up VAT Entities ( <i>PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Global Options and Reports</i> )".
Vat Defaults CI Component (VAT_DEF_CI)	VAT_DEF_CI	See "Establishing VAT Defaults ( <i>PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Global Options and Reports</i> )".
Bank Branch Information (BANK_BRANCHPNL)	TR_BANK_BRANCH_CI	See "Bank Branch Information Page ( <i>PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Banks Setup and Processing</i> )".
Financial Contacts (CONTACTS)	TR_FINANCIAL_CONTACTS_CI	See "Defining Financial Contacts ( <i>PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Banks Setup and Processing</i> )".
Netting Participants (NET_PARTICIPANT)	TR_NET_PARTICIPANT_CI	See <a href="#">Netting Participants Page</a> .
Contact Info (CONTACT_INFO)	CONTACT	See "Setting Up and Maintaining Contacts ( <i>PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Order to Cash Common Information</i> )".
General Information (CUSTOMER_GENERAL)	CUSTOMER_MAIN_CI	See "Adding General Customer Information ( <i>PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Order to Cash Common Information</i> )".
User Preferences (OPR_DEFAULT)	OPR_DEFAULT_FIN	See "Defining Cross-Application User Preferences ( <i>PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Application Fundamentals</i> )".
Fee Codes (DEFINE_FEE_CODE)	TR_DEFINE_FEE_CODE_CI	See <a href="#">Fee Codes Page</a> .

<b>Component</b>	<b>Component Interfaces</b>	<b>References</b>
Settlement Instructions (SETTLEMENT_INSTRUC)	TR_SETTLEMENT_INSTRUCTIONS_CI	See "Beneficiary Bank Page ( <i>PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Banks Setup and Processing</i> )".
Treasury Facility Review (FCLTY_DFN)	TR_FCLTY_BCI	See <a href="#">Defining Facilities</a> .
Reconciliation Exceptions (TR_UNRECON_TRANS)	TR_UNRECON_TRANS	See "Setting Up Reconciliation Tables for Sources and Rules ( <i>PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Banks Setup and Processing</i> )".
Treasury Position Time Span (POS_TIME_SPAN_PNL)	TR_POS_TIME_SPAN	See "Setting Up Dealing Trees and Deal Positions ( <i>PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Deal Management</i> )".
Create Position SQL (POS_CREATE_SQL)	TR_POS_CREATE_SQL	See "Setting Up Dealing Trees and Deal Positions ( <i>PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Deal Management</i> )".
Manual Position Entry (POS_GENERIC_ENTRY)	TR_MANUAL_POSITION_ENTRY_CI	See "Setting Up Dealing Trees and Deal Positions ( <i>PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Deal Management</i> )".
Netting Accounts (BANK_PNLNET)	TR_NETTING_ACCOUNTS_CI	See "Defining Netting Accounts ( <i>PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Banks Setup and Processing</i> )".
External Bank Accounts (BANK_EXTERNAL)	TR_EXTERNAL_ACCOUNTS_CI	See "Defining External Account Information ( <i>PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Banks Setup and Processing</i> )".
External Transactions (GEN_TRAN_UPDT)	TR_EXTERNAL_TRANSACTIONS_CI	See "Reconciling Externally Generated Transactions ( <i>PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Banks Setup and Processing</i> )".

## Other Sources of Information

In the planning phase of your implementation, take advantage of all PeopleSoft sources of information, including the installation guides and troubleshooting information. A complete list of these resources appears in the preface in *PeopleTools: PeopleBooks and the PeopleSoft Online Library*, with information about where to find the most current version of each.

Other resources appear in PeopleTools documentation. See the product documentation for *PeopleTools: PeopleSoft Setup Manager*.

For information about using the Excel-to-Component Interface Utility, the product documentation for *PeopleSoft Enterprise Components*.

## Related Links

"Other Sources of Information (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Banks Setup and Processing*)"

## Chapter 2

# Defining Cash Management Processing Options

## Establishing Cash Management Options

This table provides a listing of custom navigation pages that are used to navigate to setup pages in Cash Management. These pages can be accessed through folders found on the Treasury Definitions Center page. This table lists the order the various components should be defined.

<b>Page Name</b>	<b>Navigation</b>	<b>Usage</b>	<b>Setup Information</b>
Treasury Definitions Center	Treasury Definitions Center	Access links, grouped by logical function, to setup pages for Treasury Management products. For easier retrieval, you can save this page in the My Favorites folder on the portal navigation menu.	
Banks	Click Banks.	Access pages to set up comprehensive bank information (such as bank, bank account, and bank branch information).	<p>See "Understanding Bank Setup (<i>PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Banks Setup and Processing</i>)".</p> <p>See "Defining Counterparty Information (<i>PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Banks Setup and Processing</i>)".</p> <p>See "Understanding External, Internal, and Netting Accounts (<i>PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Banks Setup and Processing</i>)".</p> <p>See "Defining Internal Account Information (<i>PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Banks Setup and Processing</i>)".</p> <p>See "Defining Common Journal Definitions (<i>PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Application Fundamentals</i>)".</p>
Business Unit Related	Click Business Unit Related.	Access the Treasury Options page and specify Treasury Management-specific options for your business units.	See <a href="#">Defining Treasury Business Unit Options</a> .

<b>Page Name</b>	<b>Navigation</b>	<b>Usage</b>	<b>Setup Information</b>
Fees	Click Fees.	Access pages to set up fee codes, tables, and structures.	See <a href="#">Setting Up Fee Structures</a> .
Facilities	Click Facilities.	Access pages to set up and update facility information.	See <a href="#">Defining Facilities</a> .
Settlements/Netting	Click Settlements/Netting.	Access pages to set up bilateral netting rules, participants, and contracts.	See <a href="#">Setting Up Bilateral Nets</a> .
Position Worksheet	Click Position Worksheet.	Access pages to set up field types, position sources, forecast mapping, forecast rules, position source sets, time sets, and cash forecast worksheet definitions.	See <a href="#">Setting Up Cash Forecasting</a> .
Funds Transfer	Click Funds Transfer.	Access pages to set up and approve funds transfer templates.	See <a href="#">Creating and Approving Funds Transfer Templates</a> .
Bank Integration	Click Bank Integration.	Access pages to define and manage integration information between PeopleSoft and your banks, for your bank statement and payment activities.	See "Understanding Electronic Banking ( <i>PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Financial Gateway</i> )".
Rates	Click Rates.	Access pages to set up exchange rate, market rates, rate reset codes, and currency/holiday cross-reference information.	See <a href="#">Defining Cross-Referenced Currency Codes and Holiday List IDs</a> . See <a href="#">Defining Market Rates</a> .
Accounting	Click Accounting.	Access pages to set up accounting templates and events.	See <a href="#">Establishing Accounting Templates</a> .
Investment Pools	Click Investment Pools.	Access pages to set up and update investment pool and participant information.	See <a href="#">Understanding Investment Pools</a> .
Deals and Instrument Types	Click Deals/Instrument Types.	Define deal instruments and templates, and perform deal portfolio activities.	See "Understanding Instruments Types and Instrument Templates ( <i>PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Deal Management</i> )". See "Understanding the Deal Capture Process ( <i>PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Deal Management</i> )".
Analytics	Click Analytics.	Define risk management analytic functions, calculations, and supplier information.	See "Understanding the Risk Analysis Process ( <i>PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Risk Management</i> )".

<b>Page Name</b>	<b>Navigation</b>	<b>Usage</b>	<b>Setup Information</b>
Hedges	Click Hedges.	Set up hedge groups, item sources, and strategies.	See "Understanding Hedge Creation and Maintenance ( <i>PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Risk Management</i> )".

This table lists additional pages used for setting up Cash Management that are not listed in the Treasury Definitions Center page.

<b>Page Name</b>	<b>Navigation</b>	<b>Usage</b>	<b>Setup Information</b>
Installation Options – Treasury	Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Install, Installation Options, Treasury	Define integration options for accounting and Financial Gateway functionality.	See "Installation Options - Treasury Page ( <i>PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Application Fundamentals</i> )".
Business Calendar	Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Common Definitions, Calendars/Schedules, Business Calendar	Indicate business days, non-business days, and holidays for use in Cash Management and Deal Management processing functions.	See "Defining Business Calendars ( <i>PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Application Fundamentals</i> )".
Bank Statement Accounting	Banking, Administer Reconciliation, Bank Statement Accounting	Define bank statement accounting match rules. The system searches the bank statement addenda for the transactional text you define, and automatically assigns a default accounting template to the transaction.	See "Setting Up Cash Management Bank Statement Accounting Functionality ( <i>PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Banks Setup and Processing</i> )".
ChartField Security	Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Security, ChartField Security	Set up ChartField security for Treasury components.	See "Understanding ChartField Security ( <i>PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Application Fundamentals</i> )".

## Defining Treasury Business Unit Options

You must define default processing options (including VAT) for business units for use in Cash Management, Deal Management, and Risk Management.

**Note:** All Treasury applications use general ledger business units.

### Page Used to Define Treasury Business Unit Options

<b>Page Name</b>	<b>Definition Name</b>	<b>Navigation</b>	<b>Usage</b>
Treasury Options	BUS_UNIT_OPT_TR	Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Business Unit Related, Treasury, Treasury Options	Set up default processing options specific to your Treasury business units.

## Treasury Options Page

Use the Treasury Options page (BUS\_UNIT\_OPT\_TR) to set up default processing options specific to your Treasury business units.

### Navigation

Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Business Unit Related, Treasury, Treasury Options

### Image: Treasury Options page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Treasury Options page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

The screenshot shows the 'Treasury Options' page for Business Unit US001, Description US001 NEW YORK OPERATIONS. The page is organized into several sections:

- Deals Approvals:** Includes checkboxes for 'Enable Deal Preview/Approve', 'Enable Auto Confirmation', and 'Enable Invalid Confirmation'. The 'Deal Approval Method' is set to 'Approval Framework'.
- Outbound EDI Setup:** Includes 'Internal Entity Code' (GLBU) and 'External Entity Code' (BANK).
- Base Currency Revaluation:** Includes '\*Market Rate Index' (MODEL) and '\*Exchange Rate Type' (CRRNT).
- Bank Transfer Accounting:** Includes a checked 'Requires Review' checkbox, '\*Journal Template' (TR\_ENTRIES), and 'BU Document Sequencing Enabled' (unchecked). It also has fields for 'From Document Type' and 'To Document Type'.
- Settlement Approvals:** Includes a checked 'Settlement Approvals' checkbox, 'Settlement Approval Method' (Manual), and a checked 'Same User Select and Approve' checkbox.
- Accounting:** Includes a 'Review Manual Updates' checkbox and a 'Calendar ID' field.
- Auto-Schedule Position Update:** Includes an unchecked 'Auto-Schedule Position Update' checkbox, 'Server Name' (PSNT), 'Position Update Run Control ID' (AUTO-POSITION), and '\*Hedge Type' (FAS 133 Hedge).

### Deal Approvals

When you select Workflow processing options for Deal Management, the system generates workflow notifications using the specified Deal Approval Method when deals meet certain conditions.

#### Enable Deal Preview/Approve

Select this check box to notify users of deals that require preview or approval. The system generates notifications, based on the deal approval method you select.

When you select this option, a notification is triggered, if the following conditions are met:

- Deal Preapprovals Workflow is activated when the deal approval status is *Submitted*.
- Review Deal Terms Workflow is activated when Approval Required is selected on the Instrument Detail page, and the deal status is *Not Reviewed*.

- Review at Confirmation Workflow is activated when you select the Review at Confirmation check box on the Instrument Detail page, the deal confirmation review status is *Not Reviewed*, and the deal status is *Open* or *Sold/Bought back*.

**Enable Auto Confirmation**

Select to enable automated inbound deal confirmation notification processes. The system uses this option to generate notifications, based on the Deal Approval Method you select.

**Enable Invalid Confirmation**

Select to enable notifications for invalid or unmatched deal terms found during online confirmation.

**Deal Approval Method**

Choose from these options:

- *Approval Framework*
- *Workflow*

---

**Note:** The Deal Approval Method you choose applies to all three deal approval types: Preview/Approve, Auto Confirmation, and Invalid Confirmation.

---

**Outbound EDI Setup****Internal Entity Code**

Select the inbound entity code to use for business units.

**External Entity Code**

Select the outbound entity code to use for counterparties.

---

**Note:** Internal and external EDI entity codes enable PeopleSoft EDI Manager to correctly map deal-specific business units and counterparties to EDI data conversion rules.

---

**Base Currency Revaluation****Market Rate Index and Exchange Rate Type**

Select the appropriate index for each field. The system uses these fields to calculate base currency equivalents for foreign currency amounts when accounting entries are generated from accounting templates.

**Bank Transfer Accounting****Requires Review**

Select to force accounting transactions that use this template to be reviewed. The system assigns error-free accounting entries using this template a *Provisional* status. You can then manually finalize the entry on the Review/Approve Entries page. If this check box is deselected, the system assigns error-free accounting entries using this template a *Final* status.

**Journal Template**

Select the journal template this business unit uses for its bank transfer accounting builds.

**BU Doc Sequencing Enabled**

Select to activate document sequencing functionality for this business unit's transactions.

See "Understanding Document Sequencing (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Global Options and Reports*)".

**From Document Type**

If using document sequencing, define the document type to be used for assigning a document sequence number to the outbound bank account transfer transaction.

**To Document Type**

If using document sequencing, define the document type to be used for assigning a document sequence number to the inbound bank account transfer transaction.

**Settlement Approvals****Settlement Approvals**

Select to require approval for settlements involving this business unit. In the Settlement Approval Method field, select the type of approval.

**Settlement Approval Method**

Select from these approval methods:

- *Approval Framework*
- *Manual*
- *Workflow*

**Same User Select and Approve**

Select to enable the same user to both select and approve settlements. This option is applicable for these Settlement Approval Methods: *Manual* and *Workflow*.

**Accounting****Review Manual Updates**

Select this check box to mark for review any accounting entries that are manually updated on the Accounting Entries page. If the Review Manual Updates check box on the Treasury Options page is selected, the system flags an updated accounting entry for review and sets its status to Provisional. Users can review and finalize the manually updated entries on the View/Approve Entries page.

**Calendar ID**

Select a detail calendar for the business unit.

---

**Note:** You must define calendars for business units that you intend to "soft-close" using the Cash Management Fiscal Period Closure functionality.

---

See [Maintaining Fiscal Period Closure](#).

## Auto-Schedule Position Update

### Auto-Schedule Position Update

You must process a position update request for each deal to create the required records for position management, cash flows, and accounting events for your deals. If you select the check box, the system automatically processes a position update request, which creates the required records for position management and accounting, when you save an active deal. We recommend that you select this check box.

### Position Update Run Control ID

Enter the run control ID to use for the automatically created position update requests; for example, enter *AUTO-POSITION*. Specify this run control on the Treasury Options page.

### Server Name

Specify the name of the PeopleSoft Process Scheduler server that runs position update request processes. If you leave this field blank, the system uses the Default Operating System field as specified on the System Settings page to determine which server to run the process on.

### Hedge Type

Select the accounting method used for the business unit's reporting of hedge and derivative transactions. The options are:

- *Economic / Other Hedge*: Select if using a hedging accounting treatment other than IAS 39 or FAS 133.
- *IAS 39 Hedge*: Complies with the IAS 39 accounting regulations as defined by the International Accounting Standards Committee for financial reporting of derivatives and hedging transactions.
- *FAS 133 Hedge*: Complies with the FAS 133 accounting regulations as defined by the Financial Accounting Standards Board for financial reporting of derivatives and hedging transactions.

---

**Note:** A Treasury business unit can comply to only one set of accounting regulations. Treasury does not support multibook accounting.

---

### Treasury VAT Options

Click this link to access the Treasury BU VAT Options page and specify default VAT options for this business unit. The Treasury VAT Options link is available only if the General Ledger business unit that represents the Treasury Management business unit is linked to a VAT entity.

See [Treasury - VAT Options Page](#).

### VAT Defaults

Click to access the VAT Defaults Setup page.

The VAT Defaults Setup page is a common page used to set up VAT defaulting for all PeopleSoft applications processing VAT transactions. On this page you can define Treasury business unit defaults as applicable.

See "Establishing VAT Defaults (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Global Options and Reports*)".

See the product documentation for *PeopleTools: PeopleSoft Process Scheduler*.

---

**Note:** Deals do not appear on the Position Monitor or Position Manager until a position update request is processed. We recommend that you select the Auto-Schedule Position Update check box.

---

**Related Links**

"Delivered Deal Management Workflows (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Deal Management*)"

Prerequisites

Understanding the Settlements Payment Process

"Understanding Deals Maintenance (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Deal Management*)"

---

## Defining Cross-Referenced Currency Codes and Holiday List IDs

To cross reference holiday lists and currency codes, use the Currency Holiday List ID Cross Reference component (CUR\_HOL\_ID\_XREF).

The system uses cross-referenced currency codes and holiday lists to determine eligible business dates for all Treasury business processes.

### Page Used to Define Cross-Referenced Currency Codes and Holiday List IDs

<i>Page Name</i>	<i>Definition Name</i>	<i>Navigation</i>	<i>Usage</i>
Currency Code - Holiday List ID Cross Reference	CUR_HOL_ID_XREF	Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Treasury, Currency/Holiday List X-Ref	Associate a holiday list with a particular currency.

### Currency Code - Holiday List ID Cross Reference Page

Use the Currency Code - Holiday List ID Cross Reference page (CUR\_HOL\_ID\_XREF) to associate a holiday list with a particular currency.

**Navigation**

Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Treasury, Currency/Holiday List X-Ref

**Holiday List ID**

Associate a holiday list ID with a specified currency code. You can also create additional currency codes and associate holiday list IDs to them.

## Defining Market Rates

To define market and exchange codes, use the Market/Exchange Codes component (TRX\_EXCHANGE\_CD).

In addition to the PeopleSoft Common Definitions pages for defining and maintaining market rate data, Cash Management, Deal Management, and Risk Management use these additional market rate maintenance pages. These market rate pages enable you to specify criteria by which to retrieve and update multiple market rate definitions.

This section discusses how to:

- Define market and exchange code information.
- Define market rates.
- View and add market rate information.
- Edit rate variance information.
- Define rate reset codes.

### Pages Used to Define Market Rates

<i>Page Name</i>	<i>Definition Name</i>	<i>Navigation</i>	<i>Usage</i>
Market/Exchange Code	TRX_EXCHANGE_CD	Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Treasury, Market/Exchange Codes	Define market and exchange information for a code.
Market Rates	RT_RATE_TBL	Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Treasury, Market Rates	Specify criteria by which to review rates and to add or update rates.
Market Rates - Market Rate	RT_RATE_PNL	Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Common Definitions, Market Rates, Market Rates - Market Rate  Click Edit on the Market Rates page.	View details of a market rate, add a new market rate, and view exchange rate detail information.  To set up history rates for existing market rates, use the component in Set Up Financials/Supply Chain - Common Definitions - Market Rates.
Rate Definition	RT_RATE_DEF_SEC	Click Rate Definition on the Market Rates - Market Rates page.	Edit the maximum variance and error type information.
Exchange Rate Detail	EXCH_RT_DTL	Click the Exchange Rate Detail icon on the Market Rates - Market Rates page.	View exchange rate detail information.

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Rate Reset Codes	TRX_RT_RESET_CD	Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Treasury, Rate Reset Codes	Define and associate a holiday list ID to a rate reset code.

**Related Links**

"Understanding Reevaluating Deals (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Risk Management*)"

**Market Rates Page**

Use the Market Rates page (RT\_RATE\_TBL) to specify criteria by which to review rates and to add or update rates.

**Navigation**

Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Treasury, Market Rates

**Image: Market Rates page**

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Market Rates page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

**Market Rates**

Index BAFX Bloomberg FX Rates Exchange Rate

Selection Criteria

Term  Rate Type  From Cur  To Cur   Include History

[Add New Market Rate](#)

Term	Rate Type	From Cur	To Cur	Eff Date	Rate	Edit	Rate Defn	Rate Detail
0	MID	ADP	CAD	04/24/1998	0.00943592			
0	MID	ADP	USD	04/24/1998	152.11000000			
0	MID	AED	CAD	04/24/1998	0.39077001			
0	MID	AED	USD	04/24/1998	3.67300000			
0	MID	AFA	CAD	04/24/1998	0.00030217			
0	MID	AFA	USD	04/24/1998	4750.00000000			
0	MID	ALL	CAD	04/24/1998	0.00909860			
0	MID	ALL	USD	04/24/1998	157.75000000			
0	MID	ANG	CAD	04/24/1998	0.80748050			
0	MID	ANG	USD	04/24/1998	1.77750000			
0	MID	AOK	USD	04/24/1998	0.00000508			
0	MID	ATS	CAD	04/24/1998	8.83160000			
0	MID	ATS	DEM	04/24/1998	7.03710000			
0	MID	ATS	FRF	04/24/1998	0.47660000			
0	MID	ATS	GBP	04/24/1998	21.10800000			

---

**Note:** The appearance of this page varies depending on the market rate category.

---

## Selection Criteria

Enter the criteria by which to retrieve existing market rate definitions.

<b>Term</b>	Specify a term code, indicating the length of time the rate is effective.
<b>Rate Type</b>	Select a market rate or exchange rate type.
<b>From Cur (from currency) and To Cur (to currency)</b>	Select the original and conversion currencies of the market rate.
<b>Include History</b>	Select to view market rate history for returned results.
<b>Add New Market Rate</b>	Click to access the Market Rates detail page and add a new rate type. The market rate definition (and, in the case of exchange rates, the currency quotation method for the from currency and to currency) must already exist.

## Market Rates



Click the Edit button to access the Market Rates - Market Rate page, and edit effective date and rate information.

---

**Note:** To set up history rates for existing market rates, use the component in Set Up Financials/Supply Chain - Common Definitions - Market Rates.

---



Click the Rate Defn (rate definition) button to access the Rate Definition page, and view information on the rate's maximum variance, error type, and day count basis.



Click the Rate Detail button to access the Exchange Rate Detail page, and view exchange rate detail information.

## Market Rates - Market Rate Page

Use the Market Rates - Market Rate page (RT\_RATE\_PNL) to view details of a market rate, add a new market rate, and view exchange rate detail information.

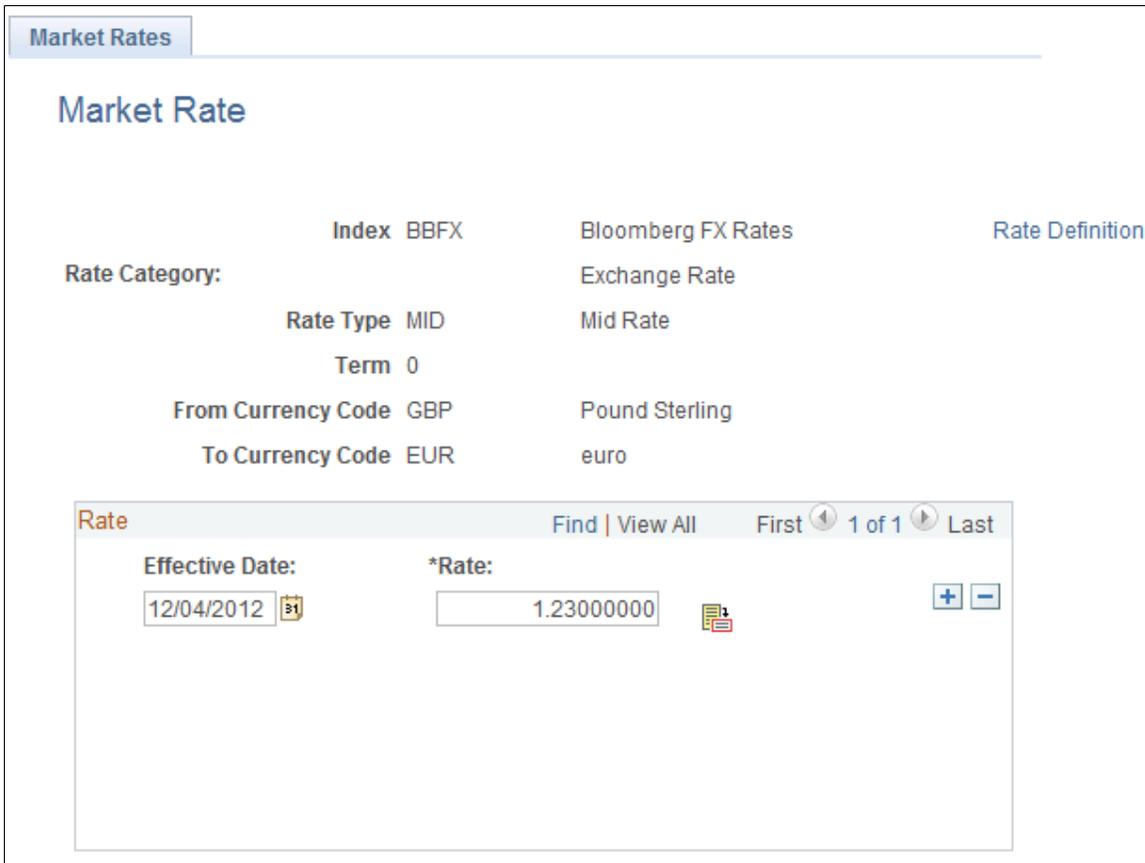
**Navigation**

Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Common Definitions, Market Rates, Market Rates - Market Rate

Click Edit on the Market Rates page.

**Image: Market Rates - Market Rate page**

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Market Rates - Market Rate page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



**Rate Definition**

Click to access the Rate Definition page, and edit variance and error type information for the rate definition.



Click the Exchange Rate Detail button to access the Exchange Rate Detail page, and view rate information.

---

**Note:** To use this page to add or change past rates, use the navigation: Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Common Definitions, Market Rates, Market Rates. You must be in the correction mode to make changes to historical data.

---

**Related Links**

"Defining Market Rates (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Global Options and Reports*)"

## Rate Definition Page

Use the Rate Definition page (RT\_RATE\_DEF\_SEC) to edit the maximum variance and error type information.

### Navigation

Click Rate Definition on the Market Rates - Market Rates page.

### Maximum Variance

The variance value validates the rates read from the market rate loader process. The system compares the prior historical rate to the one read and ensures that it's within a specified variance. If not, you are alerted with the specified error type. Enter a new Maximum Variance, and specify an Error Type of *None*, *Stop*, or *Warning*.

---

## Securing ChartFields for PeopleSoft Treasury

PeopleSoft ChartField security provides a flexible, rule-based approach to administer security at a data level. ChartField security is supported in PeopleSoft Treasury and across other PeopleSoft Financials and Supply Chain Management (FSCM) applications. The ChartField security feature prevents unauthorized employees and contractors from viewing and editing sensitive financial data by restricting access to data stored with specific ChartField values.

The primary features for ChartField security are:

- Enforce security rules by user, role, or permission list.
- Enable ChartField security for all products or selectively by product.
- Enable or disable ChartField security selectively by component.
- Define rules to accommodate end-user areas of responsibility.
- Refine access rules by product feature or component.
- Support super user access to minimize setup.
- Define components as exceptions to override security rules.

For more information, see the *PeopleSoft Application Fundamentals*.

See "Securing ChartFields for PeopleSoft Treasury (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Application Fundamentals*)".

---

## Integrating PeopleSoft Treasury with JD Edwards General Accounting

This integration provides users of JD Edwards General Ledger access to the robust PeopleSoft Treasury functionality contained in Cash, Deal, and Risk Management applications. The integration includes:

- Transmitting market rates from the JD Edwards to the PeopleSoft system.
- Transmitting accounting entry lines from Treasury products to the JD Edwards General Accounting ledger.
- Transmitting banks statement data to the JD Edwards General Accounting ledger.
- Generating a cash position worksheet (CPW) in PeopleSoft Cash Management from accounting data imported from the JD Edwards system.

With the exception of the cash position worksheet functionality, data integration is accomplished through the use of Integration Broker and specific XML messages. The data integration required to generate a cash position worksheet is accomplished using the JDBJ Java API to access the JD Edwards database directly.

Refer to the following documents for instruction on setting up and configuring the PeopleSoft Treasury to JD Edwards General Accounting integration.

### **Related Links**

JD Edwards Application Integrations with PeopleSoft Applications

"Installation Options - Treasury Page (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Application Fundamentals*)"

## Chapter 3

# Navigating in Treasury Management

---

## Navigating in Treasury Management

Treasury Management provides custom navigation pages that contain groupings of folders that support a specific business process, task, or user role.

---

**Note:** In addition to the Treasury Management custom navigation pages, PeopleSoft provides menu navigation and standard navigation pages.

---

**Note:** The Treasury Management Processing Center and the Treasury Management Setup Center are individual navigation center pages that can also be accessed from the main Treasury Management Center. As they are already documented below as a navigation center page, they are not included in the Treasury Management Center linked page listing.

---

### Related Links

PeopleTools PeopleBook: PeopleSoft Applications User's Guide

## Pages Used to Navigate in Treasury Management

This table lists the Custom Navigation pages that are used to navigate in Treasury Management:

<b>Page Name</b>	<b>Navigation</b>	<b>Usage</b>
Treasury Management Center	Treasury Management Center	Access primary Treasury Management setup and process pages from a central location. For easier retrieval, you can save this page in the My Favorites folder on the portal navigation menu.
Accounting Summary	Click the Accounting Summary link on the Treasury Management Center page.	Access the Accounting Summary page to search accounting information and review results, displayed by accounting event line.
Bank Account Manager	Click the Bank Account Manager link on the Treasury Management Center page.	Access the Bank Account Manager page to review and manage bank account information by functional clusters.
Collateral Summary	Click the Collateral Summary link on the Treasury Management Center page.	Access the Collateral Summary page to search for collateral items and return results.
Hedge Group Manager	Click the Hedge Group Manager link on the Treasury Management Center page.	Access the Hedge Group Manager page to combine various hedges into collections of "favorites."

<b>Page Name</b>	<b>Navigation</b>	<b>Usage</b>
Letters of Credit Summary	Click the Letters of Credit Summar link on the Treasury Management Center page.	Access the Letters of Credit Summary page to review summarized information for multiple letters of credit.
Portfolio Manager	Click the Portfolio Manager link on the Treasury Management Center page.	Access the Portfolio Manager page to combine various deals into portfolio collections.
Position Manager	Click the Position Manager link on the Treasury Management Center page.	Access the Position Manager page to create and manage position worksheets from one central location.
Reconciliation Manager	Click the Reconciliation Manager link on the Treasury Management Center page.	Access the Reconciliation Manager page to reconcile bank data and manage exceptions from one central location.
Settlement Manager	Click the Settlement Manager link on the Treasury Management Center page.	Access the Settlement Manager page to view settlement and exposure information and manage treasury payments from a central location.
Treasury Definitions Center	Click the Treasury Definitions Center link on the Treasury Management Center page.	Access pages to configure Treasury Management.
Treasury Processing Center	Click the Treasury Processing Center link on the Treasury Management Center page.	Access common Treasury Management business process pages from a central location. For easier retrieval, you can save this page in the My Favorites folder on the portal navigation menu.

## Chapter 4

# Managing Facilities

---

## Understanding Facilities

A *facility* is a financial arrangement with a counterparty under which an established monetary amount is available for transacting deals. Similar to a contract, a facility contains pertinent information about the arrangement, such as default settlement instructions, term, review dates, and an expiration date.

With PeopleSoft banking functionality you can define facilities, associate fees to a facility, and periodically run the Monitor Expiring Facilities process (TR\_FCLTY\_RVW) to evaluate which of your organization's facilities are close to expiring.

---

**Note:** Line of Credit and Commercial Paper facilities are covered in the Deal Management documentation.

---

## Understanding Facility Review

PeopleSoft Cash Management offers facility review notifications through Workflow virtual approval or Notification Framework. You can select the review type during facility definition.

If you have implemented the Facility Review Workflow virtual approval methodology, use PeopleSoft Application Designer to define business processes, activities, business events, worklists, routings, and approval rule sets. The system automatically routes expiring facilities to a defined user's worklist when you run the Monitor Expiring Facilities process (TR\_FCLTY\_RVW) with a facility definition that includes Role Name values in the Facility Review grid.

The other option is Events and Notification Framework, which provides a configurable framework in Enterprise Components, where you can implement the notification process for facility review to send email and worklist notifications. The system automatically routes expiring facilities to a defined user's worklist and sends email notifications when you run the Monitor Expiring Facilities process (TR\_FCLTY\_RVW) with a facility definition that includes Role Name values in the Facility Review grid.

### Related Links

[Monitoring Facilities](#)

---

## Prerequisites

Before defining facilities you must define:

- Counterparties

- Settlement instructions
- Method of facility review notification

To implement the Facility Review Workflow virtual approval methodology, use PeopleSoft Application Designer to define business processes, activities, business events, worklists, routings, and approval rule sets.

The integration between Treasury and Notification Framework will be delivered as system data to support email and worklist notifications, as shown in this table:

<b>Description</b>	<b>Process Name</b>	<b>Process Category</b>	<b>Navigation</b>
Notify Facilities	TR_NOTIFICATIONS	FACILITIES	Enterprise Components, Events & Notifications, Notifications Framework, Notifications Registry

See the product documentation for *PeopleTools: PeopleSoft Application Designer Developer's Guide* and *PeopleSoft Events and Notifications Framework*.

### Related Links

"Defining Counterparty Information (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Banks Setup and Processing*)"

"EFT Options Page (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Banks Setup and Processing*)"

## Defining Facilities

To define facilities information, use the following components:

- Facilities component (FCLTY\_DFN).
- Facility Memo Attributes component (FCLTY\_MEMO\_ATTR).

Use the TR\_FCLTY\_BCI component interface to load data into the facilities tables.

To set up a facility, you define the types of attributes tracked and then establish the facility itself. You record fees that are associated with the facility by entering them online.

---

**Note:** You must define fee codes on the Fee Codes page prior to entering fees online.

---

This section discusses how to:

- Define facility memo types
- Establish facilities
- Create fee entries

## Pages Used to Define Facilities

<b>Page Name</b>	<b>Definition Name</b>	<b>Navigation</b>	<b>Usage</b>
Facility Definition	FCLTY_PNL1	Cash Management, Facilities, Facility Definition	Define a facility.
Memo Attributes	FCLTY_CD	Cash Management, Facilities, Facility Memo Attributes	Define the attributes to track with a facility and define the type of data that the attributes contain.
Enter Fees	FEE_GENERATOR_PNL	Click the Fees link on the Facility Definition page.	Create fees for a facility.
Financial Contacts	TR_CONTACT_PNL	Click the Contact Information link on the Facility Definition page.	Edit information for a financial institution contact assigned to a facility.
Comments	FCLTY_LONG_SP	Click the Expand Long icon on the Facilities page.	Edit memorandum information for a facility attribute.
Settlement Instructions	STL_INSTR_SP	Click the View Settlement Instruction icon on the Facility Definition page.	View details of a specified settlement instruction for a facility.

### Related Links

[Fee Codes Page](#)

[Enter Fees Page](#)

## Memo Attributes Page

Use the Memo Attributes page (FCLTY\_CD) to define the attributes to track with a facility and define the type of data that the attributes contain.

### Navigation

Cash Management, Facilities, Facility Memo Attributes

### Data Type

Provide an attribute description and indicate its data type. Online edits validate the data type when you associate the attributes with a facility. Select from:

*Date*: Use for dates.

*Long*: Use for storing an unlimited number of characters.

*Number*: Use for positive numeric data.

*Signed Num* (signed number): Use for storing positive and negative numbers.

*Text:* Use for storing text attributes based on a database field. When you select this option, you can optionally specify a prompt table. This limits text entries to a list of values that are generated from the specified table. For example, using the prompt table INSTR\_HEADER\_TR limits entries to defined instruments.

---

**Note:** You must include Comments (CMTS) as a defined attribute for the Memo Attributes page to function correctly. CMTS is included in the system database; do not delete it.

---

## Facility Definition Page

Use the Facility Definition page (FCLTY\_PNL1) to define a facility.

### Navigation

Cash Management, Facilities, Facility Definition

### Image: Facility Definition page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Facility Definition page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

The screenshot displays the 'Facility Definition' page with the following sections and fields:

- Facility Definition:**
  - SetID: SHARE, Facility ID: TRBNK\_FX, Facility Type: Other Cash Needs
  - Description: FX Facility
  - \*Effective Date: 01/03/2000
  - Review Date: 06/30/2000
  - Counterparty: TRBNK (US TREASURY BANK)
  - \*Status: Active
  - Expiration Date: 12/31/2000
  - Facility Review Notification: (dropdown)
  - No Counterparty
- Facility Memos:** (1-2 of 2)
- Facility Attribute:**
  - CMTS: COMMENTS, Value: \$30 Million FX line for Spots and Forwards
  - FXEXC: Currencies Excl, Value: MXP, BRL
- Override Settlement Instructions:**
  - Currency: USD
  - Instructions: USBKS
  - Deal Override
- Facility Review:** (1-2 of 2)
  - Role Name: BANK MANAGER, VICE PRESIDENT
- Contact Information:**
- Attachments (0)**
- Fees:**

---

**Note:** Since facilities are generally associated with a particular counterparty, you may want to incorporate the counterparty code in the Facility ID field so that it's easy to distinguish between facilities.

---

## Facility Definition

### Counterparty

Select the associated counterparty. For facilities that do not have specific counterparties, such as commercial paper, select the No Counterparty check box, which disables the Counterparty field.

<b>Review Date</b>	Enter the date the facility will be up for review. This is the date that the role names specified in the Facility Review grid receive PeopleSoft Workflow notification.
<b>Facility Review Notification</b>	<p>Choose the notification type for processing the facility review:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Notification Framework</i>: Sends email and worklist notifications to the Role Names listed in the Facility Review grid, using Notification Framework.</li> <li>• <i>Workflow</i>: Sends notification to the Role Names that you add to the Facility Review grid, when you define and save the facility and when you run the Monitor Expiring Facilities process (TR_FCLTY_RVW).</li> </ul> <hr/> <p><b>Note:</b> If you add a Role Name to the Facility Review grid, and save the facility definition without choosing a facility review notification type, the system defaults to <i>Notification Framework</i>.</p> <hr/>
<b>Expiration Date</b>	Enter the date the facility is scheduled to expire.
<b>Fees</b>	Click this link to record fees associated with the facility.
<b>Facilities Contacts</b>	
<b>Contact</b>	Enter the ID number. The name, contact title, and phone number are automatically populated from the Financial Contacts page.
<b>Contact Information</b>	Click to view and edit the Financial Contacts page (TR_CONTACT_PNL).
<b>Facilities Memos</b>	
<b>Facility Attributes</b>	The COMMENTS attribute automatically appears; enter information about the facility in the Value field.
	Click the Expand Long icon to view the entire Value description.
<b>Override Settlement Instructions</b>	
Indicate how funds should be settled for transactions using this facility.	
<b>Deal Override</b>	Select to permit these instructions to be overridden at deal entry.
<b>Instructions</b>	Specify settlement instructions, which are defined on the External Accounts - Settlements Instructions page.



Click the View Settlement Instruction icon to view settlement instruction details on the Settlement Instructions page (STL\_INSTR\_SP).

### Facility Review

**Role Name**

Select the role name that receives PeopleSoft Workflow notification when the facility is up for review.

**Related Links**

"Settlement Instructions Page (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Banks Setup and Processing*)"  
[Creating Fee Entries](#)

## Monitoring Facilities

Run the Monitor Expiring Facilities Application Engine process (TR\_FCLTY\_RVW) to determine if your facilities are close to expiring.

View email or worklist notifications generated by the facility review notification method defined on the facility. Refer to your PeopleTools documentation for details about the Virtual Workflow methodology.

To view the details of facility review notifications sent by the Notification Framework, go to Enterprise Components, Events & Notifications, Notifications Framework, Notification Detail, or click the Notification Detail link in the notification email or worklist. For more information, see the product documentation for *PeopleSoft Events and Notifications Framework*.

### Pages Used to Monitor Facilities

<i>Page Name</i>	<i>Definition Name</i>	<i>Navigation</i>	<i>Usage</i>
Schedule Facility Review	TR_AE_RUNCNTL	Cash Management, Facilities, Schedule Facility Review	Define run parameters for the Monitor Expiring Facilities process.
Facilities by Counterparty	BANK_PNLFCLTY	Cash Management, Facilities, Facilities by Counterparty	Review facilities summary information by counterparty.

### Schedule Facility Review Page

Use the Schedule Facility Review page (TR\_AE\_RUNCNTL) to define run parameters for the Monitor Expiring Facilities process.

## Navigation

Cash Management, Facilities, Schedule Facility Review

### Image: Schedule Facility Review page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Schedule Facility Review page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

The screenshot shows the 'Schedule Facility Review' page with the following details:

- User ID:** DVP1
- Program Name:** TR\_FCLTY\_RVW
- Run Control ID:** FCLTY\_REVIEW
- Process Monitor:** (button)
- Monitor Expiring Facilities:** (button)
- Last Run:** (button)
- Process Origin:** Other Source
- Status:** Not Yet Processed
- Process Instance:** (field)
- Process Frequency:** Process Once (dropdown)
- Market:** (dropdown)
- As Of Date:** 12/03/2012 (calendar icon)
- Parameters:**
  - State Record: TR\_FCLTY\_AET
  - Bind Variable Name: SETID (with search icon)
  - Value: SHARE (with search icon)
  - State Record: TR\_FCLTY\_AET
  - Bind Variable Name: FCLTY\_ID (with search icon)
  - Value: TRBNK\_FX (with search icon)

### Bind Variable Name

In the Parameters grid is an Application Engine run control function that enables you to specify the variable for which you are setting the value. Select the Bind Variable Name of *FCLTY ID*, and enter the specific facility name to be calculated in Value. You can add records and specify as many bind variable names as are pertinent to the job.



# Managing Fees and Account Analysis

---

## Understanding Managing Fees and Account Analysis

With the Account Analysis feature, you can configure fee codes and fee structures for use in bank fee comparisons and statement analyses.

Account analysis enables you to define how bank fees are calculated for your enterprise and organizes them into fee structures. A fee structure enables you to group, in one place, all the fees that a particular bank charges. You can use fee types that match the standards documented in *Treasury Management Association (TMA) Guide to Account Analysis and Service Codes*, published by the Association for Financial Professionals (AFP). Examples of fee types are tiered pricing, base fee, and minimum/maximum fees.

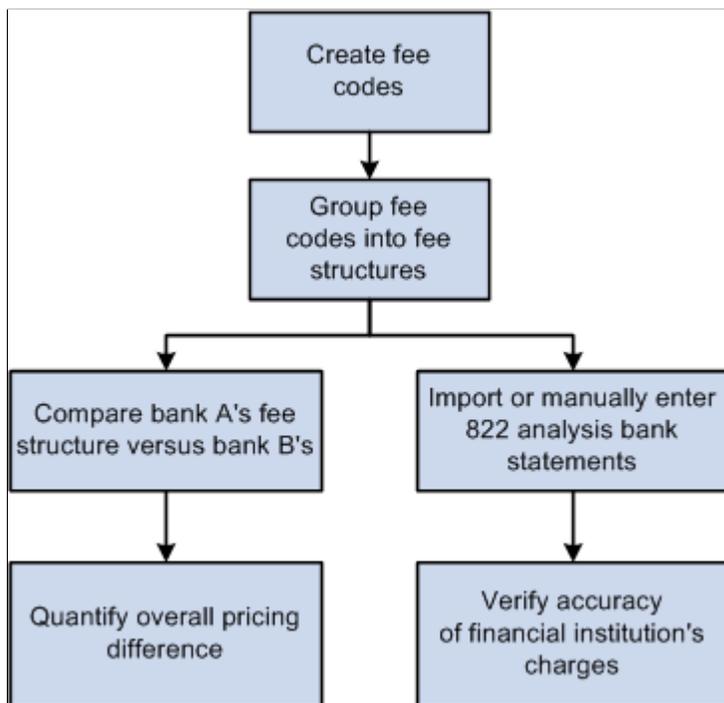
By defining and analyzing the data, you can reduce your fee expenses in two ways:

- Comparing fees for up to five banks, and determining which bank has the best fee structure for your requirements.

- Catching bank charge errors by comparing an EDI 822 Account Analysis bank statement against the data.

**Image: Overview of bank account fee analysis**

Bank account fee analysis includes creating fee codes and grouping fee codes into fee structures. You can then compare fees for up to five banks to determine which bank has the best fee structure and catch bank charge errors with bank statement analysis




---

## Common Elements Used to Manage Fees and Analyze Accounts

**Analysis Start Date and Analysis End Date**

Defines the calendar period that the system analyzes. When running an account analysis, the system includes all the activities between these two dates in the analysis.

**Bank Code**

Displays the identifier code for a specific bank.

**Fee Code**

Displays the identifier code for a specific fee.

**Fee Structure Code**

Displays the identifier code for a specific fee structure.

**Period Beginning and Period Ending**

Defines the beginning and ending dates for a specified time period.

**Day Count Basis**

Select from the following options:

- *30/360*: Assumes that a year consists of twelve months with an equal length of 30 days. A special rule applies when dealing with the end of a month.

- *30E/360*: Assumes that a year consists of twelve months with an equal length of 30 days. Also known as Euro 30/360.
- *Actual/360*: Assumes that a year consists of 360 days but the months are counted as actual calendar days.
- *Actual/365*: Assumes that a year consists of 365 days but the months are counted as actual calendar days.
- *Actual/Actual*: Assumes that the number of days between two dates is the actual number of calendar days.

---

## Setting Up Fee Structures

To define fee codes, use the Fee Codes component (DEFINE\_FEE\_CODE).

This section discusses how to:

1. Create fee transaction tables.
2. Define fee codes.
3. (Optional) Enter SQL Where Criteria.
4. Set up fee structures.
5. Define fee structures.
6. (Optional) Edit base fee calculations.

## Pages Used to Set Up Fee Structure

<b>Page Name</b>	<b>Definition Name</b>	<b>Navigation</b>	<b>Usage</b>
Fee Transaction Tables	FA_FEE_TRAN_PNL	Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Treasury, Fee Transaction Tables	Set up transaction tables.
Fee Codes	FA_FEE_CD_PNL	Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Treasury, Fee Codes, Fee Codes	Set up fee codes.
SQL Where Criteria	FA_FEE_SQLWHERE_SP	Click the Where Clause button on the Fee Codes page.	Establish criteria for the fee analysis metric.
Fee Structures - Structure Accounts	FA_FEE_ACCT	Banking, Account Analysis, Fee Structures	Set up fee structures.

<b>Page Name</b>	<b>Definition Name</b>	<b>Navigation</b>	<b>Usage</b>
Fee Structures - Structure Definition	FA_FEE_STRUCT	Select the Structure Definition tab on the Structure Accounts page.	Define fee structures.
Fee Calculation Type - Fee Structure	FA_FEE_STRUCT_SEC	Click Fee Definition on the Fee Structure Definition page.	Edit the base fee calculation for certain fee calculation types.

## Fee Transaction Tables Page

Use the Fee Transaction Tables page (FA\_FEE\_TRAN\_PNL) to set up transaction tables.

### Navigation

Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Treasury, Fee Transaction Tables

Define the names of the transaction tables that you will use with your fee codes. The transaction tables contain the underlying transactions, which the system references when processing fees. After you save the transaction tables, you can reference the table when you define each fee code.

## Fee Codes Page

Use the Fee Codes page (FA\_FEE\_CD\_PNL) to set up fee codes.

### Navigation

Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Treasury, Fee Codes, Fee Codes

### Image: Fee Codes page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Fee Codes page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

### Description

Create both a description and fee code and that matches the TMA TS 822 or that matches your financial counterparty account analysis standards.

**Code Seq Num (code sequence number)**

Assign a fee code to determine the order in which the fee codes appear on your account analysis screens.

**Fee Type**

Specify whether this fee type applies to transactions involving a Letter of Credit, Deal Fee, Facility Fee, or EFT Fee. You can select multiple options.

**Fee Analysis Metric SQL**

Define how the fee metrics will be tracked in your system.

**Fee Validation Information**

If the fee can be tracked in your system, select the check box. In certain circumstances, you may not want to validate all fees. In this case, leave the check box deselected.

**Transaction Table**

Reference the fee validation information to a fee transaction table (defined in the prior section). After you save this value, click the Transaction Tables button to view the specific table definition.

**Transaction Date Field**

Select the date type field name used to determine the fee (for example, *ACCOUNTING\_DT* = accounting date).

**Aggregate Type**

Select *Count*, *Avg* (average), *Min* (minimum), *Max* (maximum), or *Sum*. The available aggregate fields to which the aggregate parameters can be applied are prompted for you from the selected transaction table.

After selecting the Aggregate Field, click the Where Clause button to select operators and describe the value that the Aggregate Field must match.

**Accounting Treatment**

Define how the accounting process handles bank fees.

**Account for Fee**

Select this check box if a fee may be expensed, amortized, or accrued. If a fee is amortized, accounting templates for booking the fee and amortization of the fee are required. If a fee is expensed, it may not be amortized or accrued and only the template for booking the expense is required. If a fee is accrued, accounting templates for booking the expense and recording the accrual amount for this fee entry are required.

**Interest Basis Override**

Fees may be amortized or accrued on various day count basis. Select this check box to enable modification of the Day Count Basis type on the Enter Fees page when creating a fee. If not selected, the Day Count Basis type on the Enter Fees page automatically defaults to the fee set up information, and cannot be modified.

**Override Template on Fee Panel**

Select this check box to allow editing of the Template field on the Enter Fees page.

**VAT Applicable Fee**

If this fee code is VAT applicable, select the check box, and specify the appropriate Expense Template. All VAT transactions recorded in Treasury Management are assumed to be transactions on services, not transactions on goods. When you create a VAT-applicable fee, the Physical Nature field displays *Services*.

**Day Count Basis**

Select from the following:

- *30/360*: Assumes that a year consists of 12 months with an equal length of 30 days. A special rule applies when dealing with the end of a month.
- *30E/360*: Assumes that a year consists of 12 months with an equal length of 30 days. Also known as Euro 30/360.

---

**Note:** The difference between the *30/360* calculation and the *30E/360* calculation occurs when a period ends on the 31st, but did not start on the 30th or 31st. In this case, the *30/360* calculation uses the 31st day as equal to 31, while the *30E/360* calculation uses the 31st day as equal to 30. For example, using the *30/360* calculation, the period starting December 1 and ending December 31 contains 30 days. However, using the *30E/360* calculation, the same December time period contains only 29 days.

---

- *Actual/360*: Assumes that a year consists of 360 days but the months are counted as actual calendar days.
- *Actual/365*: Assumes that a year consists of 365 days but the months are counted as actual calendar days.
- *Actual/Actual*: Assumes that the number of days between two dates is the actual number of calendar days.

**Amortized**

If you opt to amortize the fee over time, select both an Expense Template and Accrual Template.

**Expensed**

If you opt to only expense the fee, select an appropriate expense template value.

**Accrued**

If you opt to accrue the fee over time, select both an Expense Template and an Accrual Template.

**Related Links**

[Fee Transaction Tables Page](#)

[Account Analysis Validation Page](#)

[Creating VAT Transactions for Fees](#)

## SQL Where Criteria Page

Use the SQL Where Criteria page (FA\_FEE\_SQLWHERE\_SP) to establish criteria for the fee analysis metric.

### Navigation

Click the Where Clause button on the Fee Codes page.

Select operators and describe the *Value* that the Aggregate Field must match to pass the fee analysis. When you enter multiple criteria lines, a logical *and* is implied.

## Fee Structures - Structure Accounts Page

Use the Fee Structures - Structure Accounts page (FA\_FEE\_ACCT) to set up fee structures.

### Navigation

Banking, Account Analysis, Fee Structures, Structure Accounts

### Image: Fee Structures - Structure Accounts page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Fee Structures - Structure Accounts page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

The screenshot shows the 'Structure Accounts' page with the 'Structure Definition' tab selected. It displays the following information:

- SetID:** SHARE
- Bank Code:** USBNK
- Fee Structure:** USFEE
- Account Information:**
  - Effective Date: 07/01/2000
  - Status: Active
  - Description: US Bank Checking Fee Structure
  - \*Charge to Bank Account: CHCK
  - Currency Code: USD
- Accounts in Fee Structure:**

Bank Account	Bank Account #	Account Description	Currency
CHCK	0741-256458	USBNK CHECKING ACCT	USD
CHK1	0741-255556	Checking-Draft	USD

There two components to a fee structure:

- Account information. Each structure is defined according to the bank and the account to which the fee structure will be charged.
- Accounts in the fee structure, and their associated currency.

## Fee Structure Accounts

### Charge to Bank Account

Select a bank account to record any fees charged to this fee structure.

## Accounts in Fee Structure

Enter the bank account or accounts that are associated with a particular fee structure.

## Fee Structures - Structure Definition Page

Use the Fee Structures - Structure Definition page (FA\_FEE\_STRUCT) to define fee structures.

### Navigation

Select the Structure Definition tab on the Structure Accounts page.

Access the Fee Structures - Structure Definition page (Banking, Account Analysis, Fee Structures, Structure Definition).

### Image: Fee Structures - Structure Definition page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Fee Structures - Structure Definition page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

The screenshot shows the 'Structure Definition' tab of the 'Structure Accounts' page. It displays account information for SetID SHARE, Bank Code USBNK, and Fee Structure USFEE. The effective date is 07/01/2000 and the status is Active. Below this is a table titled 'Fee Structures Definition' with columns for Fee Code, Description, Fee Calculation Type, Fee Definition, and Validate Fee. The table contains four rows of fee definitions.

Fee Code	Description	*Fee Calculation Type	Fee Definition	Validate Fee
010000	DDA Maint	Flat Fee	Fee Definition	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
250102	ACH Originated-Debit/Credit	Minimum Fee	Fee Definition	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
350104	Out Fedwire-Auto-Freeform	Tiered Price	Fee Definition	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
350300	Incoming Fedwire Trnsf	Maximum Fee	Fee Definition	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

### Fee Calculation Type

Select one of the following values:

- *Base Fee*: Fee that is charged in addition to the unit price when one or more units of the service are provided. For example, a base fee of USD 10.00 is charged, plus USD 0.50 per unit.
- *Flat Fee*: Fixed fee that is charged for service provided that is not directly tied to the volume of the service. For example, Balance Reporting is USD 50.00 per month, regardless of the number or reporting files created during the month.
- *Minimum Fee*: Lowest fee that is possible for the service provided; for example, USD 1.00 per unit with a USD 5.00 minimum. The minimum fee is charged even if the unit count is less than 5.
- *Maximum Fee*: Highest fee that is possible for the service provided; for example, USD 1.00 per unit, with a USD 50.00 maximum. The maximum fee is charged even if the unit count exceeds 50.

- *Rate Based Charge:* This fee is calculated using a balance and an annual percentage rate. For example, an overdraft fee is calculated as the Average Negative Ledger Balance x 12% x 30/365.
- *Discounted Price:* This fee is calculated using a price that is less than the standard price for the service provided. For example, Customer A is charged USD 0.90 per unit, instead of the standard USD 1.00 per unit.
- *Threshold Price:* The total volume determines the unit price for the service. For example, if the volume is 1,000 or less, the price is USD 0.10 per unit; if the volume is more than 1,000, the price is USD 0.09 per unit.
- *Tiered Pricing:* The price for the service is determined by the tiering structure and the total volume. The volume is broken down into as many tiers as necessary, and a different price is used to calculate the fee for each tier. For example, for the first 1,000 items, the price is USD .10 per unit; for more than 1,000 items, the price is USD .09 per unit.

#### Fee Definition

Click to further define the metrics of the fee on the Fee Calculation Type - Fee Structure page (FA\_FEE\_STRUCTURE\_SEC), depending on the Fee Calculation Type.

#### Validate Fee

Select this check box to validate the particular fee code against both the cost and volume as defined in the fee structure and the volume as defined in the fee code setup and fee transaction tables.

## Fee Calculation Type – Fee Structure Page

Use the Fee Calculation Type - Fee Structure page (FA\_FEE\_STRUCTURE\_SEC) to edit the base fee calculation for certain fee calculation types.

#### Navigation

Click the Fee Definition button on the Fee Structure Definition page.

The fee calculation type must have an editable fee definition to access this page. Enter a new base fee, expressed as a decimal, for fee calculation.

---

## Comparing Fee Structures

This section discusses how to compare fee structures.

Use these pages in this section to compare them with each other and to analyze the results. You can compare as few as two or as many as five fee structures at one time. You can also create multiple comparison scenarios and save them for future use. If the underlying structure changes, you can rerun the saved comparison and view the new results.

## Pages Used to Compare Fee Structures

<b>Page Name</b>	<b>Definition Name</b>	<b>Navigation</b>	<b>Usage</b>
Fee Structure Comparison	FA_CHARGE_COMP	Banking, Account Analysis, Fee Structure Comparison	Compare different fee structures that are applied to the same account, and also create and save multiple comparison scenarios for future use
Fee Structure Comparison Results	FA_CHARGE_RSLTS	Click Compare Fee Structures on the Fee Structure Comparison page.	Analyze fee structures' comparison. The page also displays the optimal fee structure choice.

### Fee Structure Comparison Page

Use the Fee Structure Comparison page (FA\_CHARGE\_COMP) to compare different fee structures that are applied to the same account, and also create and save multiple comparison scenarios for future use.

#### Navigation

Banking, Account Analysis, Fee Structure Comparison

To compare fee structures:

1. Enter up to five Fee Structure Codes for comparison in the Fee Structures group box.
2. Click Compare Fee Structures.
3. The Fee Structure Comparison Results page appears. Each fee structure you selected on the Fee Structure Comparison page is calculated and displayed. The fee structure of optimal choice, based on the comparison of fees, is identified to the right of the *Guide to Account Analysis* field. A Charge Difference column appears on the page only if you are comparing two fee structures.

## Performing Account Analysis

This section discusses how to:

- Manually create statements.
- Automatically import statement information.
- Validate account analysis information.

Once bank fee codes and structures have been set up, you can perform account analysis on your bank statements to verify fee charges and catch potential errors. EDI 822 statements can be entered either manually or automatically imported using PeopleSoft banking functionality. You use the Account Analysis pages to enter bank statement balance, service, and rate information, as well as balance adjustments and service adjustments, where necessary. After entering a statement, you can validate that statement to ensure correct volumes, balances, and charges. This should help decrease your research time into statement exceptions.

## Pages Used to Perform Account Analysis

<b>Page Name</b>	<b>Definition Name</b>	<b>Navigation</b>	<b>Usage</b>
Fee Statements - Information	FA_BNK_STMT_HDR	Banking, Bank Statements, Enter Fee Statements, Information	Enter statement and analysis date information, and select a statement method. You can also view bank contacts.
Fee Statements - Rates	FA_BNK_STMT_RATE	Banking, Bank Statements, Enter Fee Statements, Rates	Enter rate information for statement fee codes
Fee Statements - Balance Compensation	FA_BNK_STMT_ANYL	Banking, Bank Statements, Enter Fee Statements  Select the Balance Compensation tab.	Enter balances, earnings and other totals.
Fee Statements - Balance Adjustments	FA_BNK_STMT_BADJ	Banking, Bank Statements, Enter Fee Statements  Select the Balance Adjustments tab.	Enter balance adjustment information.
Fee Statements - Service Charges	FA_BNK_STMT_SRVC	Banking, Bank Statements, Enter Fee Statements  Select the Service Charges tab.	Enter statement service charge information.
Fee Statements - Service Adjustments	FA_BNK_STMT_SADJ	Banking, Bank Statements, Enter Fee Statements  Select the Service Adjustments tab.	Enter adjustments to service charges found on the bank account analysis statement.
Import Bank Statements	BSP_IMPORT	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Banking, Bank Statements, Import Bank Statements</li> <li>• Click Import Bank Statements on the Account Analysis Manager page.</li> </ul>	Submit an electronic request for bank statement information.
Account Analysis Validation	FA_BNK_STMT_VALID	Banking, Account Analysis, Account Analysis Validation	Validate a statement against a fee structure.

### Related Links

"Understanding Electronic Banking (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Financial Gateway*)"

## Common Elements Used to Perform Account Analysis

### Adjustment Date

Displays the balance adjustment or service charge adjustment entry date.

<b>Fee Code</b>	Displays the identifier code for the specified fee.
<b>Pay Method</b>	If you leave the Pay Method field blank, the system applies the charge to the balance compensable service charges. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <i>F</i>: Free (no charge)</li><li>• <i>N</i>: Non balance compensable</li><li>• <i>W</i>: Waived</li><li>• <i>X</i>: Not assessed through analysis</li></ul>
<b>Service Charge or Service Charge Amount</b>	Displays the service charges assessed to your account by the bank.

## Creating Statements Manually

This section discusses how to manually create statements:

1. Enter general statement information.
2. Enter statement rate information.
3. Enter balance compensation information.
4. Enter balance adjustment information.
5. Enter service charge information.
6. Enter service adjustment information.

## Fee Statements - Information Page

Use the Fee Statements - Information page (FA\_BNK\_STMT\_HDR) to enter statement and analysis date information, and select a statement method.

You can also view bank contacts.

### Navigation

Banking, Bank Statements, Enter Fee Statements, Information

### Image: Fee Statements - Information page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Fee Statements - Information page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

<b>Information</b>		Rates	Balance Compensation	Balance Adjustments	Service Charges	Service Adjustments
Bank ID	121042882	Account #	0741-256458			
Analysis ID	FA00000004	Load Date/Time	03/13/01 7:54:38AM			
Statement Date	07/31/2000	Settlement Method	Debit			
Analysis Start Date	07/01/2000	Analysis End Date	07/31/2000			
<b>Bank Contacts</b>		Personalize   Find   View All		First 1-4 of 5 Last		
Name	Contact Title	Telephone	Email ID			
Smith, Alfred	Relationship Manager	030 34070	asmith@data.com			
Noir, Didier	Finance Manager	33136824500	Didier Noir			
McDonald, David	Vice President	212 5673855	dmcdonald@data.com			
Morrison, Donald	Vice President	212 9021000	dmorrison@data.com			

**Statement Date** Enter the date the statement is created or imported.

**Settlement Method** Select *Debit* or *Invoice*.

### Bank Contacts

This information is associated with the Bank ID and Account #. The fields display the information you entered on the Financial Contacts page.

## Fee Statements - Rates Page

Use the Fee Statements - Rates page (FA\_BNK\_STMT\_RATE) to enter rate information for statement fee codes.

### Navigation

Banking, Bank Statements, Enter Fee Statements, Rates

### Image: Fee Statements - Rates page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Fee Statements - Rates page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

<b>Information</b>		<b>Rates</b>	Balance Compensation	Balance Adjustments	Service Charges	Service Adjustments
Bank ID	121042882	Account #	0741-256458			
Analysis ID	FA00000004	Load Date/Time	03/13/01 7:54:38AM			
<b>Rate Information</b>		Personalize   Find   View All		First 1-2 of 2 Last		
Fee Code	Description	Rate Date	Rate	Mutiplier	Days/Period	Days/Year
000100	Res Requirement Rate-DDA	07/31/2000	0.1000			
000120	Adjusted Earnings Allow Rate	07/31/2000	5.5000	295.16	31	366

**Rate Date** Enter the effective date for the Rate.

- Rate** Enter a rate in decimal format. Rates can be any type, such as earnings rates for the current and next period, or reserve rates.
- Multiplier** Specify a service multiplier, in decimal format.
- Days/Period** Enter the number of days in the analysis period, generally 30 or 31.
- Days/Year** Enter the number of days in the year, generally 365 or 366.

## Fee Statements - Balance Compensation Page

Use the Fee Statements - Balance Compensation page (FA\_BNK\_STMT\_ANYL) to enter balances, earnings and other totals.

### Navigation

Banking, Bank Statements, Enter Fee Statements, Balance Compensation

### Image: Fee Statements - Balance Compensation page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Fee Statements - Balance Compensation page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

Fee Code	As of Date	Description	Balance Amount	Currency
000000	07/31/2000	Ledger Bal-Avg Net	295,000.00	USD
000010	07/31/2000	Collected Bal-Avg Net	250,000.00	USD

You enter balances, earnings allowance, and service charge summary information for a specified account on this page.

- Balance Amount** Enter the final balance amount for the indicated Fee Code from the 822 Statement.

## Fee Statements - Balance Adjustments Page

Use the Fee Statements - Balance Adjustments page (FA\_BNK\_STMT\_BADJ) to enter balance adjustment information.

### Navigation

Banking, Bank Statements, Enter Fee Statements, Balance Adjustments

### Image: Fee Statements - Balance Adjustments page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Fee Statements - Balance Adjustments page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

<span>Information</span>   <span>Rates</span>   <span>Balance Compensation</span>   <span><b>Balance Adjustments</b></span>   <span>Service Charges</span>   <span>Service Adjustments</span>									
Bank ID 121042882				Account # 0741-256458					
Analysis ID FA00000004				Load Date/Time 03/13/01 7:54:38AM					
Balance Adjustments									
Bank Account Number	Description	As of Date	Adjustment Date	Transaction Amount	Currency	Days	Rate	Earnings Allow Adjustment	
0741-256458	Ledger Balance	08/01/2000	08/15/2000	10,000.000		5	0.0400	5.460	+ -
0741-256458	Interest Adj	07/31/2000	07/31/2000	1,500.00	USD	15	1.0000		+ -
0741-256458	Float Calc	07/20/2000	07/20/2000	3,500.00	USD	1	1.0000		+ -
0741-256458	Interest Adj	07/15/2000	07/15/2000	1,320.00	USD	15	1.0000		+ -

You can correct balance information for a specific account number.

- Transaction Amount**                      Enter the adjustment transaction amount.
- Days**    Indicates the number of days the balance adjustment is outstanding. For example, 10,000 USD for five days.
- Rate**    Displays the adjustment rate expressed as a decimal.
- Earnings allow Adjustment**              Enter the actual dollar amount being charged or reimbursed to the account by the bank.

### Fee Statements - Service Charges Page

Use the Fee Statements - Service Charges page (FA\_BNK\_STMT\_SRVC) to enter statement service charge information.

## Navigation

Banking, Bank Statements, Enter Fee Statements, Service Charges

### Image: Fee Statements - Service Charges page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Fee Statements - Service Charges page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

Information   Rates   Balance Compensation   Balance Adjustments   <b>Service Charges</b>   Service Adjustments										
Bank ID 121042882					Account # 0741-256458					
Analysis ID FA00000004					Load Date/Time 03/13/01 7:54:38AM					
Service Information										
Fee Code	Description	Fee Ref ID	Price ID	Unit Price	Count	Service Charge	Currency	Balance Equivalent	Pay Method	
010000	DDA Maint		B	145.0000	1	145.00	USD	42,798.20		
100000	Brnch Dep		T	0.750000	1000	750.00	USD	221,370.00		
150100	Checks Pd-Reg		T	0.030000	100	3.00	USD	885.48		
250102	ACH Originated-Debit/Credit		T	0.160000	22	3.52	USD	1,038.96		
350104	Out Fedwire-Auto-Freeform		T	4.500000	5	22.50	USD	4,427.40		
350300	Incoming Fedwire Trnsf		T	3.500000	7	24.50	USD	7,231.42		

Enter service charges from the bank account analysis statement on this page.

### Price ID

Refers to the fee calculation type. Select from the following:

- **B (Base Fee):** Fee that is charged in addition to the unit price when one or more units of the service are provided. For example, a base fee of USD 10.00 is charged, plus USD 0.50 per unit.
- **F (Flat Fee):** Fixed fee that is charged for service provided that is not directly tied to the volume of the service. For example, balance reporting is USD 50.00 per month, regardless of the number or reporting files created during the month.
- **M (Minimum Fee):** Lowest fee that is possible for the service provided; for example, USD 1.00 per unit with a USD 5.00 minimum. The minimum fee is charged even if the unit count is less than 5.
- **X (Maximum Fee):** Highest fee that is possible for the service provided; for example, USD 1.00 per unit, with a USD 50.00 maximum. The maximum fee is charged even if the unit count exceeds 50.
- **R (Rate Based Charge):** This fee is calculated using a balance and an annual percentage rate. For example, an overdraft fee is calculated as the average negative ledger balance x 12% x 30/365.
- **D (Discounted Price):** This fee is calculated using a price that is less than the standard price for the service provided. For example, customer A is charged USD 0.90 per unit, instead of the standard USD 1.00 per unit.

- *H* (Threshold Price): The total volume determines the unit price for the service. For example, if the volume is 1,000 or less, the price is USD 0.10 per unit; if the volume is more than 1,000, the price is USD 0.09 per unit.
- *T* (Tiered Pricing): The price for the service is determined by the tiering structure and the total volume. The volume is broken down into as many tiers as necessary, and a different price is used to calculate the fee for each tier. For example, for the first 1,000 items, the price is USD .10 per unit; for more than 1,000 items, the price is USD .09 per unit.

**Unit Price** Enter the unit price per fee item.

**Count** Enter the number of statement items for each fee code.

**Balance Equivalent** Enter the account's balance equivalent, as defined by the bank.

---

**Note:** If you use *Flat Fee* for the Price ID, the service charge equals the unit price. If you want the service charge to equal the unit price multiplied by the count, you must use *Tiered Price* for the Price ID.

---

## Fee Statements - Service Adjustments Page

Use the Fee Statements - Service Adjustments page (FA\_BNK\_STMT\_SADJ) to enter adjustments to service charges found on the bank account analysis statement.

### Navigation

Banking, Bank Statements, Enter Fee Statements, Service Adjustments

### Image: Fee Statements - Service Adjustments page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Fee Statements - Service Adjustments page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

Bank Account Number	Description	As of Date	Adjustment Date	Service Charge Amount	Currency	Pay Method
0741-256458	Coin Bags	08/01/2000	08/01/2000	23.00	USD	
0741-256458	EFT Maintenance Fee	07/31/2000	07/31/2000	200.00	USD	

Use this page to apply any adjustments to service charges found on the bank account analysis statement.

**Payment Method** Select from the following options:

- *B*: Compensation by balance.
- *D*: Debited hard charged.
- *F*: Free (No charge.)
- *I*: Invoiced Separately

- *N*: Nonbalance compensable.
- *P*: Previously charged.
- *W*: Waived
- *X*: Not assessed through analysis.

## Automatically Importing Statement Information

Use PeopleSoft banking functionality to automatically import bank statement data from your financial institution to the account analysis application tables. Once the data are in the system, you can view and edit statement information on the Fee Statements - Balance Adjustment and Fee Statements - Service Adjustment pages.

### Related Links

[Fee Statements - Service Charges Page](#)

"Understanding Electronic Banking (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Financial Gateway*)"

"Setting Up Bank Statement Processing (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Financial Gateway*)"

## Account Analysis Validation Page

Use the Account Analysis Validation page (FA\_BNK\_STMT\_VALID) to validate a statement against a fee structure.

### Navigation

Banking, Account Analysis, Account Analysis Validation

### Image: Account Analysis Validation page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Account Analysis Validation page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

The screenshot shows the 'Account Analysis Validation' page with the following fields: Bank ID (121042882), Account # (0741-256458), Analysis ID (FA00000004), Statement Date (07/31/2000), and Fee Structure Code (CHCK3). A 'Validate' button is present. Below these fields is a table titled 'Fee Exceptions' with columns: Fee Code, Description, Bank Item Count, Item Count, Bank Service Charge, Computed Charge, Currency, Count Variance, and Charge Variance.

Fee Code	Description	Bank Item Count	Item Count	Bank Service Charge	Computed Charge	Currency	Count Variance	Charge Variance
000000	Ledger Bal-Avg Net			295,000.00		USD		295,000.00
000010	Collected Bal-Avg Net			250,000.00		USD		250,000.00
010000	DDA Maint	1		145.00	100.00	USD	1	45.00
100000	Brnch Dep	1000		750.00		USD	1000	750.00
150100	Checks Pd-Reg	100		3.00		USD	100	3.00

### Fee Structure Code

Select a fee structure code and click the Validate button. All exceptions, where the system does not match your bank statement, display in the Fee Exceptions grid. The types of exceptions appear according to column heading. The grid will

indicate what type of exception was encountered and the amount of the discrepancy

**Count Variance**

Displays the difference between the Bank Item Count and your organization's Item Count.

## Using the Account Analysis Manager

This section discusses using the Account Analysis Manager. You can examine your fee activity on an ad hoc basis for particular fee structures, for historical or current information.

### Page Used for the Account Analysis Manager

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Account Analysis Manager	FA_STMT_INQ_PNL	Banking, Account Analysis, Account Analysis Manager	Review fee activity on an ad hoc basis and perform other bank fee and account analysis tasks from a central location.

### Account Analysis Manager Page

Use the Account Analysis Manager page (FA\_STMT\_INQ\_PNL) to review fee activity on an ad hoc basis and perform other bank fee and account analysis tasks from a central location.

**Navigation**

Banking, Account Analysis, Account Analysis Manager

**Image: Account Analysis Manager page**

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Account Analysis Manager page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

The screenshot shows the 'Account Analysis Manager' interface. At the top, there are search criteria fields: 'SetID' (SHARE), 'Bank Code' (USBNK), 'Fee Structure Code' (CHCK3), 'Period Beginning' (12/01/2012), and 'Period Ending' (12/31/2012). Below these, it displays 'Total Charges' (190.00) and 'Currency' (USD). The main section is titled 'Account Analysis Activity' and contains a table with columns: Account, Fee Code, Fee Description, Item Count, Calculated Service Charge, and Currency. The table lists three rows of activity. At the bottom, there are navigation links: 'Validate Statement', 'Compare Fees', 'Edit Analysis Statement', and 'Import Statement'.

Account	Fee Code	Fee Description	Item Count	Calculated Service Charge	Currency
CHCK	010000	DDA Maint	0	100.00	USD
CHCK	250102	ACH Originated-Debit/Credit	2	40.00	USD
CHCK	350104	Out Fedwire-Auto-Freeform	1	50.00	USD

Your search results appear in the Account Analysis Activity grid.

- Validate Statement** Click to access the Account Analysis Validation page and validate account analysis.
- Compare Fees** Click to access the Fee Structure page and compare two to five fee structures.
- Edit Analysis Statement** Click to access the Enter Fee Statements page and modify a specific account analysis statement.
- Load Analysis Statement** Click to access the Import Bank Statement page and request electronic transmission of bank statement information.

**Related Links**

- [Comparing Fee Structures](#)
- [Performing Account Analysis](#)
- [Account Analysis Validation Page](#)
- [Automatically Importing Statement Information](#)

## Creating Fee Entries

This section discusses how to:

- Create fee entries.
- Create external transactions fee entries.

After establishing fee codes and structures, you can create fee entries for both delivered PeopleSoft fee sources and miscellaneous fee entries to track these expenditures. In addition, if you have enabled VAT (value-added tax) processing in Treasury Management, the system automatically calculates, processes, and tracks VAT amounts for VAT-applicable fee entries.

## Pages Used to Create Fee Entries

<i>Page Name</i>	<i>Definition Name</i>	<i>Navigation</i>	<i>Usage</i>
Enter Fees	FEE_GENERATOR_PNL	Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, Enter Fees	Create fees for deal, facility, EFT, and letter of credit sources.
Category Purpose	CAT_PURP_FEE	Click the Category Purpose link on the Enter Fees page.	Identify the high-level purpose of the payment instruction based on a set of predefined categories as per ISO 20022 external code list or a proprietary scheme name.

**Related Links**

- [Creating VAT Transactions for Fees](#)

## Enter Fees Page

Use the Enter Fees page (FEE\_GENERATOR\_PNL) to create fees for deal, facility, EFT, and letter of credit sources.

### Navigation

Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, Enter Fees

### Image: Enter Fees page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Enter Fees page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

### Category Purpose

Click this link to access the Category Purpose page (CAT\_PURP\_FEE), where you can where you can identify the high-level purpose of the payment instruction based on a set of predefined categories as per ISO 20022 external code list or a proprietary scheme name.

### Fee Information

#### VAT

Click the link to access the VAT Transactions Details page. The system performs an audit, checking that the business unit of the Bank Code is VAT enabled, and the Fee Code is configured for VAT and associated with a VAT applicable accounting template. The VAT Transactions Details page displays only if these conditions are met.

### Payment Information

#### Trans Date (transaction date)

Enter the actual transaction date of the fee entry. The system automatically populates this field with the system date.

<b>Payment Date</b>	Enter the specified payment date of the fee entry.
<b>Pay Fee</b>	Select to pay the fee. Also select a Payment Method.
<b>Instructions (settlement instructions)</b>	Select settlement instructions for processing the fee entry payment.
<b>Expense Template</b>	Select an accounting template to record this fee entry as an expense.

### **Accrual Details**

<b>Period Start and Period End</b>	Enter the beginning and ending dates of the accrual period.
<b>Accrual Template</b>	Specify the accounting template to record the accrual amount for this fee entry.

### **Position Details**

As the fee is processed through the system, you can view accrual details.

### **Cash Flow**

As the fee is processed through the system, you can view approval and payment details.

### **Related Links**

[Understanding the Settlements Payment Process](#)

# Using Cash Forecasting to Manage Cash Positions

---

## Understanding Cash Forecasting

In Treasury Management, a *position* is the total financial value of a particular set of transactions that are performed on behalf of an enterprise. A *cash position* analyzes cash flows to determine the amount of cash that is available at a particular time. Cash flow, or *cash forecasting* is the modeling of a company or asset's future financial liquidity over a specific time frame. Cash usually refers to a company's total bank balances, but cash forecasting captures your company's treasury position, which is cash plus short-term investments minus short-term debt. A treasury position can include non-cash flow data. Cash flow is the change in cash or treasury position from one period to the next.

PeopleSoft Cash Management provides a simplified worksheet tool for managing your treasury organization's cash forecasting. You can configure the cash forecast dimensions and forecast rules to meet your business needs, support drilling down to details to access more information about the cash forecast results, plug in multiple sources that affect cash forecast results, and support a CSV file interface or XML file interface to bring in cash forecast data from any source.

The cash forecasting worksheet functionality enables you to:

- Manage position worksheets (rather than trees).
- Create intraday bank reporting worksheets.
- Create cash position worksheet (CPW) data manually.
- Generate Cash Management position reports.

The Cash Forecast Results enable cash managers to view the cash position in several dimensions, such as bank, bank account, currency, business unit, and several more that you can configure during setup. From any cash forecasting results view, you can click on a line item to drill down into details. Configured at the position source, drill down functionality can take you directly to the source transaction.

Saved searches provide an instant view of your cash forecast results in your preferred dimensions. The relative date option in the search criteria enables users to define saved searches once and use them daily.

The cash forecasting process in PeopleSoft Cash Management adds flexibility to maintenance and reporting. In addition to defining source sets and manual position entry, you can:

- Define variance and variance alerts with cues.
- Display non-cash flow data.
- Use a streamlined worksheet setup.

- Select multiple position currencies.



Watch the Video Feature Overview on YouTube: [Cash Position and Forecasting](#).

## Setting Up Cash Forecasting

To define PeopleSoft cash forecasting information, use the Define Cash Forecast menu, which includes components to set up worksheets, forecasting rules, time spans, and position source options.

You will define the following setup and source data:

- Time sets.
- Position field types.
- Forecast mapping.
- Position source sets.
- Position sources.
- Forecast rules.
- Time span calculation.
- Position source SQL.
- Worksheet definitions.

As part of your installation of Cash Forecasting, you will need to evaluate the values needed for your business.

## Pages Used to Set Up Cash Forecasting

<b>Page Name</b>	<b>Definition Name</b>	<b>Navigation</b>	<b>Usage</b>
Define Time Sets	POS_TIME_SPAN_PNL	Cash Management, Cash Forecast, Define Cash Forecast, Define Time Sets	Configure time segments with corresponding start and end cycles and store associated time periods
Position Field Types	POS_FIELD_TYPE_PNL	Cash Management, Cash Forecast, Define Cash Forecast, Position Field Types	Define user-friendly field names.
Forecast Mapping	CSH_FCST_GRP_BY	Cash Management, Cash Forecast, Define Cash Forecast, Forecast Mapping	Set up dimensions for reporting cash forecasting numbers.
Position Source Set	SOURCE_SET_DEFN	Cash Management, Cash Forecast, Define Cash Forecast, Position Source Set	Define position source sets, such as actuals, forecast, projected, or intraday.

<b>Page Name</b>	<b>Definition Name</b>	<b>Navigation</b>	<b>Usage</b>
Position Source	POS_SOURCE_TBL	Cash Management, Cash Forecast, Define Cash Forecast, Position Source, Position Source	Define position records, drill back details, and selection criteria for position sources.
Position Source Contacts	POS_SOURCE_CNTC	Cash Management, Cash Forecast, Define Cash Forecast, Position Source, Position Source  Click the Contact Information link on the Position Source page.	Associate source contacts with a Contact Type of <i>Cash Forecast</i> to a position source.
Drill Back Details	POS_SOURCE_KEYS	Cash Management, Cash Forecast, Define Cash Forecast, Position Source, Drill Back Details	Define the method for drilling back to the source application, used to view details of a transaction from the Cash Forecasting Results page.
Selection Criteria	POS_SOURCE_SQL	Cash Management, Cash Forecast, Define Cash Forecast, Position Source, Selection Criteria	Enter selection criteria for a source or regenerate SQL for several sources in batch.
Forecast Rules	CSH_FCST_RULES	Cash Management, Cash Forecast, Define Cash Forecast, Forecast Rules	Identify forecasting rules to shift or replace forecasting values.
Calculate Time Spans	TR_TSPAN_REQ	Cash Management, Cash Forecast, Define Cash Forecast, Calculate Time Spans	Run the Treasury Position Time Spans process (TR_POSN_TSPAN), which calculates time spans for a specified time set.
Create Position Source SQL	TR_CREATE_SQL	Cash Management, Cash Forecast, Define Cash Forecast, Create Position Source SQL	Enter the parameters and execute a process that creates the SQL defined for a position source.
Worksheet Definition	WORKSHEET_DEFN	Cash Management, Cash Forecast, Define Cash Forecast, Worksheet Definition, Worksheet Definition	Define how your cash forecast worksheet will look and the calculations that will be made, including reporting currencies, forecast rules, source sets, and variance attributes.
Worksheet Line Items	WORKSHEET_LINE_ITM	Cash Management, Cash Forecast, Define Cash Forecast, Worksheet Definition, Worksheet Line Items	Define line items, position sources, and position source processing attributes for the worksheet.

## Defining Time Sets

Configure time sets to create time intervals, or time buckets, that you want to leverage to display cash forecasting results.

You can define time sets with varying intervals, such as daily, weekly, monthly, quarterly, yearly, or rolling. Look up sample data for the intervals mentioned here to evaluate the associated time periods and make appropriate changes. You should create new intervals as needed.

## Define Time Sets Page

Use the Define Time Sets page (POS\_TIME\_SPAN\_PNL) to configure time segments with corresponding start and end cycles and store associated time periods.

### Navigation

Cash Management, Cash Forecast, Define Cash Forecast, Define Time Sets

### Image: Define Time Sets page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Define Time Sets page.

The screenshot shows the 'Define Time Sets' page with the following configuration:

- SetID:** SHARE
- Time Set:** DAILY
- \*Description:** Daily Forecast
- Time Segment:** Daily Forecast (Number: 1)
- Start:** \*Type: Specific Date, Start Date: 06/01/2011
- Cycle:** \*Type: Relative, Number: 1, Relative: Days
- End:** \*Type: Number of periods, Times: 999

The 'Resulting Time Periods' table is shown below:

Period Start Date	Period End Date	Term
06/01/2011	06/01/2011	1
06/02/2011	06/02/2011	1
06/03/2011	06/03/2011	1
06/04/2011	06/04/2011	1
06/05/2011	06/05/2011	1
06/06/2011	06/06/2011	1
06/07/2011	06/07/2011	1
06/08/2011	06/08/2011	1
06/09/2011	06/09/2011	1

**Number** Indicates the sequential time segment that you are modifying.

**Start** Select a start type to indicate how the system determines when a time segment starts. Values are:

- *Defined by Period above*: Starts the current time segment when the prior time segment ends. You cannot select this option for the first segment.
- *Specific Date*: Starts the current time segment on a specific date. When you select this option, enter the date in the Start Date field.
- *Specific Period*: Starts the current time segment on the first day of a specified period. When you select this option, select the calendar on which to base the period start.
- *Today*: Starts the current time segment today. Select this value when you want the time span to be based on a current date. Every time the system calculates the time span, this field is updated with the current date.

### Cycle

Select a cycle type to indicate the repetition frequency of a time segment. Values are:

- *Relative*: Cycles the time segment a relative number of times. When you select this value, enter the number of times it repeats, and then enter the frequency of repetition in the Relative field. You can repeat a number of days, months, or years. For example, to have this time segment repeat daily for five days, you would enter 5 in the Number field, and select *Days* in the Relative field.
- *Use Period Definitions*: Cycles the time segment based on the period definitions from a business calendar. When you select this value, select the calendar on which to base this frequency. For example, suppose that you want this time segment to cycle by quarters. Select a defined quarterly calendar in frequency.

### End

Use to control when a time segment ends. After completing the appropriate number of cycles, the following values are available to control the end of the segment:

- *End of Next Cycle*: Completes the time segment at the end of the next cycle. Select the calendar to use to determine the ending.
- *End of Period*: Completes the time segment when the period that is defined by the selected calendar ends. Select the calendar to use to determine the ending period.
- *End of Previous Cycle*: Completes the time segment when the previous cycle ends. Select the calendar to use to determine the ending period.

- *Number of Periods*: Completes the time segment after repeating the cycle a given number of periods. Enter the number of times the period should cycle.

### Calculate

Click this button to generate the time span intervals. Your results appear in the Resulting Time Periods group box.

## Position Field Types Page

Use the Position Field Types page (POS\_FIELD\_TYPE\_PNL) to define user-friendly field names.

Position Field Types, also known as Alias Names, can be associated with prompt records and meta-SQL. They are used to map to source record fields, define position SQL criteria, and process cash forecast results.

### Navigation

Cash Management, Cash Forecast, Define Cash Forecast, Position Field Types

### Image: Position Field Types page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Position Field Types page.

The screenshot shows the 'Position Field Types' page with the following fields and controls:

- Alias Name**: BANK TYPE
- \*Field Type**: Other (dropdown menu)
- Description**: Bank Type
- Prompting Method**:
  - \*Prompt**: Translate (dropdown menu)
  - Record Prompt**: POS\_XLAT\_PROMPT (text field with search icon)
  - Field Name**: BANK\_TYPE (text field with search icon)
- Define Meta Text**:
  - Meta Field
  - Meta Text**: (empty text area with search icon)

Review existing Position Field Types and define new ones if required to map position source record fields.

Select a Field Type in the system that you want this position field type Alias Name to represent.

### Prompting Method

Select a Prompt option to indicate how to control prompting for values for the selected Field Type.

### Record

Select to base the prompts on the actual database records. In the Record Prompt field, enter the field on which prompting is based.

**Translate**

Select to base prompting on translate values rather than the records themselves, and select the field name to use for translation. This value applies only to field records that use translate values.

Define Meta Text

**Meta Field**

Select to incorporate a SQL statement with this alias. (Typically, you do not select this check box.)

The following table lists examples of alias names that are delivered with the sample database:

<i>Alias Name</i>	<i>FieldType</i>	<i>Description</i>	<i>Prompt</i>	<i>Record Prompt</i>	<i>Field Name</i>	<i>Meta Field</i>	<i>Comments</i>
%THIS DEAL	Other	This Deal	None			Y	Alias name with meta text <sup>1</sup>
ACCOUNT	Bank Account	Account	Record	BANK_ACCTNUM_VW			Alias name with record prompt
CANCEL_STATUS	Other	Cancel Status	Translate	POS_XLAT_PROMPT	CANCEL_STATUS		Alias name with record prompt and field
AMOUNT	Amount	Amount	None				Alias name with only field type value

1. Meta text for alias name %THIS DEAL is as follows:

```
(TREAS_HEADER_ID = %BIND(TREAS_HEADER_ID) and BUSINESS_UNIT = %BIND(BUSINESS_UNIT_DEAL) )
```

## Understanding Forecast Mapping

In addition to the system-defined groupings (Business Unit, Bank SetID, Bank, Bank Account, and Currency), you can map up to seven additional cash forecast dimensions for which you want to process cash forecast results and view them.

For each additional dimension mapped, you must update the Position Sources Mappings on the Position Source page and ensure that the source data have values for each mapped dimension.

As delivered in PeopleSoft Cash Management, the cash forecasting component stores results by bank, bank account, business unit, position currency, source set, value date, and transaction currency. No change to the forecast mapping is required if you view cash forecast results by delivered dimensions. Map a generic group-by field to an alias name if you want to summarize cash forecast numbers by another dimension.

## Forecast Mapping Page

Use the Forecast Mapping page (CSH\_FCST\_GRP\_BY) to set up dimensions for reporting cash forecasting numbers.

### Navigation

Cash Management, Cash Forecast, Define Cash Forecast, Forecast Mapping

### Image: Forecast Mapping page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Forecast Mapping page.

The screenshot shows the 'Forecast Mapping' page with the following details:

- Effective Date:** 01/01/1900
- Status:** Active
- Description:** Cash Forecast Mapping
- Comments:** Map Alias Name fields to generic Group By Fields to report cash forecasting numbers. These are user defined values in addition to the system defined Business Unit, Bank, Bank Account and Currency groupings.

The 'Mapping Detail' table is as follows:

Destination Field	Alias Name	Default Value
BANK_SETID	BANK SET ID	
BANK_CD	BANK COUNTERPARTY	
BANK_ACCT_KEY	BANK ACCOUNT KEY	
BUSINESS_UNIT_BANK	BUSINESS UNIT	
CURRENCY_CD	CURRENCY	
GRP_BY_FIELD_1		
GRP_BY_FIELD_2		
GRP_BY_FIELD_3		
GRP_BY_FIELD_4		
GRP_BY_FIELD_5		
GRP_BY_FIELD_6		
GRP_BY_FIELD_7		

### Destination Field

System-defined groupings include the following:

- Business Unit (BUSINESS\_UNIT\_BANK)
- Bank SetID (BANK\_SETID)
- Bank Account (BANK\_ACCT\_KEY)
- Currency (CURRENCY\_CD)
- Bank Counterparty (BANK\_CD)

The system also provides seven generic Destination Field values:

- GRP\_BY\_FIELD1

- GRP\_BY\_FIELD2
- GRP\_BY\_FIELD3
- GRP\_BY\_FIELD4
- GRP\_BY\_FIELD5
- GRP\_BY\_FIELD6
- GRP\_BY\_FIELD7

You can map these fields to create groupings that represent a dimension to be displayed in your cash forecast results. For example, you might choose to map to a geographic region by country.

---

**Note:** For each additional dimension mapped, you must update the Position Source Mappings and ensure that the source data have values for each mapped dimension on the Position Source page.

---

**Alias Name**

Select from user-defined Position Field Type values found on the Position Field Type page. Do not map to the alias names used by system-defined mappings.

**Default Value**

Enter a default value for each grouping field. If the source does not include a value for this field, the system uses the default value you define to group data.

## Position Source Set Page

Use the Position Source Set page (SOURCE\_SET\_DEFN) to define position source sets, such as actuals, forecast, projected, or intraday.

Position Source Sets represent categories for grouping position source data, which you can view and/or compare data between two source sets on the cash forecasting results page.

## Navigation

Cash Management, Cash Forecast, Define Cash Forecast, Position Source Set

### Image: Position Source Set page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Position Source Set page. .

The screenshot shows a web form titled "Position Source Set". It contains the following fields and values:

- SetID**: SHARE
- Source Set**: 2 PM
- \*Description**: 2 PM Cash Position
- Comments**: A large empty text area with a small icon in the bottom right corner.

Commonly used source sets are delivered as sample data with your system.

<b>SetID</b>	Enter a setID.
<b>Description</b>	Enter a description.
<b>Source Set</b>	Enter a category for grouping position source data.
<b>Comments</b>	(Optional) Enter comments.

## Setting Up Position Sources

A position source represents a source of data that is used to calculate cash forecast/position amount. It also holds details for drill back to source data and SQL criteria that can be applied when retrieving cash forecast/position amounts.

---

**Note:** At the time of installation, you should evaluate the appropriateness of the delivered data to your business context and assess whether to create your own position sources. In many cases, you must create your own.

---

To set up position sources for cash forecasting:

1. Define/identify the underlying position record.
2. (Optional) Define position source contacts.
3. (Optional) Configure drill back to source methodology.
4. (Optional) Define selection criteria for a source.
5. (Required if selection criteria are defined) Create position source SQL.

After mapping the required alias names—business unit, amount, value date, currency, and a reference—to fields in the record, you should map fields to use for additional forecast dimensions, such as bank, bank account, bank setID, and any Group By fields that you defined on the Forecast Mapping page.

## Position Source Page

Use the Position Source page (POS\_SOURCE\_TBL) to define position records, drill back details, and selection criteria for position sources.

### Navigation

Cash Management, Cash Forecast, Define Cash Forecast, Position Source, Position Source

### Image: Position Source page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Position Source page.

The screenshot shows the 'Position Source' page with the following details:

- SetID: SHARE
- Source: AP - ACTUAL
- Description: AP Actual
- \*Record: POS\_AP\_PYMNT\_VW
- Deal View:
- Reverse Amount Sign:
- Display Only:

**Position Source Mappings**

*Field Name	*Alias Name	Description	Default Value
BANK_ACCOUNT_NUM	ACCOUNT	Bank Account	
PYMNT_AMT	AMOUNT	Amount	
BANK_ACCT_KEY	BANK ACCOUNT KEY	Bank Account Key	
BANK_CD	BANK COUNTERPARTY	Bank Code	
BNK_ID_NBR	BANK ID NUMBER	Other	
BANK_SETID	BANK SET ID	Bank SetID	
BUSINESS_UNIT_GL	BUSINESS UNIT	Business Unit	
CURRENCY_PYMNT	CURRENCY	Currency Code	
STLTMNT_DT_ACTUAL	ESTIMATED SETTLEMENT DATE	Other	
PYMNT_METHOD	PAYMENT METHOD	Payment Method	
PYMNT_RECONCILE_DT	RECONCILE DATE	Other	
RECON_STATUS	RECONCILIATION STATUS	Other	
PYMNT_ID_REF	REFERENCE	Reference ID	
CREATION_DT	TRANSACTION DATE	Other	
FORECAST_DATE	VALUE DATE	Business Date	

Contact Information

### Record

Select the database from which the position source derives data.

### Deal View

Select to permit remapping of amount fields for different instruments.

### Display Only

Select to Indicate that the source data is informational only and will not be included in worksheet calculations. Display-only position sources can be added to the worksheet definition, in the Non-Cash Flow Details grid on the Worksheet Line Items page.

### Reverse Amount Sign

Select to reverse the sign on the amount from the source when the data are summarized.

**Note:** In order to create a valid source, you must map corresponding fields in the record to the alias names for the business unit, amount, value date, currency, and a reference.

**Field Name**

Displays available field names of the selected record.



Click the Position Field Types icon to define the sets of table fields that are available to the position management tool.



Click the Long Description icon to enter a comprehensive description for the field.

**Default Value**

Choose default values for the bank account key, bank code, bank setID, business unit, and currency, in case the fields in the source are empty.

## Position Source Contacts Page

Use the Position Source Contacts page (POS\_SOURCE\_CNTC) to associate source contacts with a Contact Type of *Cash Forecast* to a position source.

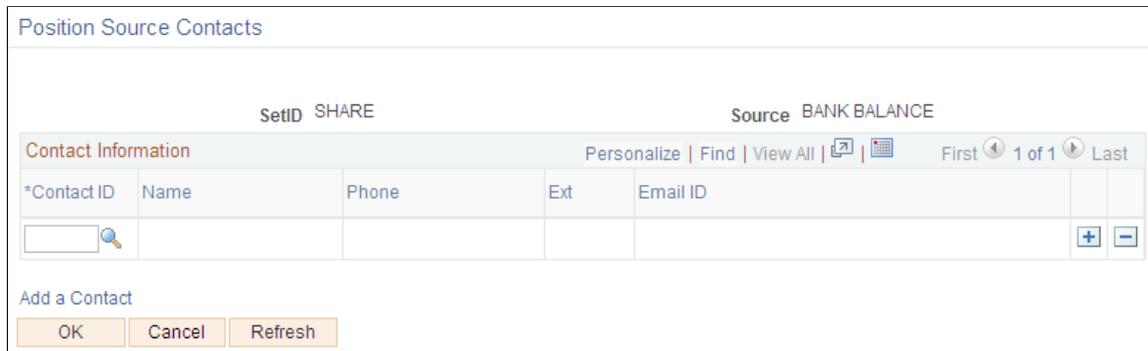
**Navigation**

Cash Management, Cash Forecast, Define Cash Forecast, Position Source, Position Source

Click the Contact Information link on the Position Source page.

**Image: Position Source Contacts page**

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Position Source Contacts page.



**Contact ID**

Enter the ID for a contact.

**Name, Phone, Ext, and Email ID**

Displays the contact’s name, phone, phone extension, and email ID, if available, from the contacts master table.

## Drill Back Details Page

Use the Drill Back Details page (POS\_SOURCE\_KEYS) to define the method to use to drill back to the source application, to view details of a transaction from the Cash Forecasting Results page.

## Navigation

Cash Management, Cash Forecast, Define Cash Forecast, Position Source, Drill Back Details

### Image: Drill Back Details page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Drill Back Details page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

The screenshot shows the 'Drill Back Details' page with the following configuration fields:

- SetID: SHARE
- Source: AP - ACTUAL
- Drill to Source: Component
- Menu Name: CREATE\_PAYMENTS
- Component Name: PYMNT\_INQ\_SRCH
- Target Record: AP\_VCHR\_INQ\_WRK
- URL Address: (empty)

Below the fields is a table titled 'Source System Key Information' with the following data:

*Source Fieldname	*Destination Field	Include in Drill	Include in Rank		
BANK_SETID	KEY_CHAR_40_01	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	+	-
BANK_CD	KEY_CHAR_40_02	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	+	-
BANK_ACCT_KEY	KEY_CHAR_40_03	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	+	-
PYMNT_ID	KEY_CHAR_40_04	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	+	-
PYMNT_ID_REF	KEY_CHAR_40_05	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	+	-
PYMNT_METHOD	KEY_CHAR_40_06	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	+	-

Specify the metadata to identify the drill detail information for the source. Enter the fieldnames from the record, and map them to the generic key fields in the Destination Field column. Select the mapped fields to be used for drilling back to the source and for ranking the rows.

A RANK() function is used to assign sequential numbers to the source detail result set. Provide sufficient Rank fields to identify a unique row in the group when entering source system key information.

#### Drill to Source

Select one of the following methods for drilling to source:

- *Component*
- *DoModalComponent*
- *External URL*
- *None*

#### Menu Name, Component Name, and Target Record

If you choose to drill to source by component, you must specify the menu and a component name. Specify a target record if the component points to a generic search page that doesn't go through a search. You must specify the target record in order to populate the correct fields.

<b>URL Address</b>	Enter a URL if you select the URL method of drilling to the source.
Specify the metadata to define the detail information from the source in the Source System Key information grid.	
<b>Source Fieldname</b>	Enter the fieldnames from the record, and map them to the generic key fields in the Destination Field column.
<b>Destination Field</b>	Map delivered character, date/time, and number key fields to source fields, such as the amount, value date, and bank. You identify the destination key fields and the system extracts the information that will be stored on the detail table, which will be used when you drill down to the details.
<b>Include in Drill</b>	Select the mapped fields to be used for drilling back to the source.
<b>Include in Rank</b>	Select the mapped fields to be used for ranking the rows. A RANK() function is used to assign sequential numbers to the source detail result set. Provide sufficient Rank fields to identify a unique row in the group.

## Selection Criteria Page

Use the Selection Criteria page (POS\_SOURCE\_SQL) to enter selection criteria for a source or regenerate SQL for several sources in batch.

In cash forecasting, you define your selection criteria by source. You can create a Selection Definition here, which may include several criteria, then associate it at the worksheet level with the source using the appropriate Selection SQL ID. You can reuse the same selection criteria on any worksheets for the source.

## Navigation

Cash Management, Cash Forecast, Define Cash Forecast, Position Source, Selection Criteria

### Image: Selection Criteria page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Selection Criteria page.

### Create SQL

Click the Create SQL button to create the combined SQL statement from the various statements for different sets of criteria.

### View SQL

Click the View All SQL to see the SQL that has been generated from the entered criteria. When the process finishes, a dialog box appears with the SQL statement.

Use these fields to create a Selection Definition:

### Selection SQL ID

Create an ID for the selection criteria for a source.

### Description

Describe the SQL Criteria.

Enter SQL criteria for each Selection SQL ID:

### Open

Select from blank, (, ((, (((, or ((((, depending on your SQL statement and proper SQL syntax.

### Alias Name

Select the appropriate alias name.

### Operator

Select an operator for your SQL statement.

### String Value

Enter any string value or choose one using the lookup prompt.

### Number Value

Enter a numeric value.

### +/-

Enter an addition/subtraction operator.

### Date Value

Enter a calendar date or choose one using the calendar prompt.

### Date Increment

Enter an incremental value of days.

<b>Close</b>	Select from blank, ), ), ), ), ), ), depending on your SQL statement and proper SQL syntax.
<b>And or Or</b>	Choose from blank, <i>AND</i> , or <i>OR</i> .
<b>Add row or Delete row</b>	Click to add or delete the current row.

## Working with Forecast Rules

Forecast Rules are used to shift amount, shift value date based on business convention, shift value date by year, shift value date by month, shift value date by days, shift value date based on payment method, replace forecast data values.

The Forecast Rules page will render differently depending on the rule type you select. You can create the following types of rules or scenarios:

- Amount
- Date
- Payment Method
- Replacement
- Worksheet Offset

The amount type rule is used to adjust the forecast amount, and you can add a weighting value. Or if you want to derive the amount from another field, enter the Alias Name for the field and choose either *Per Unit* in the Measurement field, along with Unit Price.

Use the Date type rule to adjust the forecast value date. You can specify a business day convention in the Convention field and enter the number of years, months, or days to adjust the source date.

Use the Payment Method rule type to shift value date by payment method.

Use the Replacement rule type to replace specific position source values.

Use the Worksheet Offset rule type when copying Cash Forecast Results to vary the date and amount.

## Forecast Rules Page

Use the Forecast Rules page (CSH\_FCST\_RULES) to identify forecasting rules to shift or replace forecasting values.

## Navigation

Cash Management, Cash Forecast, Define Cash Forecast, Forecast Rules

### Image: Forecast Rules page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Forecast Rules page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

The screenshot shows the 'Forecast Rules' page with the following fields and values:

- SetID:** SHARE
- Rule ID:** DIVIDEND
- Rule Type:** Amount
- \*Description:** Derive amount as a per unit value of stock
- Weighting:** 1.00000
- Forecast Amount:**
  - Measurement:** Per Unit
  - Alias Name:** FINANCIAL ASSET
  - Target Field:** TGTFLD\_NUM\_20
  - Unit Price:** 0.7500

#### Rule ID and Rule Type

Define the rule by creating a rule ID, and specify a rule type for the rule. Options are:

- *Amount*
- *Date*
- *Payment Method*
- *Replacement*
- *Worksheet Offset*

#### Description

Enter a description.

#### Weighting

Set the percentage that you want to apply to this cash forecast rule. You can also weight worksheet line items on the Worksheet Line Items page.

For example, you use the weight of 1.1 to forecast a 10 percent increase or 110 percent of your current situation. Similarly, you use a weight of .9 for a 10 percent decrease or 90 percent of your current cash situation.

In the Forecast Amount group box, enter values for these fields:

<b>Measurement</b>	Choose the <i>Per Unit</i> measurement option to enter a value in the Unit Price field.
<b>Alias Name</b>	Enter the alias name for another field from which you want to derive the amount.
<b>Target Field</b>	Select one of the available target record fields.
<b>Unit Price</b>	Enter a unit price value when you select the <i>Per Unit</i> measurement.

## Calculate Time Spans Page

Use the Calculate Time Spans page (TR\_TSPAN\_REQ) to run the Treasury Position Time Spans process (TR\_POSN\_TSPAN), which calculates time spans for a specified time set.

You can define time spans with varying intervals, such as daily for a week, weekly for a quarter, and then quarterly for a year. The time spans that you define can overlap, run consecutively, or both.

### Navigation

Cash Management, Cash Forecast, Define Cash Forecast, Calculate Time Spans

### Image: Calculate Time Spans page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Calculate Time Spans page.

Process Request Parameters				Personalize	Find	View All	First	1-2 of 2	Last
*Process Frequency	*SetID	Time Set	Description						
Always	SHARE	DAILY	Daily Forecast						
Always	SHARE	MONTHLY	Monthly Forecast						

To define the Process Scheduler run, enter a request ID and description and indicate if you want the system to process using a single setID or all setIDs.

<b>Process Frequency</b>	Specify the frequency with which the process or job is to be run. Choose from <i>Always</i> , <i>Once</i> , or <i>Never</i> .
<b>SetID</b>	Enter a setID.
<b>Time Set and Description</b>	Enter the time interval from sample data delivered with your system, or that you defined on the Define Time Sets page.

## Create Position Source SQL Page

Use the Create Position Source SQL page (TR\_CREATE\_SQL) to enter the parameters and execute a process that creates the SQL defined for a position source.

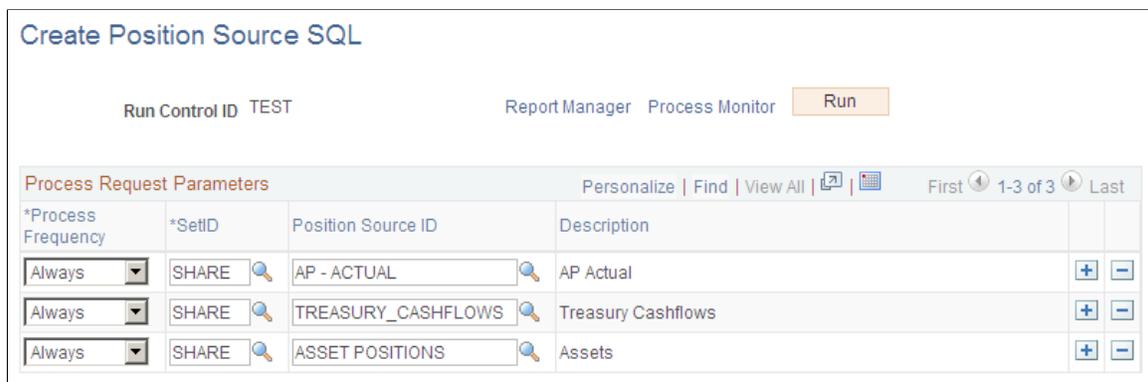
The position source SQL for cash forecasting is stored on the source. If you want to regenerate SQL for several sources in batch, you can do it through this component.

### Navigation

Cash Management, Cash Forecast, Define Cash Forecast, Create Position Source SQL

### Image: Create Position Source SQL page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Create Position Source SQL page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



**Process Frequency** Specify the frequency with which the process or job is to be run. Choose from *Always*, *Once*, or *Never*.

**SetID** Enter a setID.

**Position Source ID and Description** Identify the record that will be used as the base when building the SQL to retrieve the impacted rows of data according to the search criteria. The SQL will retrieve distinct records for the main source record primary key.

## Worksheet Definition Page

Use the Worksheet Definition page (WORKSHEET\_DEFN) to set up a worksheet structure to define the overall processing options, reporting position currencies, forecast rules, source sets, and variance attributes.

The worksheet definition determines how your cash forecast results will be computed and displayed.

### Navigation

Cash Management, Cash Forecast, Define Cash Forecast, Worksheet Definition, Worksheet Definition

#### Image: Worksheet Definition page (1 of 2)

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Worksheet Definition page (1 of 2).

The screenshot shows the 'Worksheet Definition' page for 'Worksheet ACTUAL VS PROJECTED'. It includes the following sections:

- Effective Date:** \*Effective Date: 01/01/2000, \*Status: Active.
- Description:** \*Description: Actual Vs Projected.
- Comments:** Actual Data comes from Previous Day Bank Statement Tables, Projected Data comes from Transaction Tables.
- Controls:** Print Worksheet, Copy Worksheet,  Carry Total Forward,  Allow Manual Updates.
- Variance Alert Percents:**
  - Acceptable: 0.00 (Green dot)
  - Warning: 10.00 (Yellow triangle)
  - Alert: 20.00 (Red square)
- Reporting Currencies:** Table with columns: \*Currency, \*Index, \*Rate Type, Default Currency.
 

*Currency	*Index	*Rate Type	Default Currency
CAD	MODEL	CRRNT	<input type="checkbox"/>
USD	MODEL	CRRNT	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

#### Image: Worksheet Definition page (2 of 2)

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Worksheet Definition page (2 of 2).

The screenshot shows the 'Worksheet Definition' page (2 of 2) with the following sections:

- Position Source Sets:** Table with columns: \*Position Source Set, Description, Default Source Set.
 

*Position Source Set	Description	Default Source Set
ACTUAL	Actual Cash Position	<input type="checkbox"/>
PROJECTED	Projected Cash Position	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
- Forecast Rules:** Table with columns: \*Rule ID, Description, Rule Type. (Empty row shown).
- Variance Definitions:** Table with columns: \*Source Set 1, \*Source Set 2, \*Description.
 

*Source Set 1	*Source Set 2	*Description
PROJECTED	ACTUAL	Actual Vs Projected

#### Print Worksheet

Click this link to preview the worksheet definition and print the worksheet.

The process generates Worksheet Definition Report (TRX5100).

**Copy Worksheet**

Click this link to open the Copy Worksheet page, where you can specify a new worksheet ID and create a copy of the active worksheet definition.

**Allow Manual Updates**

To enable locking, select the Allow Manual Updates check box. If a worksheet is locked, the value does not change if the cash forecast is recalculated. It stays as it is until it is unlocked.

**Carry Total Forward**

Select to populate the total carried forward row for line items, when viewing by Time Set on the Cash Forecasting Results page.

**Variance Alerts Percents**

Set up threshold levels of variance between two source sets. You can choose to show a variance that's acceptable as well as levels for displaying a warning or an alert.

There are three alert statuses you can use to indicate variance levels on the Cash Forecast Results page. Enter a numerical value to trigger an alert status as follows:

- **Acceptable Percent:** A variance value that is equal to or higher than the acceptable percent (always zero) but less than the warning percent will trigger a green circle acceptable status.
- **Warning Percent:** A variance value that is equal to or higher than the warning percent but less than the alert percent triggers a yellow triangle warning status.
- **Alert Percent:** A variance value that is equal to or higher than the alert percent will trigger a red square alert status.

**Reporting Currencies**

Define at least one and up to three different currencies for the cash worksheet. You must specify one currency as the default. This will be your position currency. Reporting currencies will be one of the parameters you can use to display your cash forecasting results on the Cash Forecasting Results page.

**Position Source Sets**

Enter one or more categories for grouping position source data that you defined on the Position Source Set page. You must specify one position source set as the default.

**Forecast Rules**

(Optional) Choose one Amount rule and/or one date type rule (Date or Payment Method). You can associate a maximum of one amount rule and one date type rule per worksheet definition.

---

**Note:** You cannot associate the Replacement rule with a worksheet definition. The Replacement rule must be associated with the source on the Worksheet Line Items page.

---

**Variance Definitions**

In order to define variance for comparisons, you must have more than one source set associated with the worksheet. You define variance levels in the Variance Alert Percents group box.

The variance percent is always calculated as follows:

$$\text{Variance percent} = (\text{Variance Amount}/\text{Source\_set2}) * 100$$

The Cash Position Variance Report shows the variance amount and variance percent between source sets that are defined on the Worksheet Definition page. You must provide variance definitions on the worksheet template to generate variance results.

See [Cash Position Variance Report](#).

### **Source Set 1, Source Set 2, and Description**

Enter source sets against which to calculate a variance between the two. You must also enter a description for each pair of source sets.

See also documentation for the [Worksheet Definition Report](#).

## **Worksheet Line Items Page**

Use the Worksheet Line Items page (WORKSHEET\_LINE\_ITM) to define line items, position sources, and position source processing attributes for the worksheet.

Each line item determines the different types of cash information that you are going to see on your worksheet, such as supplier payments, receipts, collections, and treasury inflows. You can enter cash flow as well as non-cash flow line items, which you can select to display in your cash forecasting results on the Cash Forecasting Results page.

## Navigation

Cash Management, Cash Forecast, Define Cash Forecast, Worksheet Definition, Worksheet Line Items

### Image: Worksheet Line Items page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Worksheet Line Items page.

**Note:** You must set up at least one cash flow line item, with at least one source set and source, to create a valid worksheet. The non-cash flow line items are optional.

To display cash flow details, enter values in the Cash Flow Details section:

- |                            |  |
|----------------------------|--|
| <b>Line Item</b>           | Enter an item category that determines the characteristic of the line you want to show in your cash forecasting results.   |
| <b>Position Source Set</b> | Enter a category for grouping position source data that you defined on the Position Source Set page.   |
| <b>Source</b>              | Identify a source record to be used in the search criteria. It will be part of the FROM statement of the SQL that will be generated to retrieve cash forecasting data.   |
| <b>Weighting</b>           | Enter a weighting value for the worksheet line items.<br><br>You can add a weighting value to the cash forecast by defining a forecast rule weighting value on the Forecast Rules page and then applying the rule to the worksheet on the Worksheet Definition page. |
| <b>Selection SQL ID</b>    | Enter an ID for the selection criteria for a source that you defined on the Selection Criteria page.   |
| <b>Replacement Rule</b>    | Enter a rule that you defined on the Forecast Rules page.  |

To display non-cash flow details, enter values in the Non-Cash Flow Details section:

<b>Line Item</b>	Enter an item category that determines the characteristic of the line you want to show in your cash forecasting results.
<b>Position Source Set</b>	Enter a category for grouping position source data that you defined on the Position Source Set page.
<b>Source</b>	Identify a source record to be used in the search criteria. It will be part of the FROM statement of the SQL that will be generated to retrieve cash forecasting data.
<b>Weighting</b>	Enter a weighting value for the worksheet line items.  You can add a weighting value to the cash forecast by defining a forecast rule weighting value on the Forecast Rules page and then applying the rule to the worksheet on the Worksheet Definition page.
<b>Selection SQL ID</b>	Enter an ID for the selection criteria for a source that you defined on the Selection Criteria page.
<b>Replacement Rule</b>	Enter a replacement rule that you defined on the Forecast Rules page.

---

## Generating the Cash Forecast

This topic documents these cash forecast processes:

- Entering manual positions.
- Running the Cash Forecast Calculations Application Engine (TR\_CSH\_FCST) process.

## Pages Used to Generate the Cash Forecast

<b>Page Name</b>	<b>Definition Name</b>	<b>Navigation</b>	<b>Usage</b>
Enter Manual Position	MANUAL_POSN_ENTRY	Cash Management, Cash Forecast, Process and Review, Enter Manual Position, Enter Manual Position	Capture data that can then be added to a cash position or associated with a specific worksheet.
Schedule Cash Forecast	CSH_FCST_REQ	Cash Management, Cash Forecast, Process and Review, Schedule Cash Forecast, Schedule Cash Forecast	Run the Cash Forecast Calculations Application Engine (TR_CSH_FCST) process.

## Understanding Manual Positions

Cash managers at times may want to include some numbers in the cash forecast that do not come from a particular source. Using manual position entry, you can bring in third-party details or numbers from another part of your organization. With Manual Position Entry, you enter data manually and create a source record for that data. You can then use this source record as a source detail in your Cash Forecast worksheet definition.

When entering manual position data, you choose either to search existing position data and copy or to add new position data.

To add new manual position data using the Manual Cash Position component access the Manual Cash Position component and populate the Manual Cash Position Entry grid at the bottom of the page and save the component. An asterisk (\*) designates required fields on the grid. The Manual Cash Position Entry grid allows users to associate each entry to a Worksheet, Source Set, or Cash Position dimension.

To add new manual position data using the copy feature, access the Manual Cash Position component and populate the Search Criteria and Additional Search Criteria fields as required by your business needs, and search for existing manual cash position data. Both Search Criteria and Additional Search Criteria provide many options to narrow down the manual cash position results, which are displayed on the Manual Cash Position Entry grid.

Use the Copy button to copy data forward. This example shows the Copy Data Forward fields:

### Image: Copy Data Forward page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Copy Data Forward page.

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Copy Data Forward". It contains the following fields and controls:

- Date From:** A text input field with a calendar icon to its right.
- Date To:** A text input field with a calendar icon to its right.
- Days in Select Period to Copy:** A text input field containing the number "3".
- Days in Copy Period:** A text input field.
- Number of Times to Repeat:** A text input field containing the number "1".
- Buttons:** Three buttons at the bottom: "OK", "Cancel", and "Refresh".

## Enter Manual Position Page

Use the Enter Manual Position page (MANUAL\_POSN\_ENTRY) to capture data that can then be added to a cash position or associated with a specific worksheet.

## Navigation

Cash Management, Cash Forecast, Process and Review, Enter Manual Position, Enter Manual Position

### Image: Enter Manual Position page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Enter Manual Position page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

**Enter Manual Position**

**Search Criteria**

SetID: %  
Unit: GBR01  
Value Date: [Date Picker]  
From Date: [Date Picker]  
To Date: [Date Picker]  
Currency Code: %  
Category: %

**Additional Search Criteria**

Worksheet: [Text Box]  
Position Source Set: [Text Box]  
Bank SetID: [Text Box]  
Bank Code: [Text Box]  
Bank Account: [Text Box]  
Day of the Week: [Dropdown]  
Month: [Dropdown]  
Day of Month: [Text Box]

Search Clear Copy

**Manual Position Entry** Personalize | Find | View All | First 1-9 of 9 Last

Entry Details Additional Information Grouping Information

*SetID	*Unit	*Category	*Value Date	*Reference	*Amount	*Currency		
SHARE	GBR01	COLLECTIONS	11/12/2008	CSGBCOL1	435,679.89	EUR	+	-
SHARE	GBR01	MANUAL POSITION	11/12/2008	CSGBMAN1	2,323.76	EUR	+	-
SHARE	GBR01	VENDOR PAYMENTS	11/12/2008	CSGBVND1	-376,425.68	EUR	+	-

### Search

Click this button to search existing position data.

### Clear

Click this button to start a new search.

### Copy

Click this button to specify parameters for copying forward rows of position entry information.

## Search Criteria

Enter search criteria, as your business needs require, for retrieving data.

### SetID

Enter a setID.

### Unit

Enter a business unit.

### Value Date

Enter a payment value date.

### From Date and To Date

Enter a date range, including a starting date and an ending date.

### Currency Code

Enter a currency code.

### Category

Enter a category for grouping position source data that you defined as a worksheet line item.

## Additional Search Criteria

Enter additional criteria, as your business needs require, for retrieving data.

<b>Worksheet</b>	Enter a Worksheet associated with the setID.
<b>Position Source Set</b>	Enter a Position Source Set associated with the Worksheet.
<b>Bank SetID</b>	Enter a setID to identify bank information.
<b>Bank Code</b>	Enter a Bank Code associated with the Bank SetID.
<b>Bank Account</b>	Enter a Bank Account associated with the Bank Code.
<b>Day of the Week</b>	Enter a calendar day.
<b>Month</b>	Enter a calendar month.
<b>Day of Month</b>	Enter a calendar day.

## Manual Position Entry Grids

Search results for the criteria you specified appear in the grids. You can manually add or delete rows or edit data that appear in the fields.

<b>SetID</b>	Enter a setID.
<b>Unit</b>	Enter a business unit.
<b>Category</b>	Enter a category for grouping position source data that you defined as a worksheet line item.
<b>Value Date</b>	Enter a payment value date.
<b>Reference</b>	Enter reference that will be used when reference is mapped on the Position Source Mappings grid on the Position Source page.
<b>Amount</b>	Enter the amount that should be used by the Cash Forecast Calculations Application Engine (TR_CSH_FCST) process to calculate cash forecast amounts.
<b>Currency</b>	Enter a currency code.

---

**Note:** All lines that are added to the Manual Position Entry grid must be of a currency for which an exchange rate is established; otherwise, the lines will not be included in the generation of the worksheet. Exchange rates are set on the Market Rates page.

---

## Understanding Cash Forecast Calculations

The Cash Forecast Calculations Application Engine (TR\_CSH\_FCST) process calls the calculation engine (TR\_FCST\_CALC), which uses the request parameters to process each request. For each Worksheet request, the system does the following:

- Selects rates for the Worksheet currencies.
- Selects detail data for each source.
- Applies rules and default values to the detail data.
- Summarizes the detail data by all the forecast dimensions.
- Loads the results into the detail and summary results tables.

Users can schedule the forecast process for each Worksheet and Source Set. The cash forecast calculation process will override all results in summary and detail tables that have been created for a specific calculation date and value date if the results are not locked. If the cash forecast results are locked, the system will not override the results. Oracle's PeopleSoft recommends locking the results on a daily basis.

---

**Note:** Ensure that position source data are ready before running the cash forecast calculation process.

---

## Schedule Cash Forecast Page

Use the Schedule Cash Forecast page (CSH\_FCST\_REQ) to run the Cash Forecast Calculations Application Engine (TR\_CSH\_FCST) process.

### Navigation

Cash Management, Cash Forecast, Process and Review, Schedule Cash Forecast, Schedule Cash Forecast

### Image: Schedule Cash Forecast page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Schedule Cash Forecast page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

The screenshot displays the 'Schedule Cash Forecast' page. At the top, it shows 'Run Control ID RUN1' and navigation links for 'Report Manager', 'Process Monitor', and a 'Run' button. Below this is a 'Calculation Parameters' section with a search bar and 'First 1 of 1 Last' navigation. The parameters include:
 

- \*Process Frequency: Always Process (dropdown)
- \*SetID: SHARE (text input with search icon)
- \*Worksheet: ACTUAL VS PROJECTED (text input with search icon)
- Position Source Set: ACTUAL (text input with search icon)

 Below the parameters is a 'Date Options' section with:
 

- \*Date Type: Relative Dates (dropdown)
- Days Back: 2 (text input)
- Days Ahead: 2 (text input)

### Calculation Parameters

#### Process Frequency

Specify the frequency with which the process or job is to be run. Choose from *Always*, *Once*, or *Never*.

#### SetID

Enter a setID.

**Worksheet**

Enter the worksheet definition for which you would like to calculate the cash forecast (Worksheet Definition page).

**Position Source Set**

Enter a position source set that is delivered with your system or one that you defined on the Position Source Set page.

**Date Options****Date Type**

Choose from these options:

- *Specific Dates* - When you select this option, enter values in the From Date and To Date fields.
- *Relative Dates* - When you select this option, enter values in the Days Back and Days Ahead fields.

---

## Working with Cash Forecasting Presentation and Results

Many options are available when you generate and display cash forecast results. For example, you can:

- View your position over a period of time or evaluate it for just one day.
- Analyze cash forecast trends and distributions using graphic representations.
- Perform a variety of actions, including transfer funds and execute cash sweeps.
- Access worksheet line item details and drill down to source transactions.
- Base your cash forecast on a previous worksheet, adjusting the amounts by specified factors to estimate future cash positions.
- Calculate variance and display visual cues in the results.

## Pages Used to Work with Cash Forecasting Presentation and Results

<b>Page Name</b>	<b>Definition Name</b>	<b>Navigation</b>	<b>Usage</b>
Cash Forecasting Results	CSH_FCST_RESULTS	Cash Management, Cash Forecast, Process and Review, Cash Forecast Results, Cash Forecasting Results	Assess and optimize enterprise cash flow.

<b>Page Name</b>	<b>Definition Name</b>	<b>Navigation</b>	<b>Usage</b>
Cash Forecast Search	CSH_FCST_SAVE_SP	Cash Management, Cash Forecast, Process and Review, Cash Forecast Results, Cash Forecasting Results  Click the Add New Search link or the Update Search link in the Actions list on the Cash Forecasting Results page.	Add or modify cash forecast search criteria.
Cash Forecast User Preferences	USER_PREFERENCES	Cash Management, Cash Forecast, Process and Review, Cash Forecast Results, Cash Forecasting Results  Click the Update User Preferences link in the Actions list on the Cash Forecasting Results page.	Set up the default search and other position functions, funds transfer settings, and charting options for the Cash Forecast Results.
Cash Sweep Request	CSH_SWEEP_REQ	Cash Management, Cash Forecast, Process and Review, Cash Forecast Results, Cash Forecasting Results  Click the Execute Cash Sweep link in the Actions list on the Cash Forecasting Results page.	Schedule the Cash Sweep Calculations process.
Copy Cash Forecast Results	CSH_FCST_SHOCK_RES	Cash Management, Cash Forecast, Process and Review, Copy Cash Forecast Results, Copy Cash Forecast Results	Copy a worksheet and modify cash flow amounts.

## Understanding Cash Forecasting Presentation and Results

The Cash Forecasting Results page when populated with data shows three main areas: a results grid, saved searches, and visual representations. The initial results page will be blank, and populated upon executing a search. Results displayed depend on the specified search criteria as well as cash forecasting user preferences.

### Results Grid

Cash Forecast Results grid displays cash forecast data corresponding to each worksheet line item and dimension. Rows in the results grid display worksheet line items, which may be associated with one or more position sources. The columns are dynamic and can represent any supported dimension, such as bank, bank account, currency, business unit, and several more that you configure during setup.

Depending on setup, the cash manager can analyze the cash forecast results and perform the following actions:

- Transfer funds.
- Execute cash sweeps.
- Access worksheet line item details.
- Drill down to source transactions.

You can also configure variance thresholds on the worksheet definition to calculate variance and display visual cues on the Cash Forecast Results grid for each worksheet line item. You can specify three variance thresholds: normal, warning, and alert.

## Saved Searches

Saved searches retrieve data from cash forecasting computations and display cash forecast results in your preferred dimensions. Saved searches offer views that are delivered with the system and shared across users. The relative date option in the search criteria enables users to define searches once, and execute daily. Saved Searches are created by saving the search criteria with a search name.

You can create and save searches to view cash positions for these dimensions:

- Each bank.
- Each bank account.
- A group of bank accounts.
- Cash sweep structures.
- Each business unit.
- A group of business units.
- User-defined dimensions.
- Each source set.
- Variance between source sets.
- Time periods, such as daily, weekly, monthly, and so on.
- Up to three position currencies.

You can also view transaction currency exposure.

## Charts and Graphs

The cash forecasting pie chart shows the cash forecast data calculated for each worksheet line item for a value date.

A trend analysis chart displays the cash flow for each dimension over time. Users can control the days to trend and the number of top dimensions to trend through User Preferences. The trend analysis graph helps create a clearer picture of historical patterns that can be used to anticipate cash flow needs.

# Cash Forecasting Results Page

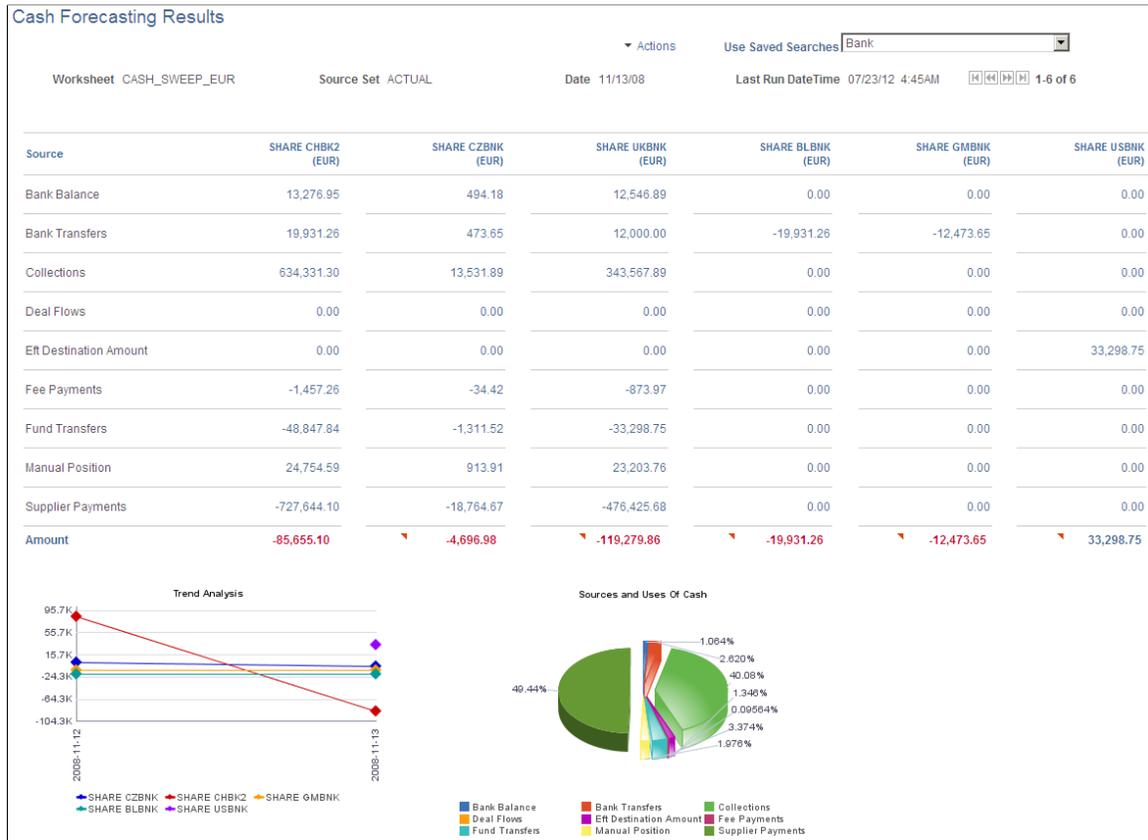
Use the Cash Forecasting Results page (CSH\_FCST\_RESULTS) to assess and optimize enterprise cash flow.

## Navigation

Cash Management, Cash Forecast, Process and Review, Cash Forecast Results, Cash Forecasting Results

## Image: Cash Forecasting Results page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Cash Forecasting Results page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



## Actions

Choose from these actions:

- *Add Manual Position* - Click this link to transfer to the Enter Manual Positions component and add manual cash positions.
- *Add New Search* - Click this link to open the Cash Forecast Search page and create a new search.
- *Delete Search* - Click this link to open the Delete Saved Search page, where you can select and delete one or more saved searches.

- *Execute Cash Sweep* - Click this link to schedule cash sweep requests. This link is available when the results grid is populated with data.
- *Run Cash Forecast* - Click this link to access the Schedule Cash Forecast component and run cash forecast processing to load forecast data.
- *Update Search* - Click this link to open the Cash Forecast Search page and edit an existing search.
- *Update User Preferences* - Click this link to open the Cash Forecast User Preferences page and define user specific choices.

### **Saved Searches**

Choose from saved searches to populate the results grid and graphic presentation.

### **locked and unlocked icons**

Indicates whether amounts are locked or unlocked. If cash flow details are locked, you cannot override the amount when you drill down to details. Also the value does not change if the cash forecast is recalculated for the same calculation date.

You can set the Cash Forecast User Preferences to use the lock reminder.

Locks are displayed only when viewing results by source set and time set. Also the position currency on the results page should match the default position currency specified on the Worksheet Definition page to display the locks.

Oracle's PeopleSoft recommends locking the results on a daily basis.

### **Amount links**

Click an amount link to drill down to line item details.

### **Related Action (on Total Amount column)**

Use the Related Action options on Total Amount column to transfer funds.

### **View Results by Bank**

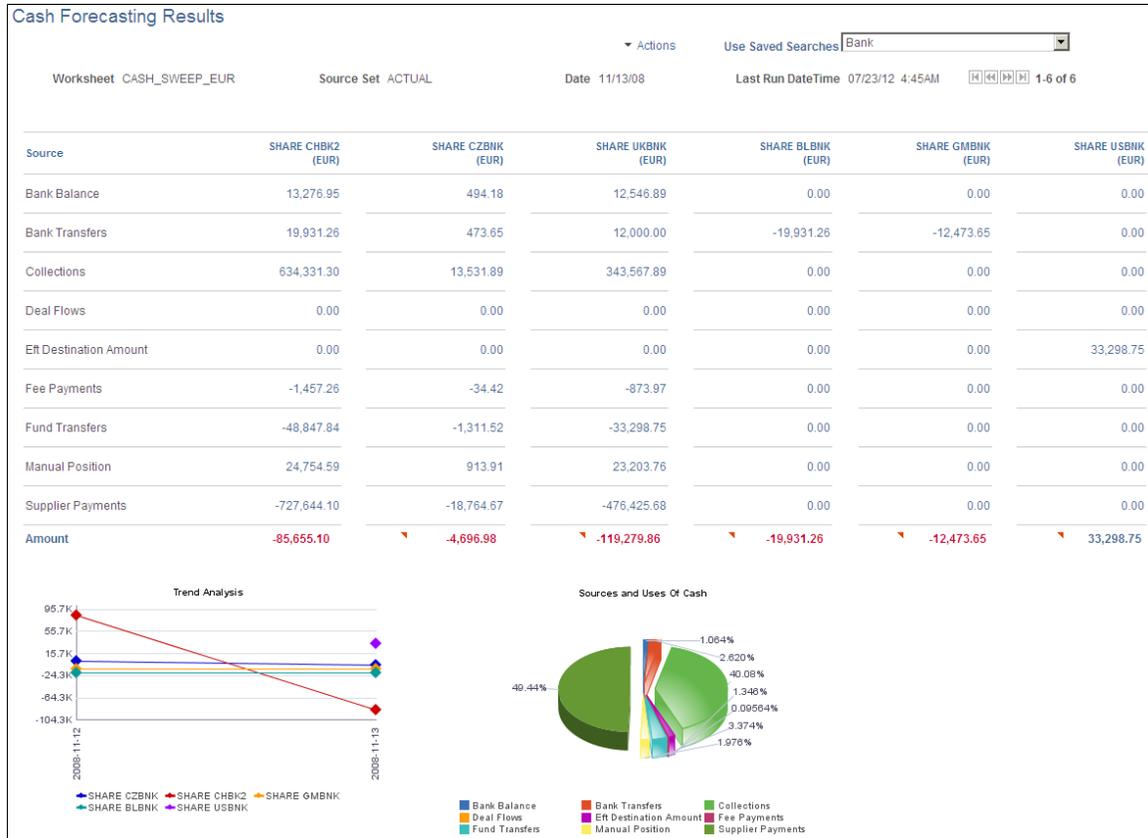
Populate the SetID, Worksheet ID, Amount, Position Source Set, Date Type, Shift by Days/Value Date, and Position Currency fields.

To view cash position needs for each bank, define a search by populating the View Results by field with *Bank*. You can further filter to view the results for a specific Bank SetID or Bank SetID and Bank Code.

On the results grid, each column shows data designated to a bank.

**Image: Cash Forecasting Results page - results displayed by bank**

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Cash Forecasting Results page - results displayed by bank.



**View Results by Bank Account**

Populate the SetID, Worksheet ID, Amount, Position Source Set, Date Type, Shift by Days/Value Date, and Position Currency fields.

To view cash position needs for each bank account, define a search by populating the View Results by field with *Bank Account*. You can further filter to view the results for a specific Bank SetID; Bank SetID and Bank Code; or Bank SetID, Bank Code, and Bank Account.

On the results grid, each column shows data designated to a bank account.

When you populate the View Results by field with *Bank Account*, you choose either *Position Currency* or *Bank Account Default Currency* in the Bank Account Currency field. These selections display results measured in the currency you defined.

This example shows results by bank account:

**Image: Cash Forecasting Results page - results displayed by bank account**

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Cash Forecasting Results page - results displayed by bank account.

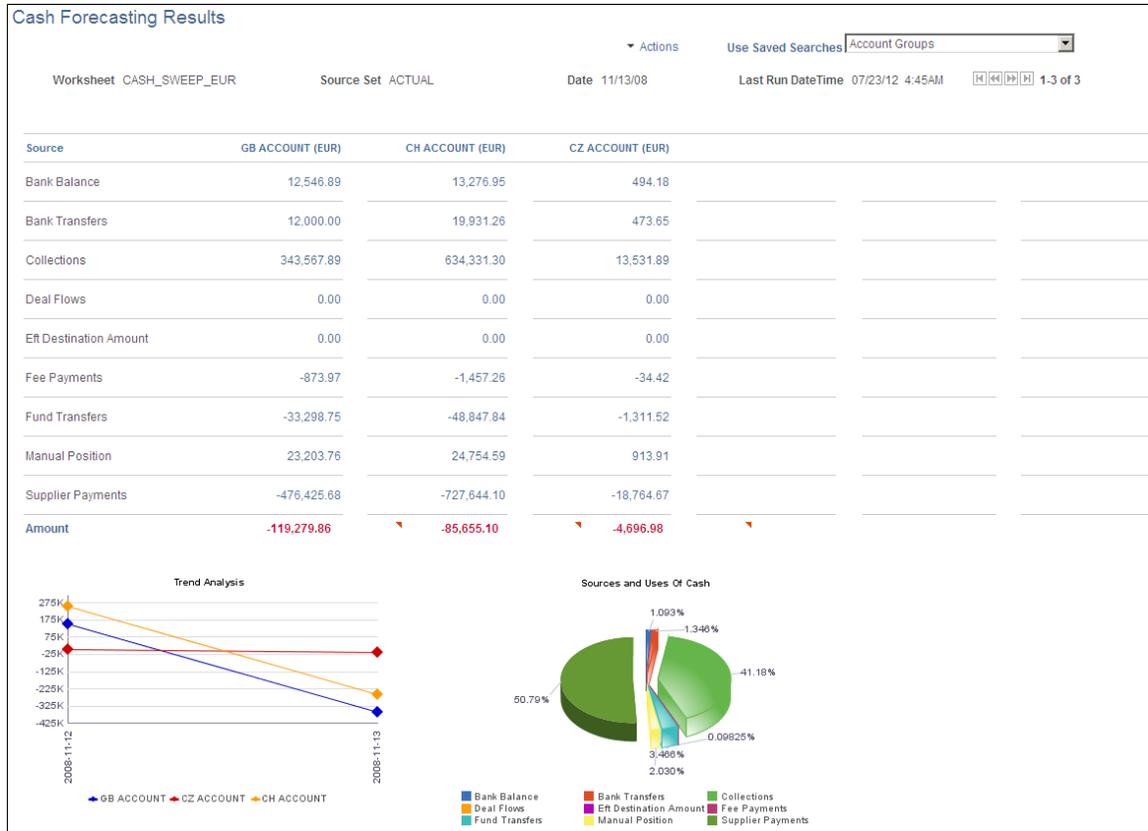


When you view results by *Bank Account* you have two more options for viewing results: In the Bank Criteria group box, choose to view the results by Account Groups or by Cash Sweep Structure. If you select Display By Account Groups, then each column shows an Account Group. The system summarizes position data for all bank accounts associated with that Account Group and displays the results in the grid.

This example shows results by account groups:

**Image: Cash Forecasting Results page - results displayed by account group**

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Cash Forecasting Results page - results displayed by account group.

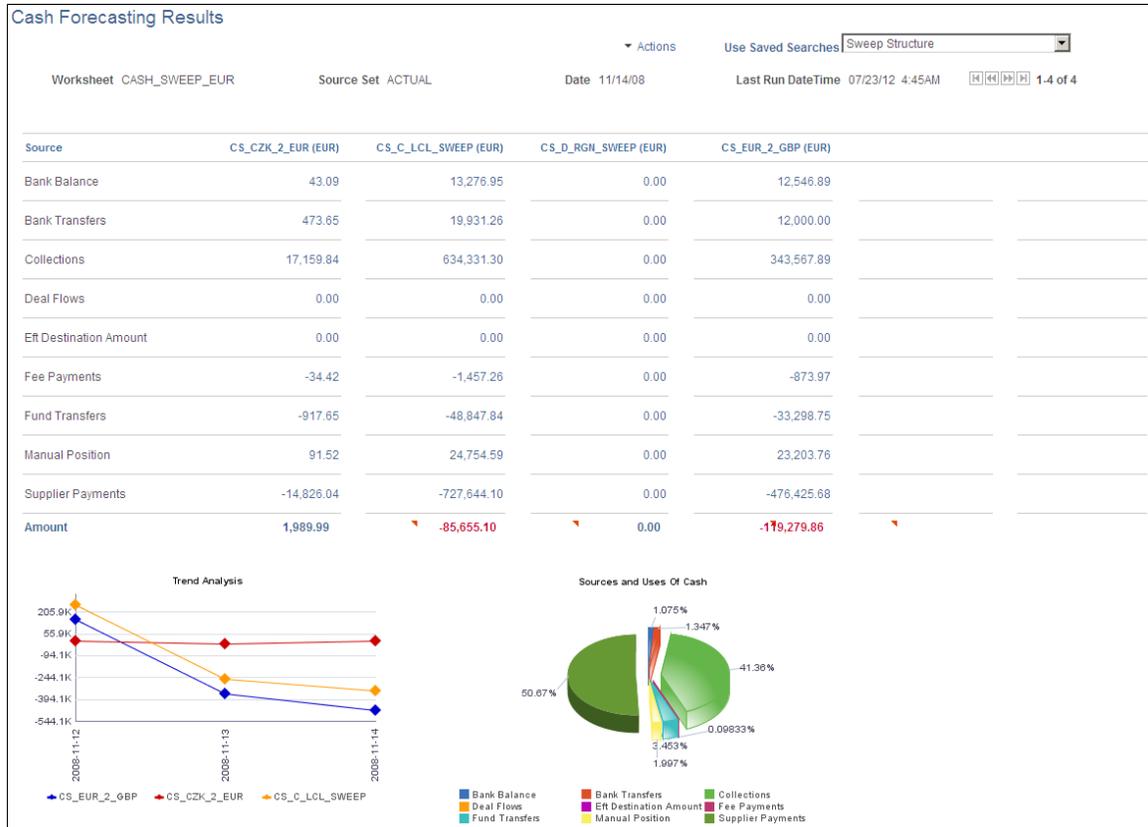


When you choose to display by cash sweep, then each column displays a Cash Sweep Structure. The system summarizes position data for all bank accounts associated with the selected Cash Sweep Structure and displays the results in the grid.

This example shows results by cash sweep structure:

**Image: Cash Forecasting Results page - results displayed by cash sweep structure**

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Cash Forecasting Results page - results displayed by cash sweep structure.



**View Results by Business Unit**

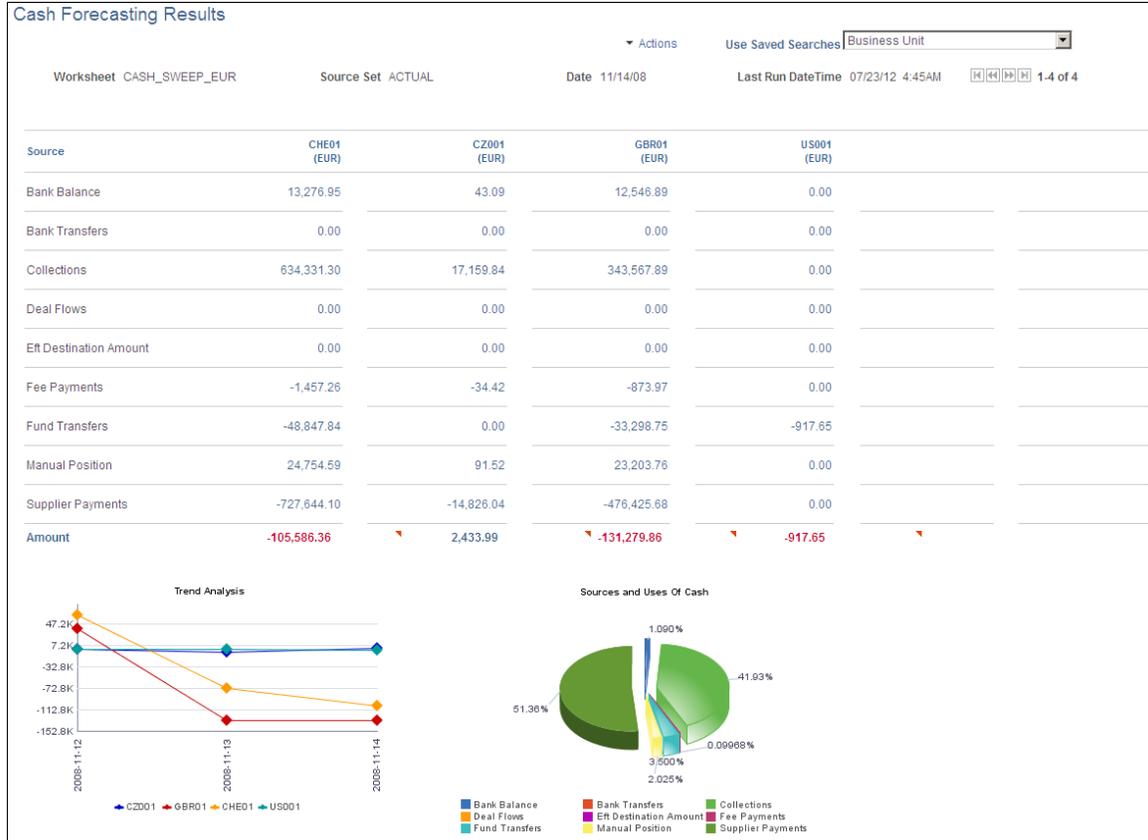
Populate the SetID, Worksheet ID, Amount, Position Source Set, Date Type, Shift by Days/Value Date, and Position Currency fields.

To view cash position needs for each business unit, define a search by populating the View Results by field with *Business Unit*. You can further filter to view the results for a specific Business Unit or a Business Unit Group. In the results grid, each column shows data designated to a Business Unit.

This example shows results by business unit:

**Image: Cash Forecasting Results page - results displayed by business unit**

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Cash Forecasting Results page - results displayed by business unit.

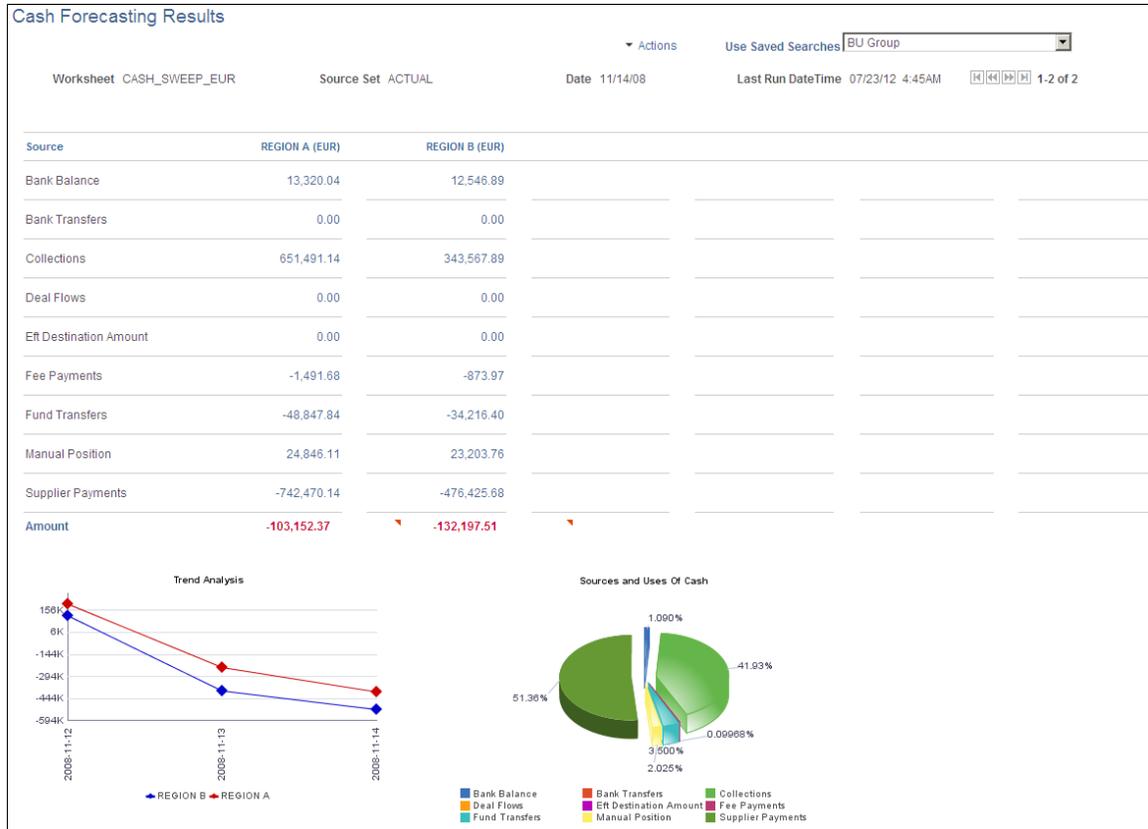


When you view results by *Business Unit*, you can also opt to display the results by a business unit group. The system summarizes position data for all business units associated with each Business Unit Group and displays the results in the grid, where the columns show data for each Business Unit Group.

This example shows results by business unit group:

**Image: Cash Forecasting Results page - results displayed by business unit group**

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Cash Forecasting Results page - results displayed by business unit group.



**View Results by User Configurable Dimension**

Populate the SetID, Worksheet ID, Amount, Position Source Set, Date Type, Shift by Days/Value Date, and Position Currency fields.

To view cash position needs for a user-configured dimension, define a search by populating the View Results by field with a *Group By Field* value. In the results grid, each column shows data designated to a user-configured Group By Field value.

**View Results by Position Currency**

Populate the SetID, Worksheet ID, Amount, Position Source Set, Date Type, and Shift by Days/Value Date fields.

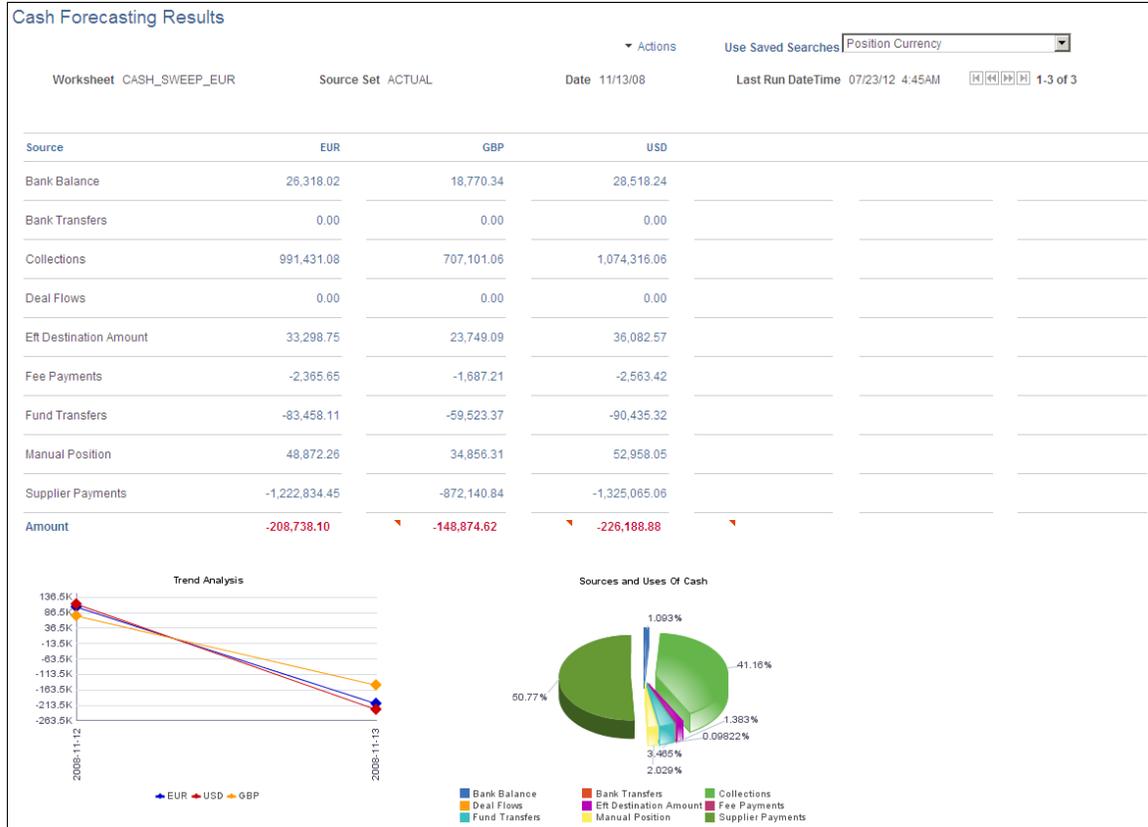
To view cash position needs for each position currency, define a search by populating the View Results by field with *Position Currency*. In the results grid, each column shows data designated to a Position Currency.

The system generates only a trend analysis chart when viewing results by Position Currency.

This example shows results by position currency:

**Image: Cash Forecasting Results page - results displayed by position currency**

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Cash Forecasting Results page - results displayed by position currency.



**View Results by Source Set**

Populate the SetID, Worksheet ID, Amount, Date Type, Shift by Days/Value Date, and Position Currency fields.

To view cash position needs for each source set, define a search by populating the View Results by field with Source Set. In the results grid, each column shows data designated to a Source Set.

This example shows results by source set:

**Image: Cash Forecasting Results page - results displayed by source set**

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Cash Forecasting Results page - results displayed by source set.



When you view results by *Source Set*, you can also opt to display the variance between two source sets, in the Variance Description field. This option requires that you first define multiple source sets and identify variance between the source sets on the Worksheet Definition. The system calculates the amount and percentage variance for each worksheet line item and shows a visual cue for each variance, based on the Variance Alert Percents defined in the Worksheet Definition.

Use this results option to view intraday cash position, actual versus projected forecast data, or both.

This example shows results by source sets for which variance alerts have been configured:

**Image: Cash Forecasting Results page - results displayed with variance alerts**

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Cash Forecasting Results page - results displayed with variance alerts.

Cash Forecasting Results

Worksheet CASH\_SWEEP\_EUR      Date 11/12/08      Last Run DateTime 07/23/12 4:45AM

Source	ACTUAL	FORECAST	Variance Amount	Variance Percent	Alert
Bank Balance	2,960.96	0.00	2,960.96	100.0000	■
Bank Transfers	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.0000	●
Collections	1,179,283.03	0.00	1,179,283.03	100.0000	■
Deal Flows	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.0000	●
Eft Destination Amount	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.0000	●
Fee Payments	-2,365.66	0.00	2,365.66	100.0000	■
Fund Transfers	-63,064.24	-63,064.24	0.00	0.0000	●
Manual Position	6,289.87	0.00	6,289.87	100.0000	■
Supplier Payments	-1,018,895.82	-1,018,895.82	0.00	0.0000	●
<b>Amount</b>	<b>104,208.14</b>	<b>-1,081,960.06</b>			

No sufficient data to display Trend Analysis

Sources and Uses Of Cash

Source	Percentage
Bank Balance	80.74%
Bank Transfers	0.08828%
Collections	36.15%
Eft Destination Amount	0.07052%
Fee Payments	3.76%
Fund Transfers	0.1975%
Manual Position	0.07052%
Supplier Payments	0.08828%

The variance amount and percentage are calculated as follows:

$$\text{Variance Amount} = \text{Column 2} - \text{Column 1}$$

$$\text{Variance percent} = (\text{Variance Amount} / \text{Source\_set2}) * 100$$

See also [Worksheet Definition Page](#).

**View Results by Time Set**

Populate the SetID, Worksheet ID, Amount, Position Source Set, and Position Currency fields.

To view cash position needs for each time set, or period, define a search by populating the View Results by field with *Time Set*. You must also identify a Time Set in the Time Set Criteria group box. In the results grid, each column shows data designated to a time period.

When you specify a time set, the system uses the time period from the associated Time Set. You can specify a start date as well.

Use this results option to view periodic forecasts. This example shows results for a three-day time segment:

**Image: Cash Forecasting Results page - results displayed by time set**

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Cash Forecasting Results page - results displayed by time set.

Cash Forecasting Results			
Worksheet CASH_SWEEP_EUR	Source Set ACTUAL	Use Saved Searches Time Set	Last Run DateTime 07/23/12 4:45AM 1-3 of 3
Source	2008-11-12 (EUR)	2008-11-13 (EUR)	2008-11-14 (EUR)
Bank Balance	2,960.96	26,318.02	25,866.93
Bank Transfers	0.00	0.00	0.00
Collections	1,179,283.03	991,431.08	995,059.03
Deal Flows	0.00	0.00	0.00
ER Destination Amount	0.00	33,298.75	0.00
Fee Payments	-2,365.66	-2,365.65	-2,365.65
Fund Transfers	-63,064.24	-83,458.11	-83,064.24
Manual Position	6,289.87	48,872.26	48,049.87
Supplier Payments	-1,018,895.82	-1,222,834.45	-1,218,895.82
<b>Amount</b>	<b>104,208.14</b>	<b>-208,738.10</b>	<b>-235,349.88</b>

**View Results by Transaction Currency**

Populate the SetID, Worksheet ID, Amount, Position Source Set, Date Type, and Shift by Days/Value Date fields.

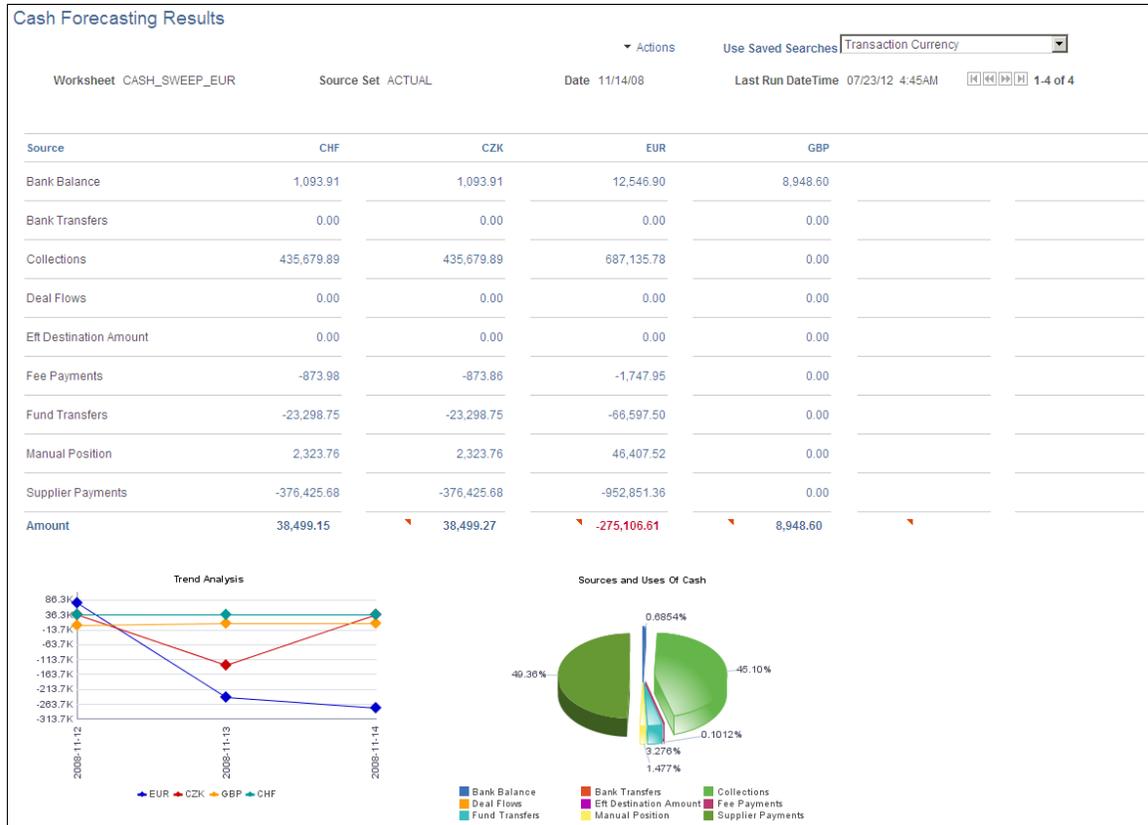
To view cash position needs for each transaction currency, define a search by populating the View Results by field with *Transaction Currency*. In the results grid, each column shows data designated to a Transaction Currency.

The system generates only a trend analysis chart when viewing results by Transaction Currency.

Use this results option to view currency exposure. This example shows results by transaction currency:

**Image: Cash Forecasting Results page - results displayed by transaction currency**

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Cash Forecasting Results page - results displayed by transaction currency.



### Understanding the Cash Forecast Search

The criteria you specify on the Cash Forecast Search can be used one time or reused multiple times. If you intend to use the search criteria multiple times, specify a search name after you have defined the search criteria and click OK on the Cash Forecast Search page. The system saves the search name and makes the search available for selection in the Use Saved Searches list.

**Note:** You can view results on the Cash Forecast Results page only if you have scheduled the Cash Forecast process and results are available in Cash Forecast Results tables.

### Cash Forecast Search Page

Use the Cash Forecast Search page (CSH\_FCST\_SAVE\_SP) to add or modify search criteria.

## Navigation

Cash Management, Cash Forecast, Process and Review, Cash Forecast Results, Cash Forecasting Results

Click the Add New Search link or the Update Search link in the Actions list on the Cash Forecasting Results page.

### Image: Cash Forecast Search page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Cash Forecast Search page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

The screenshot shows the 'Cash Forecast Search' page with the following fields and controls:

- \*Search Name:** Position Currency
- \*SetID:** SHARE
- \*Worksheet ID:** CASH\_SWEEP\_EUR
- \*View Results by:** Position Currency
- \*Amount:** Original
- Position Source Set:** ACTUAL
- \*Date Type:** Specific Dates
- Shift By Days:** 0
- Value Date:** 11/13/2008
- Position Currency:** (empty)
- Transaction Currency:** (empty)
- Variance Description:** (empty)

**Bank Criteria**

- Bank SetID:** (empty)
- Bank Account Currency:** Position Currency
- Bank Code:** (empty)
- Bank Account:** (empty)
- Display By Account Groups
- Display By CashSweep Structure

**Business Unit Criteria**

- Search By:** (empty)
- Display By Business Unit Group
- Bank Business Unit:** (empty)
- Business Unit Group:** (empty)

**Time Set Criteria**

- Time Set:** (empty)
- From Date:** (empty)

#### Search Name

Enter a new name for these search criteria, or use the lookup prompt to select an existing search, to review or edit the search parameters.

#### SetID

Enter a setID associated with the Worksheet ID.

#### View Results by

Select from these options. Depending on your selection, other search parameters on the page will be enabled.

- *Bank* - Activates Bank Criteria fields.
- *Bank Account* - Activates Bank Criteria fields.
- *Business Unit* - Activates Business Unit Criteria fields.
- *Group By Field 1* through *Group By Field 7*
- *Position Currency*

- *Source Set*
- *Time Set* - Activates Time Set Criteria fields.
- *Transaction Currency*

<b>Worksheet ID</b>	Enter the ID for the worksheet that you set up on the Worksheet Definition page.
<b>Amount</b>	Choose from <i>Original</i> or <i>Weighted</i> .
<b>Position Source Set</b>	Select the source set for which you want to see cash forecast results.
<b>Date Type</b>	Choose from <i>Relative Dates</i> or <i>Specific Dates</i> .
<b>Value Date</b>	Enter a Value Date for which Cash Forecast Results have been calculated. The Value Date field is available if the Date Type is <i>Specific Dates</i> .
<b>Shift By Days</b>	Enter a number of days to determine the value date for which results need to be displayed. This field is available when you select the <i>Relative Dates</i> date type option. The system calculates the value date by using the Shift By Days value to adjust the system date. A Shift By Days value of zero (0) specifies the system date.
<b>Position Currency</b>	Select a position currency that is associated with the Worksheet Definition.
<b>Transaction Currency</b>	Enter a value if you want to see the results for a specific transaction currency. This field is available when you elect to view results by <i>Transaction Currency</i> . You can filter the results for a specific currency.
<b>Variance Description</b>	Enter a description of the variance. Variance represents a comparison of results between two source sets and is set up on the Worksheet Definition.

### Bank Criteria

These fields are active when you view results by *Bank*.

<b>Bank SetID</b>	Enter a bank setID.
<b>Bank Code</b>	Enter a bank code.
<b>Bank Account</b>	Enter a bank account.
<b>Bank Account Currency</b>	Choose from <i>Bank Account Default Currency</i> or <i>Position Currency</i> .
<b>Display By Account Groups</b>	Choose to display results by Account Groups.

**Display By Cash Sweep Structure** Choose to display results by Cash Sweep Structure.

### **Business Unit Criteria**

These fields are active when you view results by *Business Unit*.

**Search By** Choose a business unit search option from the list:

- *Business Unit* - Enter a value in the Bank Business Unit field.
- *Group Business Unit* - Enter a value in the Business Unit Group field.

**Bank Business Unit** Enter a bank business unit.

**Business Unit Group** Enter a business unit group to display results for each business unit within that group.

**Display By Business Unit Group** Select to display cash forecast results by business unit group rather than by business unit.

### **Time Set Criteria**

These fields are active when you view results by *Time Set*.

**Time Set** Select a time set that you have defined on the Define Time Sets page.

**From Date** Identify the start date for the period of time.

## Cash Forecast User Preferences Page

Use the Cash Forecast User Preferences page (USER\_PREFERENCES) to set up the default search and other position functions, funds transfer settings, and charting options for the Cash Forecast Results.

### Image: Cash Forecast User Preferences page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Cash Forecast User Preferences page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

#### Default Saved Search

Select an existing saved search to use as the default when accessing the Cash Forecasting Results page. When a default search has not been specified, the initial results page contains no data.

### Position Impact Functions

#### Use Lock Reminder

Select to see lock reminders when viewing results by Source Set or Time Set.

#### Show Non Business Day Columns

Select to show a column for every day of the week.

#### Show Non Cash Forecast Lines

Select to display non-cash flow details, if defined in the Non-Cash Flow Details grid on the Worksheet Line Items page.

### Funds Transfer

Choose the type of funds transfer and the corresponding transfer template ID, or the deal entry along with the instrument type, which will be the default transfer type when you initiate a transfer from the results grid. Select one pair of values:

- *EFT Transfer and Transfer Template ID*
- *Bank Transfer and Bank Transfer Template ID*
- *Deal Entry and Instrument Type*

### Charting Options

The charting options apply only to the trend chart.

**Show Top Dimensions** Enter a number from 1 to 9 to show the top line dimensions.

**Days to Trend Analysis** Enter a number from 1 to 99. The trend chart shows the specified number of days calculated back from the Value Date in the search criteria.

## Performing the Cash Sweep from Cash Forecast Results

You can schedule a cash sweep from the Cash Forecast Results page or through the Cash Sweep component.

For more information about cash sweep and requesting a cash sweep in the Cash Sweep component, see [Processing Cash Sweep and Reviewing the Results](#).

Use the Cash Sweep Request page (CSH\_SWEEP\_REQ) to schedule the Cash Sweep Calculations process.

### Navigation

Cash Management, Cash Forecast, Process and Review, Cash Forecast Results, Cash Forecasting Results

Click the Execute Cash Sweep link in the Actions list on the Cash Forecasting Results page.

### Image: Cash Sweep Request page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Cash Sweep Request page.

The screenshot shows the 'Cash Sweep Request' page. At the top, there are links for 'Run Control ID', 'REQUEST\_SWEEP', 'Report Manager', and 'Process Monitor', along with a 'Run' button. Below this is a 'Process Request Parameters' table with the following data:

*Process Frequency	*SetID	*Sweep ID	Sweep Type	*Value Date Option	Value Date	*Transaction Date Option	Transaction Date
Once	SHARE	CS_D_RGN_SWEEP	Physical	Specify Date	10/25/2012	Specify Date	10/25/2012

The Cash Sweep Request page displays Sweep IDs associated with the Worksheet Definition. Select the Sweep IDs for which you want to schedule the Cash Sweep Request and click OK. The system schedules the Cash Sweep Request in the background.

**Note:** If you want to see the updated forecast results after executing a cash sweep, you must also run the Cash Forecast Calculations Application Engine (TR\_CSH\_FCST) process.

## Related Links

[Understanding Cash Sweep Functionality](#)

## Understanding Copy Cash Forecast Results

Copy Cash Forecast Results functionality allows a user to shift dates and amounts for calculated cash forecast results and analyze the impact of these shifts on Cash Forecast Amount. When shifting dates and amounts, you can apply offsets on an ad hoc basis or use predefined scenarios. The copied results are stored separately from the calculated results based on history.

## Copy Cash Forecast Results Page

Use the Copy Cash Forecast Results page (CSH\_FCST\_SHOCK\_RES) to copy a worksheet and modify cash flow amounts.

### Navigation

Cash Management, Cash Forecast, Process and Review, Copy Cash Forecast Results, Copy Cash Forecast Results

### Image: Copy Cash Forecast Results page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Copy Cash Forecast Results page . You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

The screenshot shows the 'Copy Cash Forecast Results' page with the following fields and controls:

- \*SetID: SHARE
- \*Worksheet: [Empty]
- Source Set: [Empty]
- Value Date: [Empty]
- Time Set: [Empty]
- Position Currency: [Empty]
- \*Amount: Original
- \*View Results: Calculated
- Fetch Results button
- Copy Worksheet button
- Navigation icons: Home, Previous, Next, End
- Cash Forecast Lines table with a 'Line Item' header and a value of 0.000.

- SetID** Enter a setID.
- Worksheet** Enter the ID for the worksheet that you set up on the Worksheet Definition page.
- Source Set** Select a source set that is associated with the worksheet on the Worksheet Definition page.
- Value Date** Enter a date if you wish to work with one date.
- Time Set** Select a time set, if you wish to work with multiple dates. This option is not supported when you want to see both calculated and copied results together by selecting *Calculated* and *Copied* in the View Results field.

<b>Position Currency</b>	Displays the default reporting currency that was defined on the Worksheet Definition page.
<b>Amount</b>	Choose from <i>Original</i> or <i>Weighted</i> .
<b>View Results</b>	Choose from these options: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <i>Calculated</i>: Select to shift date and amount.</li><li>• <i>Calculated and Copied</i>: Select to compare calculated and copied results.</li><li>• <i>Copied Results</i>: Select to view copied results.</li></ul>
<b>Fetch Results</b>	Click this button to populate fields in the Cash Forecast Lines grid with results that match parameters specified in the search fields.
<b>Copy Worksheet</b>	Click this button to copy the worksheet and modify the cash flow amounts.

## Copying Cash Forecast Results

To copy cash forecast results:

1. Enter search parameters in the Copy Cash Forecast Results page header fields to return calculated data.

- Click the Fetch Results button to populate the Cash Forecast Lines grid.

**Image: Copy Cash Forecast Results page with fetched results**

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Copy Cash Forecast Results page with fetched results. Retrieved results are ready to be copied:

**Copy Cash Forecast Results**

\*SetID  \*Worksheet  Source Set   
 Value Date  Time Set  Position Currency EUR  
 \*Amount  \*View Results

Source	2008-11-14
Bank Balance	25,866.93
Bank Transfers	0.00
Collections	995,059.03
Deal Flows	0.00
Eft Destination Amount	0.00
Fee Payments	-2,365.65
Fund Transfers	-83,064.24
Manual Position	48,049.87
Supplier Payments	-1,218,895.82
<b>Amount</b>	<b>-235,349.88</b>

- Click the Copy Worksheet button to access the Forecast Details – Worksheet Offset page.
- Specify the Worksheet Offset criteria as desired to shift the dates and amounts.

You can apply the offsets to shift individual rows or all rows.

**Note:** The system supports only positive integers and zero (0) for offset days.

**Image: Forecast Details - Worksheet Offset page**

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Forecast Details - Worksheet Offset page, with an example of offset details.

Forecast Details

Worksheet Offset

Scenario

Weighting     Years     Months     Days

Business Day Convention

Details									Personalize	Find	View All	First	1-15 of 32	Last
	Position Source ID	Reference Code	Sequence Number	History-Based	Value Date	Position Currency	Original Amount	Weighting						
1	BANK BALANCE	00700	3	N	11/14/2008	EUR	657.05	0.90000						
2	BANK BALANCE	00700	6	N	11/14/2008	EUR	11292.21	0.90000						
3	BANK BALANCE	0800	9	N	11/14/2008	EUR	38.78	0.90000						
4	BANK BALANCE	601613	12	N	11/14/2008	EUR	11292.20	0.90000						
5	BAX TRANSACTIONS	CSCHBAX3	5	N	11/14/2008	EUR	7138.13	0.90000						
6	BAX TRANSACTIONS	CSCHBAX3	6	N	11/14/2008	EUR	-7138.13	0.90000						
7	BAX TRANSACTIONS	CSCHBAX6	11	N	11/14/2008	EUR	10800.00	0.90000						
8	BAX TRANSACTIONS	CSCHBAX6	12	N	11/14/2008	EUR	-10800.00	0.90000						
9	BAX TRANSACTIONS	CSCZBAX3	17	N	11/14/2008	EUR	426.29	0.90000						
10	BAX TRANSACTIONS	CSCZBAX3	18	N	11/14/2008	EUR	-426.29	0.90000						
11	BAX TRANSACTIONS	CSGBBAX3	23	N	11/14/2008	EUR	10800.00	0.90000						
12	BAX TRANSACTIONS	CSGBBAX3	24	N	11/14/2008	EUR	-10800.00	0.90000						
13	MANUAL_POSN_ENT	CSCHCOL5	5	N	11/14/2008	EUR	261687.07	0.90000						
14	MANUAL_POSN_ENT	CSCHCOL6	6	N	11/14/2008	EUR	309211.10	0.90000						
15	MANUAL_POSN_ENT	CSCZCOL3	9	N	11/14/2008	EUR	15443.86	0.90000						

5. Click the Apply Worksheet Offset button and OK to save the copied results and return to the Copy Cash Forecast Results page.
6. To view calculated and copied results together, select *Calculated and Copied* in the View Results field, and click the Fetch Results button.

The results show the Calculated and Copied columns, with values for each line item.

**Image: Copy Cash Forecast Results page with calculated and copied results**

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Copy Cash Forecast Results page with calculated and copied results.

**Copy Cash Forecast Results**

\*SetID  \*Worksheet  Source Set   
 Value Date  Time Set  Position Currency EUR  
 \*Amount  \*View Results

Source	Calculated	Copied
Bank Balance	25,866.93	23,280.24
Bank Transfers	0.00	0.00
Collections	995,059.03	895,553.13
Deal Flows	0.00	0.00
Eft Destination Amount	0.00	0.00
Fee Payments	-2,365.65	-2,129.09
Fund Transfers	-83,064.24	-74,757.82
Manual Position	48,049.87	43,244.88
Supplier Payments	-1,218,895.82	-1,097,006.24
<b>Amount</b>	<b>-235,349.88</b>	<b>-211,814.89</b>

## Importing Cash Forecast Data

This section provides an overview of the cash forecast integration with external sources and discusses how to:

- Set up and import cash forecast data in the form of an XML message using Integration Broker.
- Import cash forecast data in the form of CSV or XML files.

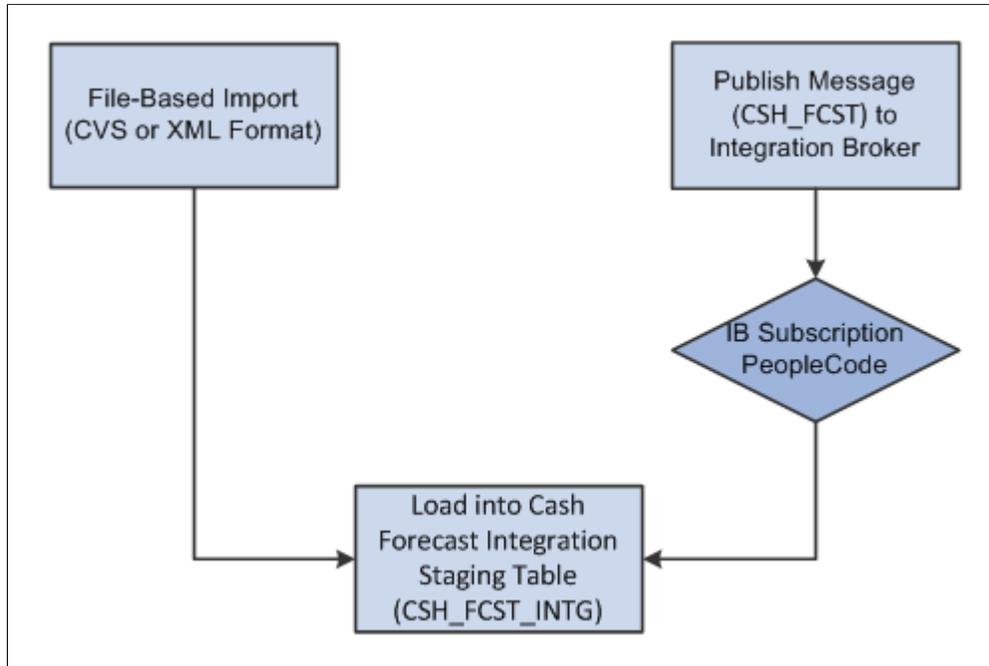
## Integrating External Sources into Cash Forecasting

You can load third-party cash forecasting data into Cash Management by using the Cash Forecast Integration component functionality. The Cash Forecast Import Application Engine process (CSH\_FCST\_IMP) enables you to import source data in CSV or XML formats directly from a flat file in your system, or via a file transfer protocol (FTP) or HTTP. If you decide to import the cash forecasting source data by using FTP or HTTP, you must also set up the source data host with appropriate user and Integration Broker access settings.

This diagram shows the process of loading external source data into Cash Management:

**Image: Importing data to use in cash forecasting**

Load data into the Cash Forecast Integration Staging table (CSH\_FCST\_INTG) using file-based import or message to Integration Broker



The system creates a new record (CSH\_FCST\_INTG) to store imported cash forecast data from external sources before loading into the application tables.

**Prerequisites**

If you decide to import the cash forecasting source data by using FTP or HTTP, you must also set up the source data node with appropriate user and Integration Broker access settings.

---

**Note:** For complete information on setting up Integration Broker and using service operations, see *PeopleTools: PeopleSoft Integration Broker* and *PeopleTools: Integration Broker Service Operations Monitor* documentation for your PeopleTools release.

---

**Page Used to Import Cash Forecasting Data**

<i>Page Name</i>	<i>Definition Name</i>	<i>Navigation</i>	<i>Usage</i>
Import Cash Forecast Data	FCST_IMPORT	Cash Management, Cash Forecast, Integration, Import Cash Forecast Data, Import Cash Forecast Data	Configure the Cash Forecast Import Application Engine process (CSH_FCST_IMP) to manage various import methods for integrating external source data into the application tables.

## Setting Up Integration Broker to Import Cash Forecast Data

The cash forecast import service operation (CASH\_FRCST) enables Cash Management to receive an incoming XML message with third-party cash forecast data, which is loaded into the cash forecast integration staging table (CSH\_FCST\_INTG).

PeopleSoft delivers service operations in PeopleSoft Integration Broker with a default status of *Inactive*. You must activate each service operation before attempting to send or receive data from a third-party source or another PeopleSoft system.

To set up this service operation, use the information in this table and refer to the integration scenarios in *PeopleTools: PeopleSoft Integration Broker*.

<b>Service Operation</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Direction and Type</b>	<b>Handlers</b>
Cash Forecast Import (CASH_FRCST)	Receives cash import data in the form of an XML message (CSH_FCST) from a third-party source.	Inbound Asynchronous One-Way	OnNotify

To activate a service operation, complete the following steps in PeopleSoft Integration Broker:

1. Activate the service operation.

On the General tab of the Service Operations component, select the Active check box for the applicable service operation version. If the desired version is not the default version for the service operation, the default version must also be activated.

2. For asynchronous service operations only, verify the queue is running.

On the General tab of the Service Operations component, select the View Queue link at the bottom of the page. On the Queue Definitions page, verify the Queue Status field has a value of *Run*.

3. Activate the OnNotify service operation handler for Cash Forecast Import (CASH\_FRCST).

Click the Detail link on the Handlers page (PeopleTools > Integration Broker > Integration Setup > Service Operations > Handlers) for the CASH\_FRCST service operation to access the Handler Details page. Verify the following Application Class parameters:

- Package Name = CSH\_FCST\_IMPORT
- Path = :
- Class ID = Forecast\_Import
- Method = OnNotify

This is an example of the Handler Details page (IB\_SERVICEHDLR\_SEC):

**Image: Handler Details page**

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Handler Details page.

The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Handler Details". It contains the following fields and controls:

- Handler Name:** Cash\_Forecast
- Handler Type:** OnNty
- Description:** Cash Forecast Import
- Comments:** A large empty text area.
- Handler Owner:** An empty text field.
- Application Class Section:**
  - \*Package Name:** CSH\_FCST\_IMPORT
  - \*Path:** :
  - Class ID:** Forecast\_Import
  - Method:** OnNotify (selected from a dropdown menu)
- Buttons:** OK and Cancel.

4. Activate an inbound routing to receive cash position import data into PeopleSoft Financial Gateway.

On the Routings tab of the Service Operations component, activate a routing definition for each node that will send or receive data. To activate a routing, select the check box next to the routing definition and click the Activate Selected Routings button.

5. Verify the node from the routing is active.

Go to the Node Definitions page and verify the Active Node check box has been selected for any sender or receiver nodes used in the routings that you activated on the Service Operations - Routings page.

## Import Cash Forecast Data Page

Use the Import Cash Forecast Data page (FCST\_IMPORT) to configure the Cash Forecast Import Application Engine process (CSH\_FCST\_IMP) to manage various import methods for integrating external source data into the application tables.

## Navigation

Cash Management, Cash Forecast, Integration, Import Cash Forecast Data, Import Cash Forecast Data

### Image: Import Cash Forecast Data page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Import Cash Forecast Data page.

Before executing the Cash Forecast Import Application Engine process (CSH\_FCST\_IMP), check for data in CSH\_FCST\_INTG table. Navigate to Query Manager and search for the Query CSH\_FCST\_INTG. Click on the Edit link to open the Query. Execute the Query in the Run tab.

On the run control page, click the Run button and select CSH\_FCST\_IMP process on the Process Scheduler Request page to load cash forecast data into the cash forecast integration (CSH\_FCST\_INTG) table.

#### Request Number

Enter a number or use the default autonumbering in the field.

#### Import Type

Choose from these options:

- *FTP*

Select if you are importing the file by using file transfer protocol, and enter an FTP connection through which to transfer the data. For the *FTP* import type, use a forward slash (/) to separate directories in the File Path field.

- *File*

Select if you are importing a flat file directly from a share drive or server, and complete the File Path and File Name fields. For the *File* import type, use a backslash (\) to separate directories in the File Path field.

- *HTTP*

Select if you are importing an XML file using a URL. No file path or file name is required.

**File Path**

Enter the complete file path location. If you want to see all files and folders located in the specified file path, click the Select File button. To select files by using the Select File button, you must include a trailing backslash (\) in the file path.

In order to process multiple files, you can use a wildcard (\*). For example, \\DIRECTOR\\*.\*. In this case, leave the File Name field blank.

Be sure that the directory you specify in the File Path field is accessible from the application server that this application is running on.

**File Selection Help**

Click to view help information (9450,1273) about specifying file paths and file names.

**File Name**

Enter a filename, including the file type extension.

When you select a file using the Select File button, the filename appears in the File Name field.

**Select File**

Click this button to display all files and folders located in the specified file path. You must enter a file path to view the list of files.

**Integration Node**

Enter the bank node that was used to transfer the data. This field appears only if *FTP* or *HTTP* is selected as the import type.

**View Integration Node Details**

Click to access the Node Definitions page and review property details of the selected node. This link appears only if *FTP* or *HTTP* is selected as the import type.

---

**Note:** Be sure that the application server and the Process Scheduler have access to the directory, FTP node, or HTTP node where the files are staged for import

---

**File Path**

Enter the complete file path location. To select files by using the Select File button, you must include a trailing backslash (\) in the file path.

You can also load all files in a given directory by using the \*.\* notation or search for files of a specific type by entering an asterisk and the extension suffix. For example, to search all files with a .txt suffix, enter: \\*.\*.txt.

---

**Note:** Be sure that the application server and the Process Scheduler have access to the directory, FTP node, or HTTP node where the files are staged for import.

---

<b>File Selection Help</b>	Click to view help information about specifying file paths and file names.
<b>File Name</b>	Select the specific file to import. If you want to import multiple files based on extension, leave this field blank.
<b>Select File</b>	Click to display a list of files available for selection in the specified file path. Click the filename to select the file. To select files by using the Select File button, you must include a trailing backslash (\) in the file path.
<b>File Type</b>	Select <i>CSV</i> or <i>XML</i> .
<b>Update Existing Rows</b>	Select to override existing data while importing cash forecast data. If this check box is selected, the existing rows are updated or deleted.

---

## Creating Cash Forecast Reports

After you have defined your cash worksheet and set up your position source, you can generate reports to analyze the worksheet template or the cash position data. This topic discusses the following cash forecast reports:

- Worksheet Definition Report (TRX5100)
- Cash Position Report (FCST\_RPT)
- Cash Position Variance Report (FCST\_VAR\_RPT)

### Worksheet Definition Report

Use the Worksheet Definition report to list detailed information as defined in a specified worksheet template or in all worksheet templates created on or after the date entered. This report lists detailed information for a Worksheet template structure, including reporting currencies, source sets, variance data, forecasting rules, line items, and sources.

### Cash Position Report

When you run the Cash Position Report, you choose among business unit, bank code, bank account, and other forecast dimensions to generate an XML Publisher report containing the cash position for each Worksheet Line Item and Source Set.

### Cash Position Variance Report

The Cash Position Variance Report shows the variance amount and variance percent between source sets that are defined on the Worksheet Definition page. You must provide variance definitions on the worksheet template to generate variance results. This report can be used to produce actual versus projected comparisons by defining an actuals source set and a projected source set., and sorted by specified criteria including bank, bank account, business unit, or user-defined forecast dimensions.

The Cash Position Variance Report shows the variance amount and variance percent between Source Set 1 and Source Set 2, which are defined in the Variance Definition grid on the Worksheet Definition page. The variance percent is calculated as:

$$\text{Variance percent} = (\text{Variance Amount}/\text{Source\_set2}) * 100$$

If Source Set 1 and Source Set 2 are not defined on the Worksheet Definition page, the report shows no data.

## Related Links

[Worksheet Definition Page](#)

## Pages Used to Create Cash Forecast Reports

<b>Page Name</b>	<b>Definition Name</b>	<b>Navigation</b>	<b>Usage</b>
Worksheet Definition (report)	RUN_TRX5100	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Cash Management, Cash Forecast, Reports, Worksheet Definition, Worksheet Definition</li> <li>Cash Management, Cash Forecast, Reports, Define Cash Forecast , Worksheet Definition</li> </ul> <p>Click the Worksheet Definition link on the Worksheet Definition page.</p>	Enter parameters that you would like to see on the Worksheet Definition Report ( TRX5100).
Cash Position Report	RUN_CSH_FCST	Cash Management, Cash Forecast, Reports, Cash Position Report , Cash Position Report	Enter parameters that you would like to see on the Cash Position Report (FCST_RPT).
Cash Position Variance Report	RUN_CPVAR_RPT	Cash Management, Cash Forecast, Reports, Cash Position Variance Report, Cash Position Variance Report	Enter parameters that you would like to see on the Cash Position Variance Report ( FCST_VAR_RPT).

## Worksheet Definition (Report) Page

Use the Worksheet Definition (report) page (RUN\_TRX5100) to enter parameters that you would like to see on the Worksheet Definition Report (TRX5100).

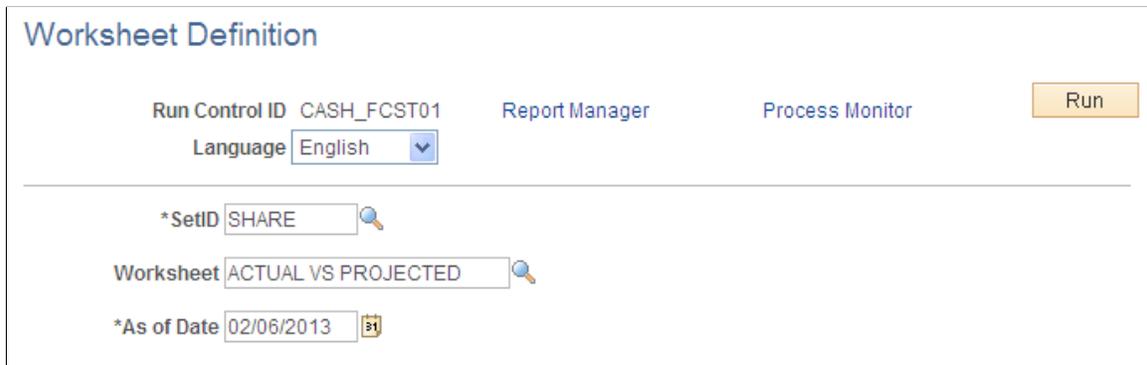
## Navigation

- Cash Management, Cash Forecast, Reports, Worksheet Definition, Worksheet Definition
- Cash Management, Cash Forecast, Reports, Define Cash Forecast , Worksheet Definition

Click the Worksheet Definition link on the Worksheet Definition page.

### Image: Worksheet Definition (report) page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Worksheet Definition (report) page.



The screenshot displays the 'Worksheet Definition' page. At the top, there is a title 'Worksheet Definition' in blue. Below the title, there are several controls: 'Run Control ID' with the value 'CASH\_FCST01', 'Report Manager' and 'Process Monitor' links, and a 'Run' button. A 'Language' dropdown menu is set to 'English'. A horizontal line separates the top section from the input fields. Below the line, there are three input fields: '\*SetID' with the value 'SHARE', 'Worksheet' with the value 'ACTUAL VS PROJECTED', and '\*As of Date' with the value '02/06/2013'. Each input field has a magnifying glass icon for search and a calendar icon for date selection.

## Cash Position Report Page

Use the Cash Position Report run control page (RUN\_CSH\_FCST) to enter parameters that you would like to see on the Cash Position Report (FCST\_RPT).

## Navigation

Cash Management, Cash Forecast, Reports, Cash Position Report , Cash Position Report

### Image: Cash Position Report page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Cash Position Report page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

The screenshot shows the 'Cash Position Report' page with the following fields and controls:

- Run Control ID: CASH\_FCST01
- Report Manager
- Process Monitor
- Run button
- Language: English
- \*SetID: SHARE
- \*Worksheet: INTRADAY\_CASH\_POSN
- Report by Field: Bank Account
- Position Currency: USD
- Value Date: 10/11/2012
- \*Amount: Original
- Position Source Set: 10 AM
- Bank Account Criteria**
  - All Accounts
  - Bank Account
  - Account Group
  - Account Group ID: TR ACCTS
- Bank Criteria**
  - All Banks
  - Bank Code
- Business Unit Criteria**
  - Process All Business Units
  - Business Unit Group
  - Business Unit

Enter the report parameters and click the Run button.

On the Process Scheduler Request page, select the BI Publisher process FCST\_RPT and the desired output format (PDF, RTF, XLS, or HTML) to generate the Cash Position Report.

#### Run Control ID

Displays the existing or new ID you specified on the search page.

#### Language

Select the language in which the report should be generated.

#### SetID

Enter a setID.

#### Worksheet

Enter the ID for the worksheet template that you set up on the Worksheet Definition page.

#### Report by Field

Select from these options. Depending on your selection, report parameters on the page will change.

- *Bank* - Activates the Bank Criteria fields.
- *Bank Account* - Activates the Bank Account Criteria fields.
- *Business Unit* - Activates the Business Unit Criteria fields.

- *Group By Field 1* through *Group By Field 7* (generic values for user-defined cash forecast dimensions) - Each requires the Report by Field Value field, which appears upon selecting one of the Group By Field options.
- *Position Currency*
- *Source Set*
- *Value Date* - Requires the From Date and To Date fields, which appear upon selecting *Value Date*, and hides the Value Date entry field.

The value you choose in Report by Field is used to categorize worksheet summary lines on the Cash Position Report.

**Position Currency**

Displays the default reporting currency that was defined on the Worksheet Definition page.

**Amount**

Choose from *Original* or *Weighted*.

**Position Source Set**

Enter a category for grouping position source data that you defined on the Position Source Set page.

## Cash Position Variance Report Page

Use the Cash Position Variance Report page (RUN\_CPVAR\_RPT) to enter parameters that you would like to see on the Cash Position Variance Report (FCST\_VAR\_RPT).

## Navigation

Cash Management, Cash Forecast, Reports, Cash Position Variance Report, Cash Position Variance Report

### Image: Cash Position Variance Report page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Cash Position Variance Report page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

The screenshot shows the 'Cash Position Variance Report' page with the following fields and controls:

- Run Control ID:** CASH\_FCST01
- Report Manager:** Report Manager
- Process Monitor:** Process Monitor
- Run button:** Run
- Language:** English (dropdown)
- \*SetID:** SHARE (text input with search icon)
- \*Worksheet:** CASH FORECAST (text input with search icon)
- Position Currency:** USD (text input with search icon)
- Value Date:** 10/11/2012 (text input with search icon)
- \*Amount:** Original (dropdown)
- Forecast Dimensions:** Group by Field: Business Unit (dropdown)
- Bank Account Criteria:**
  - All Accounts
  - Bank Account
  - Account Group
- Bank Criteria:**
  - All Banks
  - Bank Code
- Business Unit Criteria:**
  - Process All Business Units
  - Business Unit Group
  - Business Unit

Enter the report parameters and click the Run button.

On the Process Scheduler Request page, select the BI Publisher process FCST\_VAR\_RPT and the desired output format (PDF, RTF, XLS, or HTML) to generate the Cash Position Variance Report.

#### Run Control ID

Displays the existing or new ID you specified on the search page.

#### Language

Select the language in which the report should be generated.

#### SetID

Enter a setID.

#### Worksheet

Enter the ID for the worksheet template that you set up on the Worksheet Definition page.

#### Position Currency

Displays the default reporting currency that was defined on the Worksheet Definition page.

#### Value Date

Enter a payment date value.

#### Amount

Choose from Original or Weighted.

## Forecast Dimensions

### Group by Field

Select from these options. Depending on your selection, report parameters on the page will change.

- *Bank* - Activates the Bank Criteria fields.
- *Bank Account* - Activates the Bank Account Criteria fields.
- *Business Unit* -Activates the Business Unit Criteria fields.
- *Group By Field 1* through *Group By Field 7* (generic values for user-defined cash forecast dimensions) - Each requires the Report by Field Value field, which appears upon selecting one of the Group By Field options.

The value you select for Group by Field is used to categorize worksheet summary lines on the Cash Position Variance Report.

## Chapter 7

# Managing Bilateral Netting

---

## Understanding the Bilateral Netting Process

Bilateral netting is a process by which two parties (supplier and client to each other) reduce or aggregate the overall number of transactions between them. This decreases actual transaction volume between the two parties. It also decreases the amount of accounting activity and associated business costs (for example, banking fees).

This chapter discusses how to configure, define, and process netting transactions. You can:

- Select the suppliers and customers involved in a netting relationship.
- Define the rules, contracts, sequence order, and settlement method of a net.
- Generate inquiries and reports on your netting data.

There are two netting closing methods: *partial* and *full*.

- In partial netting, all items are netted to zero (0), and no payment or receipt of funds is done. You must run Pay Cycle Manager to make any adjustments or changes to the vouchers. Any voucher or item balance that is remaining is handled separately in Payables or Receivables.

Only the matching balance is paid off during partial netting, leaving some receivables items or payables items open. For example, if the total amount of all payables items participating in a netting cycle is more than the total amount of all receivables items, all receivables items are paid (or closed). The total amount applied to the receivables items is then used to pay individual payables items until this amount reaches zero. Likewise, if the total amount of all receivables items participating in a netting cycle is higher than the total amount of all payables items, all the payables items are paid. The total amount applied to the payables items is then used to pay individual receivables items until this amount reaches zero.

- With full netting, you pay or receive all voucher items that are due.

During full netting processing, all receivables and payables items participating in the netting cycle are paid, and a new item is created for the remaining balance. This means that if the total amount of all payables items participating in any one netting cycle is more than the total amount of all participating receivables items, the system automatically creates a new receivables item (an invoice). If the total amount of all receivables items is more than the total amount of all payables items, the system creates a new payables item (a voucher).

---

**Note:** PeopleSoft delivers and supports only partial bilateral netting functionality. However, you can adapt the application to handle full bilateral netting functionality (though PeopleSoft will not support this configuration). In addition, when using full bilateral netting functionality, you can also optionally activate the value-added tax (VAT) functionality to calculate VAT transactions.

---

Here is an example of partial bilateral netting:

Company A is both a client and a supplier of Company B and holds Accounts Payable (AP) and Accounts Receivable (AR) line items in relation to Company B. The two companies set up a contractual netting relationship, modifying their typical accounting, to enter into this protocol. They agree on particular intervals to conduct netting and zero out their respective accounts.

Company A's books contain the following line-item amounts:

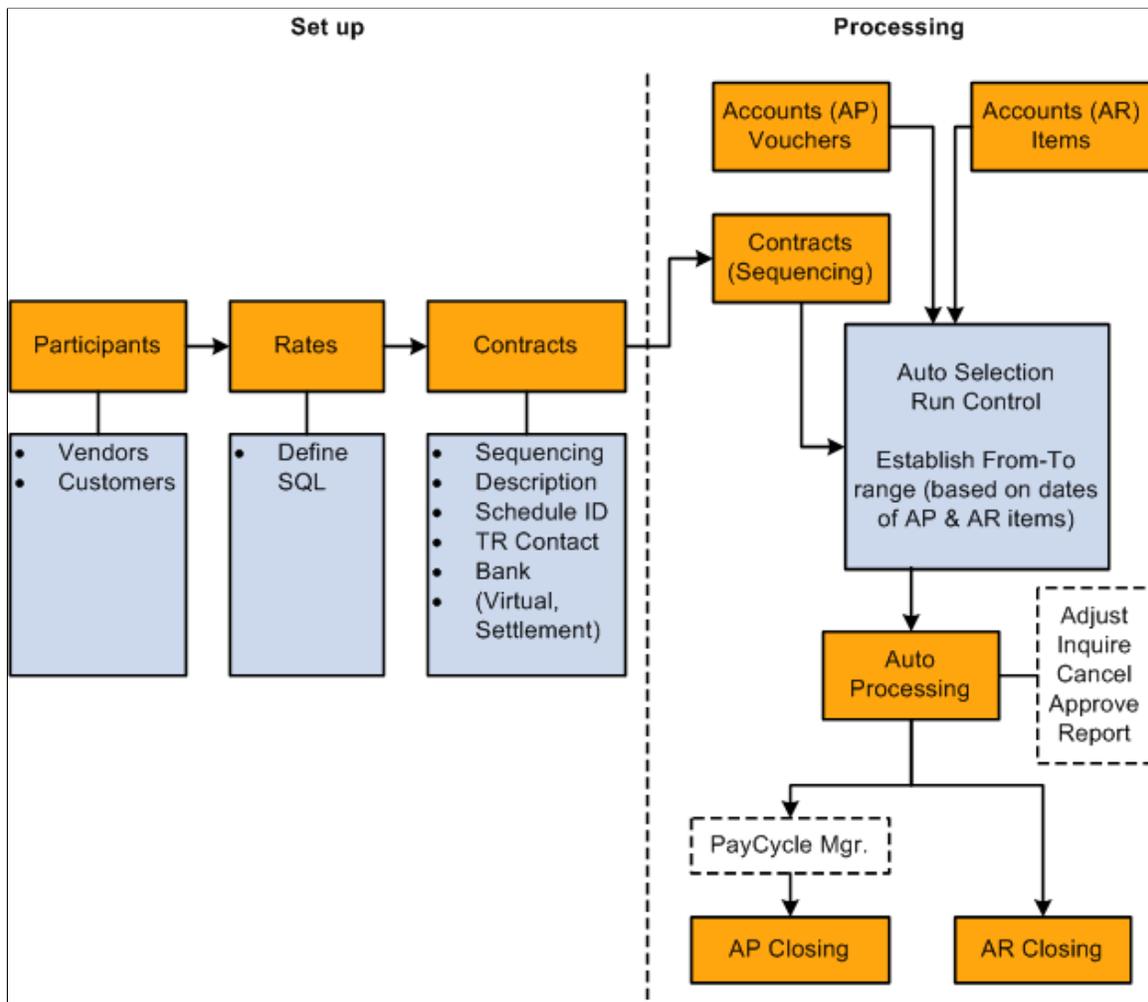
<b>AP</b>	<b>AR</b>
100	150
250	50
Total: 350	Total: 200
<200>	
Net: 150	

Without netting, Company A would have conducted four transactions to address the two Accounts Payable and two Accounts Receivable line items. Instead, their single outstanding balance to pay off and zero out after processing is 150. Using this example, Company B's books would be a mirror image of Company A's.

This is a simple example, but if there are hundreds or thousands of transactions happening between organizations, there can be a considerable decrease in transactional activity and attendant fees. This graphic illustrates the bilateral netting process.

**Image: Overview of the bilateral netting process**

Overview of the bilateral netting process



**Related Links**

- "Understanding Document Tolerances (PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Purchasing)"
- "Understanding Pay Cycle Processing (PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Payables)"
- "Understanding Payments and Deposits (PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Receivables)"

**Discounts Applied to Netted Transactions**

You have the option to process accounts payable discount terms and accounts receivable discount terms as they are defined on each side to netted transactions. You can select a **Apply Discount to Transactions** check box on the **Netting Contracts - Primary Information** page or the **Manual Select Netting - Manual Selection** page.

You can set up Manual Select Netting to manually net the accounts payable and accounts receivables transactions, or you can run the Automatic Netting Selection process (TR\_NET\_ASEL) to net these transactions for any date that occurs on or before the date that you run the pay cycle. The Netting Auto Selection process stores the discount available amounts related to selected accounts payable vouchers and accounts receivable items based on the selection of the Apply Discount to Transactions check box on the Netting Contracts - Primary Information page.

When you run the Netting Close process, TR\_NET\_CLOSE, the Pay Cycle Manager calls the Application Engine program (TR\_NET\_DSCNT) to apply the discounts to the netted transactions. This program updates the netted amounts, balance amounts, and discount applied amounts on the netting tables for Netting Reference IDs that have the apply discount option set. The program will then call on accounts payable to provide the amount of discount taken for the selected accounts payable vouchers and will call on accounts receivable to provide the amount of discount taken for the selected accounts receivables items to complete the Netting Close process.

These are some of the factors that you will want to consider when applying discounts to netted transactions.

1. While applying discounts to netted transactions, all accounts payable vouchers and accounts receivable items associated with a netting reference are evaluated for discount and a discount is applied wherever applicable. The collection of any accounts receivable item balance, whether partial or final, could be impacted by various factors such as the ability to pay by the customer, the amount of liquidity, and more as an event that happens after the process applies the discount to netted transactions and the information stored in the accounts receivable tables is not subject to reconciliation with the information stored in Netting History tables.
2. The selection of the Apply Discount to Transactions check box is applied to both Accounts Payable vouchers and Accounts Receivable items.
3. While applying a discount to netted transactions, accounts payable vouchers and accounts receivable items are not re-sequenced.
4. You cannot partially deselect an accounts payable voucher or an accounts receivable item when you select the Apply Discount Transaction check box.

Here is an example of bilateral netting transactions where discounts have been applied to netting transactions.

Netting Scenario where AR > AP

	<b>Gross Amount</b>	<b>Netting Amount</b>	<b>Balance Amount</b>	<b>Deselected Amount</b>	<b>Earned Discount</b>	<b>Discount Available</b>	<b>Discount Taken</b>	<b>Adjusted Gross Amount</b>	<b>Netting Status</b>
AP Voucher	1500.00	1500.00			Y	30.00			NET
AP Voucher	1000.00	1000.00			Y	20.00			NET
AP Voucher	500.00	500.00			Y	10.00			NET
	3000.00	3000.00				60.00			

	<b>Gross Amount</b>	<b>Netting Amount</b>	<b>Balance Amount</b>	<b>Deselected Amount</b>	<b>Earned Discount</b>	<b>Discount Available</b>	<b>Discount Taken</b>	<b>Adjusted Gross Amount</b>	<b>Netting Status</b>
AR Item	1500.00	1500.00			Y	30.00			NET
AR Item	2000.00	1500.00	500.00		Y	40.00			SPLIT
AR Item	500.00		500.00		Y	10.00			BALANCE
	4000.00	3000.00	1000.00			80.00			
After Applying Discount	AR>AP								
	<b>Gross Amount</b>	<b>Netting Amount</b>	<b>Balance Amount</b>	<b>Deselected Amount</b>	<b>Earn Discount</b>	<b>Discount Available</b>	<b>Discount Taken</b>	<b>Adjusted Gross Amount</b>	<b>Netting Status</b>
AP Voucher	1500.00	1470.00			Y	30.00	30.00	1470.00	NET
AP Voucher	1000.00	980.00			Y	20.00	20.00	980.00	NET
AP Voucher	500.00	490.00			Y	10.00	10.00	490.00	NET
	3000.00	2940.00				60.00	60.00	2940.00	
AR Item	1500.00				Y	30.00	30.00	1470.00	NET
AR Item	2000.00	1470.00	490.00		Y	40.00	40.00	1960.00	SPLIT
AR Item	500.00	1470.00	490.00		Y	10.00	10.00	490.—	BALANCE
	4000.00	2940.00	980.00			80.00	80.00	3920.00	

## Common Elements Used to Manage Bilateral Netting

### Apply Discount to Transactions

Select to indicate that the system should consider the discount from the payment terms when calculating netted amounts. .

### Closing Method

Select *Partial*, the delivered default value.

### Contact

Specify the financial contacts for a netting relationship.

### Contract ID

Enter the netting contract identification number.

### Customer ID

Enter the unique identifier code for a customer.

<b>Discount Available Amount</b>	Displays the amount of discount that is available for payable vouchers and receivable items. This value is calculated when the Apply Discount to Transactions option is selected.
<b>GL Unit</b>	Enter the General Ledger business unit.
<b>Netting Rule ID</b>	Enter the netting rule identification code.
<b>Participant ID</b>	Enter the netting participant identification code.
<b>Payable Discount Available</b>	Displays the amount of discount that is available for payable vouchers. This value is calculated when the Apply Discount to Transactions option is selected.
<b>Receivable Discount Available</b>	Displays the amount of discount that is available for receivable items. This value is calculated when the Apply Discount to Transactions option is selected.
<b>Remit Vendor</b>	Enter the vendor payee.
<b>Schedule SetID</b>	Select the correct setID to establish the interval when the netting executes.
<b>Settlement Date</b>	Specify the actual date of the settlement payment.
<b>Vendor ID</b>	Enter a unique identifier code for a vendor.

### Related Links

[Understanding the Bilateral Netting Process](#)

---

## Prerequisites

Before using netting, you must define your:

- General Ledger business units.
- Payables Suppliers, Supplier IDs, and business units.
- Receivables Customer IDs and business units.
- Market rates and netting account currency codes, to facilitate multicurrency netting.
- Netting accounts.

In addition, before defining a bilateral netting relationship, you must set up the following in Payables and Receivables:

1. Enter a voucher on the Vouchers page in Payables.
2. Enter an invoice on the Online Pending Item Entry page in Receivables or interface an invoice from your billing application into Receivables.

3. Run the Receivables Update process (AR\_UPDATE) using the Receivables Update page.

### Related Links

"Defining Netting Accounts (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Banks Setup and Processing*)"

"Defining General Ledger Business Units (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: General Ledger*)"

"Entering Invoice Information for Online Vouchers (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Payables*)"

"Running Receivables Update (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Receivables*)"

---

## Setting Up Bilateral Nets

To define netting information, use the following components:

- Netting Contracts component (NET\_CONTRACT).
- Netting Exclusion Parameters component (NET\_EXCL\_PARM).
- Netting Participants component (NET\_PARTICIPANT).
- Netting Rules component (NET\_NETTING\_RULES).

This section discusses the steps to set up bilateral nets:

1. Define participant relationships.
2. (Optional) Add multiple suppliers.
3. (Optional) Add multiple customers.
4. Define netting rules with SQL statements.
5. Enter primary information for netting contracts.
6. Enter settlement information for netting contracts.
7. Define voucher netting exclusion parameters.

### Understanding Voucher Netting Exclusion

You can define parameters to exclude certain vouchers from payment. The netting exclusion functionality is built to accommodate certain U.S. Federal Government requirements on voucher payments (Financial Systems Integration Office [FSIO] requirement PMC-31, to "allow for the exclusion of payments from agency offset based on user-defined criteria including funding source, object class, vendor type, and vendor number"), but any organization can use this feature to exclude vouchers from netting, based on defined parameters. Although you generally define netting exclusion parameters during the setup phase of voucher payment implementation, you can create or modify these definitions at any time.

This functionality also takes advantage of PeopleSoft's ChartField utility process. As ChartFields can be renamed, and made active or inactive, the setup of these user-defined parameters is dynamic to enable you to select the appropriate ChartField field name and its corresponding values. In addition, you can define multiple sets of exclusion parameters, by defining multiple rows per Exclusion ID, and/or defining multiple Exclusion IDs.

Values entered on the Netting Exclusion Parameters page are stored and used at voucher save time to determine if the voucher should be excluded from the netting process between Payables and Receivables. If an exclusion parameter definition has been created, and a payment falls within the exclusion and effective date parameters, then the payment is excluded from the Payables and Receivables netting process and paid in full. (The system changes the internal voucher netting value to *N* to indicate the voucher is not applicable to netting.) This applies to payments created normally through the PeopleSoft Pay Cycle process.

Though the Exclude from Netting Parameters and the Netting Rule Definition pages share a similar purpose—defining rules or parameters for the voucher netting process—their results are different. The netting exclusion functionality excludes matching vouchers from payment by setting the internal netting flag to *N* (not applicable for netting). The netting rules functionality excludes vouchers based on the criteria defined in the rules.

**Note:** Netting exclusion parameters apply to the entire voucher—not just a particular part of the voucher. If a single data element (or "piece") of a voucher meets the exclusion requirements, the entire voucher is excluded. For example, if a voucher has 100 lines with 200 distributions, and only one distribution qualifies for netting exclusion. In this scenario, the entire voucher and payment schedule—all 200 distributions—is excluded from netting.

## Pages Used to Set Up Bilateral Nets

<i>Page Name</i>	<i>Definition Name</i>	<i>Navigation</i>	<i>Usage</i>
Netting Participants	NET_PARTICIPANT	Cash Management, Administer Cash, Netting Participants	Define the supplier and customer relationships involved in netting.
Add Multiple Suppliers	NET_VENDOR_ADD	Click Add Multiple Suppliers on the Participant Definition page.	Search and select multiple suppliers associated with a business unit to add to the netting relationship.
Add Multiple Customers	NET_CUSTOMER_ADD	Click Add Multiple Customers on the Participant Definition page.	Search and select multiple customers associated with a business unit to add to the netting relationship.
Netting Rules	NET_NETTING_RULES	Cash Management, Administer Cash, Netting Rules	Enter a SQL statement that will be included into the Application Engine Netting selection logic.
Netting Contracts - Primary Information	NET_CONTRACT_PRIM	Cash Management, Administer Cash, Netting Contracts	Enter primary information for netting contracts.
Netting Contracts - Settlement Information	NET_CONTRACT_STL	Cash Management, Administer Cash, Netting Contracts  Select the Settlement Information tab.	Define all settlement instruction information for a netting contract.

<b>Page Name</b>	<b>Definition Name</b>	<b>Navigation</b>	<b>Usage</b>
Netting Exclusion Parameters	NET_EXCL_PARM	Cash Management, Administer Cash, Netting Exclusion Parameters	Define parameters used to automatically exclude certain payments from the AP and AR netting process.

### Related Links

"Understanding Pay Cycle Processing (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Payables*)"

### Prerequisites

To use the Exclude from Netting functionality with vouchers, you must do the following:

- Define suppliers as "netting suppliers," using the Apply Netting option on the Supplier Information - Payment Options page.
- Create vouchers using defined netting suppliers.

### Related Links

"Scheduling and Creating Voucher Payments for Online Vouchers (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Payables*)"

### Netting Participants Page

Use the Netting Participants page (NET\_PARTICIPANT) to define the supplier and customer relationships involved in netting.

## Navigation

Cash Management, Administer Cash, Netting Participants

### Image: Netting Participants page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Netting Participants page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

The screenshot shows the 'Netting Participants' page with the following details:

- Participant ID:** PPT01
- \*Description:** Netting Participant - US001
- \*Effective Date:** 01/01/1900
- Status:** Active
- \*GL Unit:** US001

Below the details are two tables:

Suppliers			Personalize	Find	View All	First	1-4 of 6	Last
*AP Unit	*Supplier ID	Supplier						
US001	USA0000001	Bay Area Electric-						
US001	USA0000002	East Bay Travel						
US001	USA0000003	Telecomm for East Bay						
US002	USA0000001	Bay Area Electric-						

Customers			Personalize	Find	View All	First	1-4 of 6	Last
*AR Unit	*Customer ID	Name						
US001	USA01	New World Outdoor Equipment, Inc.						
US001	USA02	Cracker Barrel Restaurant						
US001	USA03	Highland Hospital						
US002	USA01	New World Outdoor Equipment, Inc.						

### GL Unit (General Ledger business unit)

For reporting purposes, you must select the unit that is targeted by these transactions, because the transactions affect balances at the general ledger level.

## Suppliers

### AP Unit (Payables business unit)

Select the unit that houses the suppliers that are entering the netting relationship, and specify the Supplier ID.

### Add Multiple Suppliers

Click to access the Add Multiple Suppliers page, and make this relationship a one-to-many or many-to-many relationship (for example, you might want to net the transactions of subsidiaries to a corporation).

## Customers

### AR Unit (Receivables business unit)

Select the unit that houses the customers that are entering the netting relationship, and specify the Customer ID.

### Add Multiple Customers

Click to access the Add Multiple Customers page, and make this relationship a one-to-many or many-to-many relationship (for

example, you might want to net the transactions of subsidiaries to a corporation).

## Add Multiple Suppliers Page

Use the Add Multiple Suppliers page (NET\_VENDOR\_ADD) to search and select multiple suppliers associated with a business unit to add to the netting relationship.

### Navigation

Click Add Multiple Suppliers on the Participant Definition page.

### Image: Add Multiple Suppliers page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Add Multiple Suppliers page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

**Add Multiple Suppliers**

Participant Definition

Participant ID PPT01      Description Netting Participant - US001

Effective Date 01/01/1900      Status Active      GL Unit US001

AP Unit US001      US001 NEW YORK OPERATIONS      SetID SHARE

Suppliers      Personalize | Find | View 100 | First 1-3 of 321 Last

Select	Supplier ID	Supplier	City
<input type="checkbox"/>	0000000044	Mel's Diner	Phoenix
<input type="checkbox"/>	0000000045	Robert Half	San Francisco
<input type="checkbox"/>	0000000046	Onsite Inc1-1	Alameda

Add Suppliers      Cancel

### AP Unit

Specify a business unit from which to select suppliers.

### Add Suppliers

Select suppliers and click this button to add them as participants.

## Add Multiple Customers Page

Use the Add Multiple Customers page (NET\_CUSTOMER\_ADD) to search and select multiple customers associated with a business unit to add to the netting relationship.

## Navigation

Click Add Multiple Customers on the Participant Definition page.

### Image: Add Multiple Customers page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Add Multiple Customers page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

### Add Multiple Customers

**Participant Definition**

Participant ID PPT01      Description Netting Participant - US001

Effective Date 01/01/1900      Status Active      GL Unit US001

AR Unit  US001 NEW YORK OPERATIONS      SetID SHARE

Customers			
Select	Customer ID	Name	City
<input type="checkbox"/>	JPN03	A-Z Co Ltd	Setagaya-ku
<input type="checkbox"/>	BLG04	ACORDATA Belgique	Diegem
<input type="checkbox"/>	NLD04	Adnetix	Amsterdam

Add Customers
Cancel

**AR Unit** Specify a business unit from which to select customers.

**Add Customers** Select customers and click this button to add them as participants.

## Netting Rules Page

Use the Netting Rules page (NET\_NETTING\_RULES) to enter a SQL statement that will be included into the Application Engine Netting selection logic.

## Navigation

Cash Management, Administer Cash, Netting Rules

### Image: Netting Rules page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Netting Rules page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

**Netting Rules**

Netting Rule ID ALL      \*Description Net all

**Receivable SQL**  
AND I.BAL\_AMT >= 0

**Payable SQL**  
AND XREF.PYMNT\_GROSS\_AMT >= 0

#### Receivable SQL and Payable SQL

Enter the appropriate SQL statements to set up the mechanics of the net, and to further define and/or limit which open items are selected. For example, where `I.DEPARTMENT` equals 'ABC'.



Click to add comments regarding SQL statements for the respective (Receivable or Payable) edit box.

## Netting Contracts - Primary Information Page

Use the Netting Contracts - Primary Information page (`NET_CONTRACT_PRIM`) to enter primary information for netting contracts.

## Navigation

Cash Management, Administer Cash, Netting Contracts, Primary Information

### Image: Netting Contracts - Primary Information page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Netting Contracts - Primary Information page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

The screenshot displays the 'Primary Information' tab of a 'Netting Contracts' page. At the top, there are tabs for 'Primary Information' and 'Settlement Information'. Below this is a 'Contract Definition' section with fields for Contract ID (BTFNTCNT), Description (BTF Netting Contract), Effective Date (06/10/2000), and Status (Active). A 'Primary Information' section follows, containing fields for Closing Method (Partial), Netting Advice Required (checked), Participant ID (BTFNTPART), Netting Rule ID (ALL), Contact (00001), and Schedule SetID (SHARE). There are also checkboxes for Pre Approval Flag and Apply Discount to Transactions (checked). Below these are fields for Schedule (BTFSCEDUL) and a Notes field. At the bottom left, there is an 'Attachments (0)' section.

## Primary Information

### Pre Approval Flag

Select to indicate the netting contract is already approved.

### Netting Advice Required

Select to notify a contact when netting is run.

### Apply Discount to Transactions

Select to indicate that the system should consider the discount from the payment terms when calculating netted amounts.

### Schedules

Specify the netting run schedule for the specified Schedule SetID.



Click View Participants to view participants of the specified Participant ID.



Click View Rules to view rules of the specified Netting Rule ID.



Click View Contacts to view contact information for the specified Contact ID.



Click View Schedules to view schedule information for the specified Schedule.

## Related Links

[Netting Participants Page](#)

## Netting Rules Page

"Defining Financial Contacts (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Banks Setup and Processing*)"

## Netting Contracts - Settlement Information Page

Use the Netting Contracts - Settlement Information page (NET\_CONTRACT\_STL) to define all settlement instruction information for a netting contract.

### Navigation

Cash Management, Administer Cash, Netting Contracts, Settlement Information

### Image: Netting Contracts - Settlement Information page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Netting Contracts - Settlement Information page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

The screenshot displays the 'Settlement Information' tab for a contract with ID 'BTFNTCNT'. The contract description is 'BTF Netting Contract'. The page is organized into three main sections: Netting Bank, Payables, and Receivables.

- Netting Bank:** Includes fields for \*Netting Bank SetID (SHARE), \*Bank (BTFNB), and \*Account (BTFA). The account is identified as 'BTF ACCT 001'.
- Payables:** Includes fields for \*Disbursement Bank SetID (SHARE), \*Bank (USBNK), and \*Account (CHCK) with value '0741-256458'. It also includes \*Supplier SetID (SHARE), \*Supplier (BTFNTVNR1) identified as 'BTF Netting Vendor 1', \*Location (BTF LOCN), \*Seq Nbr (1), and \*Payment Method (System Check). The \*Sequence is set to 'Highest Gross Payment Amount' with a description of 'PYMNT\_GROSS\_AMT DESC'.
- Receivables:** Includes \*Payment Method (Check) and \*Sequence (By Highest Bal Amount) with a description of 'BAL\_AMT DESC'. The \*Deposit Unit is 'US001' with a description of 'US001 NEW YORK OPERATIONS'.

### Netting Bank SetID

Assign a netting SetID; then select the Bank and Account for the netting activities. The netting bank is a virtual bank account: no funds are actually paid into or out of the netting account. It is debited and credited by the netted amount of the AP and AR transactions.

### Disb Bank SetID (disbursement bank setID)

Select from the available external banks, and specify the settle through Bank and Account.

### Supplier SetID

Assign a supplier SetID. In the Supplier field, designate the supplier involved in the net and assign a Location and Seq Nbr (sequence number). You enter the supplier ID and sequence number to associate the default bank with that supplier (this is required to support certain payment methods).

### Payment Method

For the Payables group box, specify if payments are submitted by *Automated Clearing House, Direct Debit, EFT, Manual Check, System Check, or Wire Report*.

For the Receivables group box, specify if payments are received by *Check (Check, EFT, etc.), Direct Debit, or Draft*.

**Sequence**

Select the order in which balances will net, either *By Account Date (FIFO)* (first in first out), *By Accounting Date (LIFO)* (last in first out), *By Due Date (FIFO)*, *By Due Date (LIFO)*, *By Voucher*, *Highest Gross Balance*, or *Smallest Gross Balance*.

**Deposit Unit**

Define which business unit will receive payment after the net.



Click View Netting Account to view detailed information for the specified netting account.



Click View Disbursement Bank to view detailed information for the specified external bank account.



Click View Supplier Bank to view detailed information for the supplier location.

## Netting Exclusion Parameters Page

Use the Netting Exclusion Parameters page (NET\_EXCL\_PARM) to define parameters used to automatically exclude certain payments from the AP and AR netting process.

**Navigation**

Cash Management, Administer Cash, Netting Exclusion Parameters

Select the parameter for excluding the voucher.

When you select Supplier ID, also specify a Supplier name and optionally, a Location.

When you select Supplier Classification, also select a Classification option of *Attorney*, *Employee*, *HRMS*, or *Supplier*.

In the ChartField Exclusion Parameters region, specify a ChartField and corresponding value on which to base the netting exclusion.

---

**Note:** You can only specify one value per defined ChartField name.

---

## Selecting Nets Automatically

Define processing parameters and automatically select your nets using the Automatic Netting Selection process (TR\_NET\_ASEL).

### Pages Used to Automatically Select Nets

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Automatic Netting Selection	NET_AUTO_RQST	Cash Management, Bi-Lateral Netting, Automatic Netting Selection, Automatic Netting Selection	Set up an automatic process to run bilateral nets.

## Automatic Netting Selection Page

Use the Automatic Netting Selection page (NET\_AUTO\_RQST) to set up an automatic process to run bilateral nets.

### Navigation

Cash Management, Bi-Lateral Netting, Automatic Netting Selection, Automatic Netting Selection

### Image: Automatic Netting Selection page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Automatic Netting Selection page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

The screenshot shows the 'Automatic Netting Selection' page. At the top, there is a header with 'Run Control ID GEN\_1', 'Report Manager', and 'Process Monitor'. A 'Run' button is located in the top right corner. Below the header, there are several input fields with asterisks indicating they are required:

- \*Start Due Date: 10/01/2012 (with a calendar icon)
- \*End Due Date: 11/01/2012 (with a calendar icon)
- \*Schedule SetID: SHARE (with a search icon)
- \*Schedule ID: MONTHLY1 (with a search icon) and the text 'First of Each Month' to its right.
- \*Netting Date: 10/31/2012 (with a calendar icon)
- \*Settlement Date: 11/01/2012 (with a calendar icon)

At the bottom of the form, there are two links: 'Contracts for this Schedule' and 'Netting Inquiry'.

### Contracts for this Schedule

Click to access the Review Netting Contracts page, and view all contracts associated with the specified Schedule ID.

### Netting Inquiry

Click to access the Netting Inquiry page, and view information for the associated Netting Reference ID.

When the Automatic Netting Selection process is complete, use the Review Multiple Netting page to verify and modify the netted information.

### Related Links

[Administering Nets](#)

---

## Creating Nets Manually

This section discusses how to:

1. Enter primary netting information.
2. Define the settlement instructions.
3. Set up the payables leg.
4. (Optional) Add multiple vouchers to the payables leg.

5. Set up the receivables leg.
6. (Optional) Add multiple items to the receivables leg.

## Pages Used to Manually Create Nets

<b>Page Name</b>	<b>Definition Name</b>	<b>Navigation</b>	<b>Usage</b>
Manual Selection	NET_MANUAL_RQST	Cash Management, Bi-Lateral Netting, Manual Select Netting, Manual Selection	Enter primary information.
Manual Select Netting - Settlement Inst (settlement instructions)	NET_MANUAL_RQST1	Cash Management, Bi-Lateral Netting, Manual Select Netting, Settlement Inst	Set up your settlement instructions.
Manual Select Netting - Payables	NET_MAN_RQST_AP	Cash Management, Bi-Lateral Netting, Manual Select Netting, Payables	Set up payables for manual netting.
Enter Manual Selection (vouchers)	NET_VOUCHER_ADD	Click the Add Multiple Vouchers link on the Manual Select Netting - Payables page.	Add multiple vouchers to payables for manual netting.
Manual Select Netting - Receivables	NET_MAN_RQST_AR	Cash Management, Bi-Lateral Netting, Manual Select Netting, Receivables	Set up receivables for manual netting.
Enter Manual Selection (items)	NET_ITEM_ADD	Click the Add Multiple Items link on the Manual Select Netting - Receivables page.	Add multiple items to receivables for manual netting.

## Common Elements Used to Manually Create Nets

<b>Add Multiple Items</b>	Click to add multiple vouchers from a specified business Unit and Supplier ID to your bilateral net.
<b>Request Status</b>	Displays either <i>WIP</i> (work in progress) or <i>Submitted</i> .
<b>Total AP Txns (transactions)</b>	Total number of Payables transaction items.
<b>Total AR Txns (transactions)</b>	Total number of Receivables transaction items.

## Manual Selection Page

Use the Manual Selection page (NET\_MANUAL\_RQST) to enter primary information.

### Navigation

Cash Management, Bi-Lateral Netting, Manual Select Netting, Manual Selection

### Image: Manual Selection page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Manual Selection page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

**Netting Date**

Displays the effective date of the net.

**Netting Currency**

Select a netting currency. The system converts all amounts and displays them in this defined netting currency.

**Base Currency**

Displays the base currency of the selected GL Unit.

**Submit**

Click to submit the net.

---

**Note:** Prior to submitting the net, you must complete the other pages in this component.

---

## Manual Select Netting - Settlement Inst Page

Use the Manual Select Netting - Settlement Inst (instructions) page (NET\_MANUAL\_RQST1) to set up your settlement instructions.

## Navigation

Cash Management, Bi-Lateral Netting, Manual Select Netting, Settlement Inst

### Image: Settlement Inst (instructions) page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Settlement Inst (instructions) page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

The screenshot shows a web interface for 'Settlement Inst' with the following sections:

- Netting Bank:** \*Net Bank SetID (SHARE), Bank (NET01), Account (NET1), 0600-4500601 Check Acct
- Disbursement Bank:** \*Disbursement Bank SetID (SHARE), \*Bank (USBNK), \*Account (CHCK), 0741-256458 Check Acct
- Supplier Bank:** \*Supplier SetID (SHARE), \*Supplier (USA0000001) Bay Area Electric-, \*Location (1), \*Seq Nbr (1) 012345672
- Payment Methods:** Payment Method - Payable (System Check), Payment Method - Receivable (Check), \*Deposit Unit (US001) US001 NEW YORK OPERATIONS

#### Netting Bank

Click to select your netting bank SetID, and specify the bank and account.

#### Disbursement Bank

Click to select your disbursement bank ID, and specify the bank and account.

#### Supplier Bank

Click the link to select your supplier bank ID. Enter the Supplier, Location, and Sequence Nbr (sequence number).

#### Payment Method-Payable

Select *Automated Clearing House, Direct Debit, EFT, Manual Check, System Check, or Wire Report*.

#### Payment Method-Receivable

Select *Check, Direct Debit, or Draft*.

#### Deposit Unit

Define which business unit receives payment after the net.

## Related Links

[Netting Contracts - Settlement Information Page](#)

## Manual Select Netting - Payables Page

Use the Manual Select Netting - Payables page (NET\_MAN\_RQST\_AP) to set up payables for manual netting.

## Navigation

Cash Management, Bi-Lateral Netting, Manual Select Netting, Payables

### Image: Manual Select Netting - Payables page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Manual Select Netting - Payables page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

The screenshot displays the 'Manual Selection' tab for 'Payables'. It includes a summary section with the following data:

- Netting Reference ID: 00000000020
- Netting Date: 10/31/2012
- Request Status: Work In Progress
- Currency: USD
- Total Payable Amount: 2,357.99
- Total AP Txns: 1
- Total Receipt Amount: 102,295.50
- Total AR Txns: 1
- Payable Discount Available: 0.00

Below the summary is a 'Refresh' button. Underneath is the 'Add Multiple Vouchers' section, which contains a 'Payable Transactions' table. The table has the following columns: Unit, Voucher ID, Payments, Voucher Detail, Remit Supplier, Currency, Gross Amount, and Discount Available Amount. A single row is visible with the following values:

Unit	Voucher ID	Payments	Voucher Detail	Remit Supplier	Currency	Gross Amount	Discount Available Amount
US001	TR-100	1		USANETTING	USD	2,357.99	0.00



Click Voucher Detail to access the Payables Voucher Detail page and view information for the voucher line item.

### Refresh

When you are finished entering payable transaction items, click to update Total Payment Amount.

## Adding Multiple Vouchers for Payables Manual Netting

Use the Enter Manual Selection (vouchers) page (NET\_VOUCHER\_ADD) to add multiple vouchers to payables for manual netting.

### Navigation

Click the Add Multiple Vouchers link on the Manual Select Netting - Payables page.

After you enter a business unit and supplier ID, select each voucher that you want to add and click Add.

## Manual Select Netting - Receivables Page

Use the Manual Select Netting - Receivables page (NET\_MAN\_RQST\_AR) to set up receivables for manual netting.

## Navigation

Cash Management, Bi-Lateral Netting, Manual Select Netting, Receivables

### Image: Manual Select Netting - Receivables page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Manual Select Netting - Receivables page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

Manual Selection | Settlement Inst | Payables | **Receivables**

Enter Manual Selection

Netting Reference ID 00000000020      Netting Date 10/31/2012  
 Request Status Work In Progress      Currency USD  
 Total Payable Amount 2,357.99      Total AP Txns 1  
 Total Receipt Amount 102,295.50      Total AR Txns 1  
 Receivable Discount Available 0.00      Refresh

Add Multiple Items

Receivable Transactions      Personalize | Find | View All | First 1 of 1 Last

Unit	Customer ID	Item ID	Line	Item Detail	Currency	Item Balance	Discount Available Amount
US001	1000	OC-11	0		USD	102295.50	0.00



Click Show Item Detail to access the Receivables Item Maintenance page, and view information for the receivables line item.

### Refresh

When you are finished entering receivable transaction items, to update Total Receipt Amount.

## Adding Multiple Items for Receivables Manual Netting

Use the Enter Manual Selection (items) page (NET\_ITEM\_ADD) to add multiple items to receivables for manual netting.

### Navigation

Click the Add Multiple Items link on the Manual Select Netting - Receivables page.

After you enter a business Unit and Customer ID, select each item that you want to add and click Add.

## Adjusting Manually Netted Information

After creating manual bilateral nets you'll need to maintain them. Depending on your User ID and security settings, you can edit certain enabled fields on each page. These pages are similar to the manual net creation procedure pages.

This section discusses how to:

1. Adjust manual net information.
2. Adjust settlement instructions.
3. Adjust payables voucher information.

4. Adjust receivables item information.

## Pages Used to Adjust Manually Netted Information

<i>Page Name</i>	<i>Definition Name</i>	<i>Navigation</i>	<i>Usage</i>
Manual Adjustment	NET_MANUAL_ADJUST	Cash Management, Bi-Lateral Netting, Adjust Netting, Manual Adjustment	Adjust manual net information.
Adjust Netting - Settlement Instr (instructions)	NET_MANUAL_ADJUST1	Cash Management, Bi-Lateral Netting, Adjust Netting, Settlement Instr	Adjust settlement instructions .
Adjust Netting - Payables	NET_MAN_ADJUST_AP	Cash Management, Bi-Lateral Netting, Adjust Netting, Payables	Adjust payables voucher information.
Adjust Netting - Receivables	NET_MAN_ADJUST_AR	Cash Management, Bi-Lateral Netting, Adjust Netting, Receivables	Adjust receivables item information.

### Related Links

[Creating Nets Manually](#)

## Common Elements Used to Adjust Manually Netted Information

### Gross Amount

Displays the Gross amount, which must equal the netting amount plus balance amount plus deselected amount. However, you can only populate two of these three fields to equal the gross amount, not all three.

### DeSelected Payable

Displays the payables amount subtracted from the gross amount.

### DeSelected Receivable

Displays the receivables amount subtracted from the gross amount.

## Manual Adjustment Page

Use the Manual Adjustment page (NET\_MANUAL\_ADJUST) to adjust manual net information.

## Navigation

Cash Management, Bi-Lateral Netting, Adjust Netting, Manual Adjustment

### Image: Manual Adjustment page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Manual Adjustment page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

Manual Adjustment		Settlement Instr	Payables	Receivables	
<b>Primary Information</b>					
Netting Reference ID	000000000005	Netting Date	06/10/2008	Settlement Date	06/10/2008
Status	Approved	Process Type	Manual	Closing Method	Partial
Contract ID				Currency	USD
Participant ID				<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Apply Discount to Transactions	
Netting Rule ID					
*Contact ID	00001		Smith, Alfred		
<b>Netting Results Payable</b>			<b>Netting Results Receivable</b>		
Total Payable Amount	3,000.00	Total Receipt Amount	3	4,000.00	
Total Payable Transactions	3	Total Receivable Transactions	3		
Netted Payable	3,000.00	Netted Receivable		3,000.00	
Payable Balance	0.00	Receivable Balance		1,000.00	
DeSelected Payable	0.00	DeSelected Receivable		0.00	
Payable Discount Available	60.00	Receivable Discount Available		80.00	
<b>Audit Information</b>					
Updated By	DVP1	10/26/2012 2:42:24PM	Approval User Id	VP1	02/19/2009 11:23:48AM

**Process Type** Indicates whether the net was processed by either *Automatic* or *Manual* method.

### Netting Results Payable

The system calculates the amounts based on the transaction entries on the Payables page.

**Netted Payable** Displays the netting amount total.

**Payable Balance** Displays the balance amount total.

**DeSelected Payable** Displays the deselected amount total.

### Netting Results Receivable

The system calculates the amounts displayed based on the transaction entries on the Receivables page.

**Netted Receivable** Displays the netting amount total.

**Receivable Balance** Displays the balance amount total.

**DeSelected Receivable** Displays the deselected amount total.

### Related Links

[Creating Nets Manually](#)

## Adjust Netting - Settlement Instr Page

Use the Adjust Netting - Settlement Instr (instructions) page (NET\_MANUAL\_ADJUST1) to adjust settlement instructions .

### Navigation

Cash Management, Bi-Lateral Netting, Adjust Netting, Settlement Instr

### Image: Adjust Netting - Settlement Instr (instructions) page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Adjust Netting - Settlement Instr (instructions) page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

<a href="#">Manual Adjustment</a>	<b><a href="#">Settlement Instr</a></b>	<a href="#">Payables</a>	<a href="#">Receivables</a>
<b>Settlement Instructions</b>			
<b>Netting Bank</b>			
SetID <input type="text" value="SHARE"/>	Bank <input type="text" value="BTFNB"/>	Account <input type="text" value="BTFA"/>	Account # BTF ACCT 001
Netting Accounts			Acct Type Check Acct
<b>Disbursement Bank</b>			
*SetID <input type="text" value="SHARE"/>	*Bank <input type="text" value="USBNK"/>	*Account <input type="text" value="CHCK"/>	Account # 0741-256458
Disbursement Banks			Acct Type Check Acct
<b>Supplier Bank</b>			
*SetID <input type="text" value="SHARE"/>	*Remit Supplier <input type="text" value="BTFNTVNR1"/>	BTF Netting Vendor 1	
Location <input type="text" value="BTF LOCN"/>	*Seq Nbr <input type="text" value="1"/>	Account #	
<b>Supplier Banks</b>			
<b>Payment Methods</b>			
Payment Method - Payable		<input type="text" value="System Check"/>	
Payment Method - Receivable		<input type="text" value="Check"/>	
*Deposit Unit <input type="text" value="US001"/>		US001 NEW YORK OPERATIONS	

### Related Links

[Netting Contracts - Settlement Information Page](#)

## Adjust Netting - Payables Page

Use the Adjust Netting - Payables page (NET\_MAN\_ADJUST\_AP) to adjust payables voucher information.

## Navigation

Cash Management, Bi-Lateral Netting, Adjust Netting, Payables

### Image: Adjust Netting - Payables page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Adjust Netting - Payables page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

The screenshot displays the 'Manual Adjustment' page for 'Payables'. It includes a summary section with the following data:

- Netting Reference ID: 000000000005
- Netting Date: 06/10/2008
- Netting Status: Approved
- Currency: USD
- Netted Payable: 3,000.00
- Payable Balance: 0.00
- DeSelected Payable: 0.00
- Payable Discount Available: 60.00
- Netted Receivable: 3,000.00

Below the summary is a table titled 'Payable Transactions' with the following columns: \*Unit, \*Voucher ID, \*Payments, Voucher Detail, Gross Amount, Discount Available Amount, Netted Amount, Balance Amount, and DeSelected Amount. The table contains three rows of data:

*Unit	*Voucher ID	*Payments	Voucher Detail	Gross Amount	Discount Available Amount	Netted Amount	Balance Amount	DeSelected Amount
US001	BTFV1A-1	1		1,500.00	30.00	1,500.00	0.00	0.00
US001	BTFV1A-2	1		1,000.00	20.00	1,000.00	0.00	0.00
US001	BTFV1A-3	1		500.00	10.00	500.00	0.00	0.00

**Note:** You can only add transaction items. You cannot delete existing or added transactions.

## Related Links

[Manual Select Netting - Payables Page](#)

## Adjust Netting - Receivables Page

Use the Adjust Netting - Receivables page (NET\_MAN\_ADJUST\_AR) to adjust receivables item information.

## Navigation

Cash Management, Bi-Lateral Netting, Adjust Netting, Receivables

### Image: Adjust Netting - Receivables page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Adjust Netting - Receivables page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

*Unit	*Customer	*Item ID	Line	Item Detail	Item Balance	Discount Available Amount	Netted Amount	Balance Amount	DeSelected Amount
US00	BTFNTCUS	BTFITEM1A-1	1		1,500.00	30.00	1,500.00	0.00	0.00
US00	BTFNTCUS	BTFITEM1A-2	1		2,000.00	40.00	1,500.00	500.00	0.00
US00	BTFNTCUS	BTFITEM1A-3	1		500.00	10.00	0.00	500.00	0.00

**Note:** You can only add transaction items—you can't delete existing or added transactions.

## Related Links

[Manual Select Netting - Receivables Page](#)

## Processing Multicurrency Nets

This section provides an overview of the multicurrency netting functionality, and discusses how to process multicurrency nets.

### Multicurrency Netting Functionality

PeopleSoft netting includes functionality to automatically adjust netted non-base currency accounting entries to ensure that the netting bank entries are in balance. This functionality requires that you setup certain pages and currency default values.

When you have established the necessary currency codes, no further input is required because the system automatically evaluates and adjusts the necessary netting accounting entries.

The adjustment functionality occurs during the Netting Close process (TR\_NET\_CLOSE), which the system calls from the Pay Cycle Selection process (AP\_PAYSELECT). The Netting Close process analyzes if voucher and item accounting entries meet certain criteria. For example, if netting currency is greater than or less than the base currency. If the entries match the criteria, the Netting Close process adjusts them by updating the AR (PAYMENT\_ITEM) and AP (PAYMENT\_VCHR\_XREF, VOUCHER, VOUCHER\_LINE, DISTRIB\_LINE) information prior to posting in AP and AR. Posting creates accounting entries, therefore, the netting adjustment occurs prior to posting to avoid the additional work of adjusting accounting entries.

Here is an example of the netting adjustment functionality when the net involves Japanese yen (JPY) and United States dollars (USD):

- Netting Base Amount = 10000 JPY.
- Netting Foreign Amount = 100 USD.
- Rate = 100 JPY/USD.
- Summarized receivables amount for netting = 100 USD (10001 JPY).
- Summarized payables amount for netting = 100 USD (9999 JPY).

Given the above, the system calculates that:

- The Netting Base Amount of 10000 JPY is less than the receivables amount of 10001 JPY, and subtracts 1 JPY from the receivables total.
- The Netting Base Amount of 10000 JPY is greater than the payables amount of 9999 JPY, and adds 1 JPY to the payables total.

## Prerequisites

If you are netting bank accounts that are defined with different currencies, you must ensure that:

- You have established an exchange rate between two different currency codes on the Market Rates page.
- You have established as many valid currencies as needed by the specific netting bank account on the Netting Accounts - Valid Currencies (BANK\_ACCT\_CURR\_SEC) page. For example, if you are netting between two accounts (one using JPY, one using USD) you must define both JPY and USD as valid currencies for both accounts.

## Related Links

[Defining Market Rates](#)

"Defining Netting Accounts (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Banks Setup and Processing*)"

## Processing Multicurrency Nets

To process multicurrency nets:

1. For the AP Voucher Entry confirm that:
  - You define the Curr (currency) field on the Invoice Information page with the convert into currency.
  - You define the Payment Currency field on the Invoice Information - Payments: Payment Options page with the convert into currency.
2. Approve the AP Voucher, but do not post it.
3. For the AR Item Entry confirm that:

- You define the Control Currency field on the Group Control page with the convert into currency.
  - You define the Currency field on the Pending Item 1 page with the convert into currency.
4. Post the AR vouchers using the Group Control - Group Action page. (You can post AR vouchers as they are not evaluated by the Net Close process.)
  5. Run the Receivable Update process (AR\_UPDATE).
  6. Create a manual net using the Manual Netting pages, being sure to define the Netting Currency field with the convert into currency. When you complete creating the manual net, click Submit.
  7. Approve the multicurrency net using the Review Multiple Netting page.
  8. Establish voucher payment selection criteria for the pay cycle using the Payment Selection Criteria page.
  9. Process the pay cycle and create the payment using the Pay Cycle Manager page.
  10. Post the voucher using the Payment Posting Request page.
  11. Run the Receivable Update process (AR\_UPDATE) again to close the receivables nets.
  12. Review the resulting accounting entry and payment information on the following pages:
    - (AP) Voucher Accounting Entries
    - (AR) Group Control - Accounting Entries
    - Payment Control - Accounting Entries

---

**Note:** Remember that any AP vouchers that are posted before the Netting Close process runs *do not* encounter the rounding analysis of the netting adjustment process. Their associated accounting entries are not adjusted.

---

## Related Links

[Administering Nets](#)

[Creating Nets Manually](#)

[Closing Nets](#)

"Entering Invoice Information for Online Vouchers (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Payables*)"

"Running the Voucher Posting Process (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Payables*)"

"Reviewing Voucher Information (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Payables*)"

"Entering or Updating Pending Items (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Receivables*)"

"Understanding Posting and Unposting (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Receivables*)"

"Changing and Reviewing Item Information (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Receivables*)"

# Administering Nets

This section discusses how to:

- Approve nets.
- Cancel nets.

## Pages Used to Administer Nets

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Approve Netting	NET_NETTING_ADMIN	Cash Management, Bi-Lateral Netting, Approve Netting, Approve Netting	Approve nets.
Cancel Netting	NET_NETTING_ADMIN	Cash Management, Bi-Lateral Netting, Cancel Netting, Cancel Netting	Cancel nets.

## Approve Netting Page

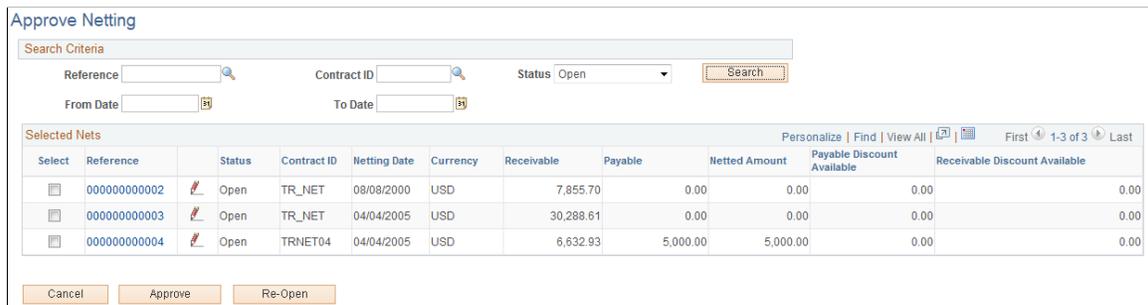
Use the Approve Netting page (NET\_NETTING\_ADMIN) to approve nets.

### Navigation

Cash Management, Bi-Lateral Netting, Approve Netting, Approve Netting

### Image: Approve Netting page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Approve Netting page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



### Search

Specify search criteria and click the button to retrieve data on multiple nets. Your results appear in the Selected Nets grid.

### Status

Select from *Approved*, *Cancelled*, *Closed*, or *Open*.

### Reference

Click the link to access the bilateral netting pages, and modify transaction information.



Click to adjust the selected net.

**Select**

Select an item's check box, then approve or cancel net. The selected net(s) status changes to *Approved* or *Cancelled*. Once netting contracts are approved, they are "locked" and can't be edited. Select Re-Open to unlock approved netting contracts for modifications.

**Cancel Netting Page**

Use the Cancel Netting page (NET\_NETTING\_ADMIN) to cancel nets.

**Navigation**

Cash Management, Bi-Lateral Netting, Cancel Netting, Cancel Netting

**Image: Cancel Netting page**

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Cancel Netting page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

The screenshot shows the 'Cancel Netting' page interface. At the top, there is a 'Search Criteria' section with input fields for 'Reference', 'Contract ID', 'Status' (set to 'Open'), 'From Date', and 'To Date', along with a 'Search' button. Below this is a table titled 'Selected Nets' with columns for 'Select', 'Reference', 'Status', 'Contract ID', 'Netting Date', 'Currency', 'Receivable', 'Payable', 'Netted Amount', 'Payable Discount Available', and 'Receivable Discount Available'. The table contains three rows of data. At the bottom left of the table area, there is a 'Cancel' button.

Select	Reference	Status	Contract ID	Netting Date	Currency	Receivable	Payable	Netted Amount	Payable Discount Available	Receivable Discount Available
<input type="checkbox"/>	000000000002	Open	TR_NET	08/08/2000	USD	7,855.70	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
<input type="checkbox"/>	000000000003	Open	TR_NET	04/04/2005	USD	30,288.61	0.00	0.00	0.00	0.00
<input type="checkbox"/>	000000000004	Open	TRNET04	04/04/2005	USD	6,632.93	5,000.00	5,000.00	0.00	0.00

Page fields and functionality are similar to those discussed in *Administering Nets*. However, you can only cancel nets with an *Open* Status.

**Related Links**

[Administering Nets](#)

**Closing Nets**

Once you select (by manual or automatic methods) and approve nets, you close them in both Payables and Receivables.

You close payables nets by creating payment selection criteria and running Pay Cycle Manager. If there is any remaining payables net balance (balance is less than or greater than zero), you must create a new payment selection criteria and run Pay Cycle Manager again.

To close receivables nets, you must run the Request Receivables Update process, which updates the customer information with the invoice netting payment created in the netting process.

The Net Closing Process also contains the multicurrency net adjustment functionality. For nets involving multiple currencies this functionality evaluates if the payables and receivables accounting entries are

in balance, given a defined currency conversion rate. The system then automatically adjusts them as necessary prior to payables and receivables posting.

**Related Links**

[Multicurrency Netting Functionality](#)

"Understanding Document Tolerances (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Purchasing*)"

"Understanding Pay Cycle Processing (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Payables*)"

"Understanding Payments and Deposits (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Receivables*)"

**Understanding the Net Closing Process in Pay Cycle Manager**

Here is a more detailed look at the Netting Closing Application Engine processes, (TR\_NET\_CLOSE) and (TR\_NET\_ARCLS), which launch from Pay Cycle Manager (AP\_APY2015). These processes close the netting population of the AR and AP transactions that are selected for netting. Closing refers to updating the transactions in the netting tables as well as updating transactions in the AP and AR tables. Inserts are done in certain situations. (For example, if an AP payment is greater than the AR balance, PeopleSoft will insert a new line in AP for the remaining balance not offset by the receivable amount.)

**Inquiring on Bilateral Nets**

You can inquire on your bilateral netting contract and relationship information.

**Pages Used to Inquire on Bilateral Nets**

<i>Page Name</i>	<i>Definition Name</i>	<i>Navigation</i>	<i>Usage</i>
Review Netting Contracts	NET_SCHD_CNTRC	Cash Management, Bi-Lateral Netting, Review Netting Contracts, Review Netting Contracts	Search your netting data by netting contract.
Netting Inquiry	NET_INQUIRY_HDR	Cash Management, Bi-Lateral Netting, Review Single Netting, Netting Inquiry	Review information on a single netting relationship.
Review Multiple Netting	NET_NETTING_ADMIN	Cash Management, Bi-Lateral Netting, Review Multiple Netting, Review Multiple Netting	Review information on multiple netting contracts.

# Performing Cash Sweep to Manage Liquidity

---

## Understanding Cash Sweep Functionality

Cash Sweep enables you to perform a sweep across multiple external bank accounts to manage the liquidity in your organization. Cash Sweep leverages the functionality of these PeopleSoft Treasury features:

- External bank accounts.
- Cash position.
- Fund transfers - Bank account and EFT (electronic fund transfer) requests.

The Cash Sweep process flow includes these steps:

1. Set up the cash sweep structure.

You set up the cash sweep structure across multiple external bank accounts. The cash sweep structure consists of a master account, overall processing attributes, sub-accounts and sub-account processing attributes.

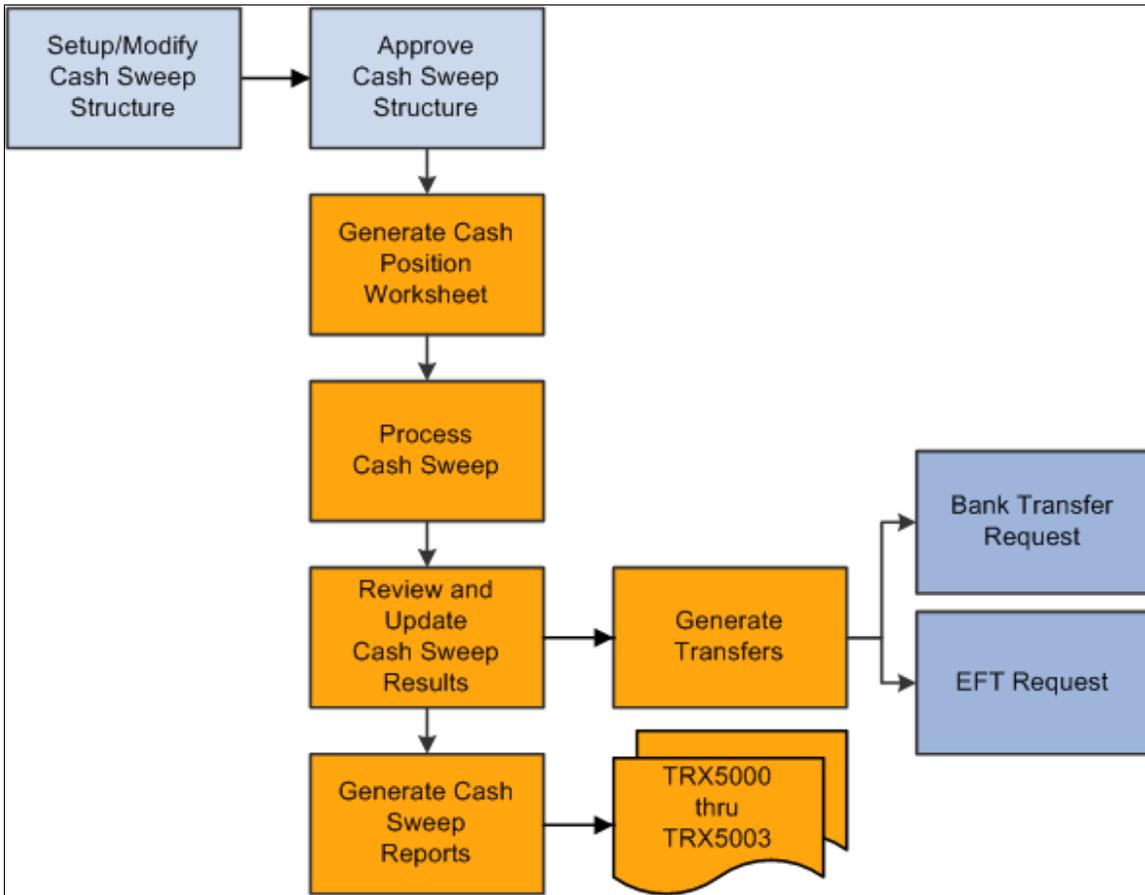
2. Approve the cash sweep structure.

You must approve any new or modified cash sweep structure before you can run the Cash Sweep process (TR\_CSH\_SWEEP).

3. Generate the Cash Position worksheet.
4. Run the Cash Sweep process.
5. Review and update the cash sweep results.
6. Generate transfers using bank transfer or EFT request.

7. Generate cash sweep reports.

**Image: Cash Sweep Process Flow**



**Prerequisites**

Complete these prerequisites prior to setting up a cash sweep structure:

- Set up external bank accounts.
- Set up internal bank accounts.
- Set up bank transfer templates.
- Set up EFT templates.
- Define cash position trees.

---

**Defining and Approving a Cash Sweep Structure**

This section presents an overview of a cash sweep structure and discusses how to:

- Define a cash sweep structure.

- Set up cash sweep subaccounts.
- Approve a cash sweep structure and run the Cash Sweep process.

## Pages Used to Define and Approve a Cash Sweep Structure

<i>Page Name</i>	<i>Definition Name</i>	<i>Navigation</i>	<i>Usage</i>
Cash Sweep Structure	CSH_SWEEP_DEFN	Cash Management, Cash Sweep, Define Cash Sweep Structure, Cash Sweep Structure	Define the master bank account, currency, and cash position tree and node for a physical cash sweep. Set up cash sweep subaccounts.
Approve Cash Sweep Structure	CSH_SWEEP_APPR	Cash Management, Cash Sweep, Approve Cash Sweep Structure, Approve Cash Sweep Structure	Approve or deny selected cash sweep structures.

## Overview of a Cash Sweep Structure

To perform a cash sweep, you must set up an active physical cash sweep structure as of a specified effective date. You can update this structure and change the effective date to keep track of any changes you make.

You set up a physical cash sweep structure across multiple external bank accounts. You identify an external bank account as the master bank account for this cash sweep structure and identify one or more sub-accounts. You can only select one master bank account for each physical cash sweep structure. However, you can select the same external bank account as the master bank account across multiple physical cash sweep structures. When you select a master bank and bank account for a cash sweep structure, the sweep currency and business unit used to set up the bank account display as default values for the cash sweep structure. You cannot change these values unless you select a different bank account.

The activity type that you select for a physical cash sweep structure determines how the funds will be moved. Activity types are:

- Funding

This activity type moves funds out of the master bank account to the selected sub bank accounts.

- Concentration

This activity type moves funds out of selected sub bank accounts to the master bank account.

- Bidirectional

This activity type moves funds into and out of the master bank account depending on the of the calculated transfer amount. If the cash position of the subaccount is negative, Cash Sweep assumes that here is a shortage of funds in the subaccount and moves funds from the master bank account to the subaccount. If the cash position of the subaccount is positive, Cash Sweep assumes that there is a surplus of funds and moves funds from the subaccount to the master bank account. Negative balances in subaccounts are Funded and positive balances in subaccounts are Concentrated.

Example 1: When activity type is bidirectional and the sub bank account cash position is - 12, 000 USD, Cash Sweep understands that the funds need to be moved from the master bank account to the sub bank account.

Example 2: When the activity type is bidirectional and the sub bank account cash position is + 12, 000 USD, Cash Sweep understands that the funds need to be moved from the sub bank account to the master bank account.

You identify either your organization or the bank as the initiator of the cash sweep. When an organization initiates the cash sweep the Auto Generate Transfers check box is enabled. You select this check box to enable the system to automatically generate the EFT requests and bank transfers when the Cash Sweep (TR\_CSH\_SWEEP) process is run. If you select an organization and do not select this check box, then you must access the Request Cash Sweep component and perform the transfers manually. However, frequently an organization does not want to initially generate the EFT requests and bank transfers automatically (deselect the check box) so that it can review the recommended transfer amount for each cash sweep structure and make any necessary changes. Once the organization is satisfied with the recommended transfer amount, it can select the Auto Generate Transfers check box and the system will automatically generate the EFT requests and bank transfers when the Cash Sweep process is run. The Auto Generate Transfers check box is not selected if a bank initiates the cash sweep.

When the bank is the initiator of the cash sweep, the bank moves the funds, but the system only stores the recommended transfer amounts without creating the actual EFT requests or bank transfers.

You select a market index and rate type to assist in identifying the exchange rate to apply to the cash sweep when cash sweep currency is different from cash position currency.

---

**Important!** Make sure that the Exchange Rate tables are updated with the appropriate exchange rates.

---

You can select cash sweep rounding options or choose not to round the physical cash sweep amounts. Rounding will never break below the target balance defined on external bank account definition.

You can select one of the following rounding options:

- *Nearest*

Selecting this value will increase or decrease the physical cash sweep amount to the closest multiple specified. For example, if the physical sweep/concentration amount of 1,234,567.87 USD is rounded to the nearest hundreds, the amount will be calculated as 1,234,600.00 USD. However, if a physical sweep/concentration amount of 1,234,347.87 USD is rounded to the nearest hundreds, the amount will be 1,234,300.00 USD.

- *None*

Rounding will not be performed when you select this value.

- *Round Down*

Selecting this value will decrease the physical cash sweep amount to the nearest multiple specified. For example, if the physical sweep/concentration amount of 1,234,567.87 USD rounded down to hundreds, the amount will be calculated as 1,234,500.00 USD.

- *Round Up*

Round up increases the physical cash sweep amount to the nearest multiple specified. For example, if the physical cash sweep amount of 1,234,567.87 USD is rounded up to hundreds, the amount will be calculated as 1,234,600.00 USD.

If you select *Nearest*, *Round Down*, or *Round Up* as a rounding option, you must select one of these rounding factors:

- Units (1)
- Tens (10)
- Hundreds (100)
- Thousands (1,000)
- Ten thousands (10,000)
- Hundred thousands (100,000)
- Millions (1,000,000)
- Ten Millions (10,000,000)

You select an active cash position tree name and tree node for each cash sweep structure. The tree nodes can be recursive or nonrecursive.

You can identify one or more external bank accounts as sub bank accounts on a physical cash sweep structure. The system issues a warning message to alert the user that setting an external bank account as sub bank account on multiple physical cash sweep structures could result in a sub bank account that is overdrawn. Duplicate sub bank accounts in the same cash sweep structure are not permitted. You also cannot identify the same external bank account as a master bank account and a sub bank account in the same physical cash sweep structure. However, you can identify an external bank account as a sub bank account in one physical cash sweep structure, and as a master bank account in another physical cash sweep structure. You can pool multiple subaccounts for a cash sweep.

You select a cash position tree node for each subaccount. The master bank account and any sub bank accounts identified for each cash sweep structure must share the same cash position tree.

---

**Important!** It is critical that you correctly map the cash position tree nodes to the master bank accounts and subaccounts on the cash sweep structure.

---

You can select *EFT Transfer* or *Bank Transfer* as the Transfer Class for each subaccount. Selecting either transfer class moves funds across bank accounts. However, if you select *Organization* as the Initiator on the Cash Sweep Structure page, you must select one of these values for each subaccount that you establish.

You can select a Funding or Concentration template to apply to each subaccount. These templates enable you to set up transactions in advance with parties with which you conduct regular, specific transactions. You select a *Funding Template* for each subaccount if you selected *Funding* or *Bi-Directional* as the activity type on the Cash Sweep Structure page. You select the *Concentration Template* if you selected *Concentration* or *Bi-Directional* as the activity type.

---

**Important!** It is critical that you define and map the appropriate template with each subaccount. Mapping these templates incorrectly can result in transfer errors when the Cash Sweep process is run.

---

You specify the minimum amount and a maximum amount to transfer during the Cash Sweep process between a master bank account. A zero amount indicates that there is no minimum amount limit. Specific rules dictate how the minimum and maximum transfer amounts either do or do not affect the calculated amount that the cash sweep process generates:

- Minimum Transfer Amount

The minimum amount to be transferred during a cash sweep process between Master Bank Account and Sub Bank Account. A zero amount indicates that there is no minimum amount limit.

When the activity type is Funding and calculated transfer amount is less than the minimum transfer amount, cash sweep process sets the calculated transfer amount to the minimum transfer amount.

When the activity type is Concentration and the calculated transfer amount is less than the minimum transfer amount, cash sweep process sets the calculated transfer amount to zero. There are not enough funds in the sub-account to meet the minimum transfer amount and still maintain its target balance, so no amount is set to transfer.

- Maximum Transfer Amount

The maximum amount to be transferred during a cash sweep process between Master Bank Account and Sub Bank Account. A zero amount indicates that there is no maximum amount limit.

The maximum transfer amount rule is the same for both Funding and Concentration activity types. During the cash sweep process if the calculated transfer amount is greater than the maximum transfer amount, then the calculated transfer amount is set to the maximum transfer amount.

You can select an Exclude check box on the Cash Sweep Structure page to temporarily prevent a subaccount row from being included in the Cash Sweep Process. Once you remove the check mark, the row will be included the next time the Cash Sweep Process is run.

Once you have set up and saved a cash sweep structure, a designated approver must approve the cash sweep structure using the Cash Sweep Structure Approval component before running the Cash Sweep process. The status of a cash sweep structure can be pending, approved, or denied. If the approver either approves or denies approval of the cash sweep structure, you can modify the cash sweep structure without having to leave the Approve Cash Sweep Structure page. When you modify an approved or denied cash sweep structure and save it, the status of the cash sweep structure changes to *pending* until the designated approver approves or denies it again. If the structure is approved, it is ready for the Cash Sweep Calculations process to be run. When a designated approver approves or denies a cash sweep structure, the user ID of the approver and the date that the structure was approved or denied appears on the Approve Cash Sweep Structure page. An assigned user other than the user who entered the Cash Sweep Structure must approve all changes before you can run the Cash Sweep Calculations process.

---

**Important!** The user who is assigned to approve a cash sweep structure must be someone other than the user who enters or modifies the cash sweep structure.

---

See [Setting Up Cash Forecasting](#).

## Cash Sweep Structure Page

Use the Cash Sweep Structure page (CSH\_SWEEP\_DEFN) to define the master bank account, currency, and cash position tree and node for a physical cash sweep.

Set up cash sweep subaccounts.

### Navigation

Cash Management, Cash Sweep, Define Cash Sweep Structure, Cash Sweep Structure

### Image: Cash Sweep Structure page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Cash Sweep Structure page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

#### Sweep ID

Select the appropriate setID and enter a value to identify the cash sweep structure that you are creating on the Cash Sweep Structure – Add a New Value page.

#### Sweep Type

Accept the system-defined default value, Physical on the Cash Sweep Structure – Add a New Value page. A physical cash sweep indicates movement between external bank accounts selected for this cash sweep structure.

#### Master Bank Code

Select the bank that has the master bank account that you want to assign to this cash sweep structure. The Bank ID field is updated based on the code you select.

#### Master Bank Account

Select the bank account that you want to use to transfer funds to subaccounts or to concentrate funds from subaccounts. The

Bank Account # (number), Sweep Currency, and Business Unit values associated with the selected bank account appear as defaults on the page and are derived from the account selected as the master bank account. This business unit is used as the anchor business unit when the cash sweep transfers are performed.

### Activity Type

Select one of these activity types to move funds for this cash sweep structure. This field is required for both organization and bank initiated cash sweeps.

- *Bi-Directional*

Moves funds into and out of the master bank account depending on the of the calculated transfer amount. If the cash position of the subaccount is negative, Cash Sweep assumes that there is a shortage of funds in the subaccount and moves funds from the master bank account to the subaccount. If the cash position of the subaccount is positive, Cash Sweep assumes that there is a surplus of funds and moves funds from the subaccount to the master bank account. Negative balances in subaccounts are Funded and positive balances in subaccounts are Concentrated.

- *Concentration*

Moves funds out of sub bank accounts to the master bank account.

- *Funding*

Moves funds out of the master bank account to the sub bank accounts.

### Initiated By

Select one of these values as the initiator of the cash sweep.

- *Organization*

Indicates that your organization will create the bank transfers and EFT requests.

- *Bank*

Indicates that the bank will make the fund movement. The accounting will come from the bank statement. The system will only store the recommended transfer amounts, and will not create the actual EFT requests or bank transfers.

### Auto-Generate Transfers

Select this check box to enable the system to automatically generate EFT (electronic file transfer) requests and bank transfers for the recommended transfer amount when you run the Cash Sweep process.

If you leave this check box blank, then you must access the Cash Sweep Results page to initiate the creation of EFT requests and bank transfers.

**Index**

The default value is derived from the selected master bank account . Selecting a market rate from the market rate index assists in identifying the exchange rate to apply to the cash sweep when the cash sweep currency is different from the cash position currency.

**Rate Type**

The default value is derived from the selected master bank account. Selecting a rate type assists in identifying the exchange rate to apply to the cash sweep when cash sweep currency is different from the cash position currency.

**Round Option**

Select one of these options to determine how you want to round the transfer amount:

- *Nearest*

Rounds either up or down to the nearest round factor.

- *None*
- *Round Down*
- *Round Up*

**Round Factor**

Select one of these options to determine how the amount will be rounded.

- *1*
- *1,000,000*
- *10,000*
- *10*
- *10,000*
- *10,000,000*
- *100*
- *100,000*

---

**Note:** The Round Factor is required unless the value selected for the Round Option is *None*.

---

**Tree Name**

You must select a Cash Position Tree to apply to this cash sweep.

**Tree Node**

You must select a Cash Position Tree Node to apply to this cash sweep. The master bank account and each of the sub bank

accounts identified in each physical cash sweep structure should share the same cash position tree.

---

**Important!** When selecting a cash position tree node, take note of the associated position sources and the resulting position calculation amount.

---

## Audit Information

The system tracks and displays this information about a selected cash structure:

- **Date Created**  
Identifies when the cash sweep structure was created.
- **Created By**  
Identifies the user who created the cash sweep structure.
- **Date Modified**  
Identifies the last date that the cash sweep structure was modified.
- **Modified By**  
Identifies the last person who modified the cash sweep structure
- **Date Approved**  
Identifies the date that the cash sweep structure was approved.
- **Approved By**  
Identifies the user who approved the cash sweep structure.
- **Approval Status**  
Identifies the cash sweep structure as *Pending*, *Approved*, or *Denied*.

## Cash Sweep Details – Subaccounts Information

Select the Cash Sweep Details – Sub Accounts tab.

### Bank SetID, Bank Code and Bank Account

Select a bank setID, bank code, and bank account for each subaccount that you set up for this physical cash sweep structure.

### Tree Node

Select a cash position tree node for each subaccount that you set up.

The cash position tree node that you select for each subaccount must share the same cash position tree as the master account selected for this physical cash sweep structure.

**Transfer Class**

Select one of these values to transfer the physical cash sweep amount.

- *EFT Transfer*
- *Bank Transfer*

---

**Note:** You must select one of these values if you selected *Organization* as the Initiator of the physical cash sweep on the Cash Sweep Definition page.

---

**Funding Template**

Select a funding template if you selected either *Funding* or *Bi-Directional* as the Activity Type on the Cash Sweep Definition page. If you selected *Bank Transfer* as the Transfer Class, the system only displays a list of external bank account funding transfer templates.

**Concentration Template**

Select a concentration template if you selected either *Concentration* or *Bi-Directional* as the Activity Type on the Cash Sweep Definition page. If you selected *Bank Transfer* as the Transfer Class, the system only displays a list of external bank account transfer templates.

---

**Important!** You must select the funding and concentration templates that are set up for the purpose of performing a cash sweep and are appropriate for the cash sweep structure that is being defined, otherwise the system may generate incorrect transfers.

---

**Exclude**

Select this check box to exclude the subaccount row for which it is selected from being included in the cash sweep process.

**Cash Sweep Details – Amount Information**

Select the Cash Sweep Details – Amount tab.

**Minimum Transfer Amount**

Enter the minimum amount to be transferred during a cash sweep process between the master bank account and a subaccount.

A zero minimum amount indicates that there is no limit to the minimum transfer amount regardless of the activity type selected on the Cash Sweep Definition page.

However if the calculated transfer amount is less than the minimum transfer amount, these rules apply:

- When the activity type is *Funding* and the calculated transfer amount is less than the minimum transfer amount, the Cash Sweep process sets the calculated transfer amount to the minimum transfer amount.

- When the activity type is *Concentration* and the calculated transfer amount is less than the minimum transfer amount, the Cash Sweep process sets the calculated transfer amount to zero. There are not enough funds in the sub-account to meet the minimum transfer amount and still maintain its target balance, so no amount is set to transfer.

### **Maximum Transfer Amount**

Enter the maximum amount to be transferred during a cash sweep process between the master bank account and the subaccount.

A zero amount indicates that there is no maximum amount limit.

The maximum transfer amount rule is when you select either Funding or Concentration as the activity type on the Cash Sweep Definition page. When you run the Cash Sweep process, if the calculated transfer amount is greater than the maximum transfer amount, then the calculated transfer amount is set to the maximum transfer amount for both activity types.

### **Sweep Currency**

The default currency that appears in this field is derived from the Master Bank Account.

## **Cash Sweep Details – Account Information**

Select the Cash Sweep Details – Account Information tab.

This grid defines the bank account details for each subaccount including the Bank ID, the Bank Account # (bank account number) as well as the bank account's currency, associated business unit, and description.

## **Approve Cash Sweep Structure Page**

Use the Approve Cash Sweep Structure page (CSH\_SWEEP\_APPR) to approve or deny selected cash sweep structures.

## Navigation

Cash Management, Cash Sweep, Approve Cash Sweep Structure, Approve Cash Sweep Structure

### Image: Approve Cash Sweep Structure page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Approve Cash Sweep Structure page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

**Approve Cash Sweep Structure**

Search Criteria

SetID  Sweep ID

Sweep Type  Approval Status

Master Bank Code  Master Bank Account

Cash Sweep Structure							Personalize	Find	View All	First	1 of 1	Last
Select	SetID	Sweep ID	Sweep Type	Description	Approval Status	Approved By	Date Approved					
<input type="checkbox"/>	SHARE	CS_EUR_2_GBP	Physical	Fund GBP Account from EURC Account of UKBNK	Pending							

Select All  Clear All

## Search Criteria

Select values for the search criteria fields as needed. If you only select a setID and leave all other fields blank, the system will list all of the Cash Sweep Structures that have a status of *Pending*, *Approved*, and *Denied* when you click the Search button. You can also select an approval status of Pending, Approved, or Denied and only cash sweep structures with the selected approval status appear on the list when you click the Search button.

## Cash Sweep Structure

A list of cash sweep structures appears in the Cash Sweep Structure group box based on you selected search criteria. You can select all of the structures in the list or select individual structure check boxes and click the Approve or Deny button to approve or deny the selected cash sweep structures.

### Cash Sweep ID

Click the link of an individual cash sweep structure and access the actual cash sweep structure.

### Approval Status

These values can appear in this field:

- *Pending*

This value appears for a cash sweep structure that has never been approved or has been modified after approval or denial.

- *Approved*

This value appears when an authorized approver clicks the Approved button on this page.

- *Denied*

This value appears when an authorized approver clicks the Denied button on this page.

**Approved By and Date Approved** Displays the User ID of the individual who approved or denied the cash sweep structure along with the date that the structure was approved or denied.

## Processing Cash Sweep and Reviewing the Results

This section presents an overview of cash sweep processing and review and discusses how to:

- Run the Cash Sweep process.
- Review and update the results of a cash sweep.

### Pages Used to Run the Cash Sweep Process and Review the Results

<i>Page Name</i>	<i>Definition Name</i>	<i>Navigation</i>	<i>Usage</i>
Cash Sweep Request	CSH_SWEEP_REQ	Cash Management, Cash Sweep, Request Cash Sweep, Cash Sweep Request	Run the Cash Sweep Calculations process.
Cash Sweep Results	CSH_SWEEP_RESULTS	Cash Management, Cash Sweep, Cash Sweep Results, Cash Sweep Results	Review and update cash sweep results.

### Overview of the Cash Sweep Processing and Results

The Cash Sweep process (TR\_CSH\_SWEEP) drives the data extraction, funds transfer calculation and funds transfer execution for a cash sweep structure. This process performs these functions for each sub-account:

- Retrieves the cash position balance.
- Retrieves the target balance.
- Calculates the amount of funds in short or excess of the target balance.
- Determines from the cash sweep structure whether funding or concentrating funds apply.
- Applies rounding rules set in the cash sweep structure to the transfer amount.
- Compares the transfer amount to the minimum and maximum transfer limits in the cash sweep structure and adjusts as needed.
- Sets the final recommended transfer amount.
- If auto-generate check box is selected for a cash sweep structure, then it generates any bank transfers or EFT transfers.
- Populates the header and details on the Cash Sweep Results tables.

You can process cash sweep for each cash sweep structure and for a specific date. You can run the Cash Sweep process multiple times during a specified date. You can also select or not select sub-accounts for cash sweep processing.

---

**Important!** You can run Cash Sweep process for a cash sweep structure multiple times during the day. You should exercise caution and ensure that the system is set up to handle such a scenario. Make sure that the Cash Position Sources include the cash sweep amount and that a cash position has been recalculated after generating cash sweep transfers. If system is setup incorrectly it could result in inappropriate transfers.

---

## Related Links

[Cash Management Reports: A to Z](#)

## Cash Sweep Request Page

Use the Cash Sweep Request page (CSH\_SWEEP\_REQ) to run the Cash Sweep Calculations process.

### Navigation

Cash Management, Cash Sweep, Request Cash Sweep, Cash Sweep Request

### Image: Cash Sweep Request page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Cash Sweep Request page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

The screenshot shows the 'Cash Sweep Request' page. At the top, there are links for 'Run Control ID', 'REQUEST\_SWEEP', 'Report Manager', and 'Process Monitor', along with a 'Run' button. Below this is the 'Process Request Parameters' section, which includes a table with the following fields and values:

*Process Frequency	*SetID	*Sweep ID	Sweep Type	*Value Date Option	Value Date	*Transaction Date Option	Transaction Date
Once	SHARE	CS_D_RGN_SWEEP	Physical	Specify Date	10/25/2012	Specify Date	10/25/2012

### Value Date Option

Select one of these options to set the date for the value date. The value date is the date that is used to retrieve the cash position amounts.

- *Current*

Selecting this option assigns the current system date as the value date.

- *Specify*

Select this option to display the Value Date field in which you can assign a specific date as the value date.

---

**Note:** If the auto generate check box is checked on the cash sweep structure, then the system retrieves the cash position amounts for each cash sweep structure based on each sequence and creates the EFT requests and bank transfers. If the auto generate check box is not checked, the system retrieves the cash position amounts for each cash sweep structure based on each sequence and stores the details in the Cash Sweep Structure tables.

---

### Transaction Date Option

Select one of these options to set the transaction date for the transfer transactions.

- *Current*

Select this option to apply the current system date to the transfer transactions.

- *Specify*

Select this option to display the Transaction Date field in which you can assign a specific date to the transfer transactions.

## Cash Sweep Results Page

Use the Cash Sweep Results page (CSH\_SWEEP\_RESULTS) to review and update cash sweep results.

### Navigation

Cash Management, Cash Sweep, Cash Sweep Results, Cash Sweep Results

#### Image: Cash Sweep Results page – Transaction Detail tab

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Cash Sweep Results page – Transaction Detail tab. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

**Cash Sweep Results**

SetID: SHARE      Sweep ID: CS\_C\_LCL\_SWEEP      Sweep Type: Physical  
 Transaction Date: 11/12/2008      Sequence: 1  
 Master Bank Code: CHBK2      Bank ID: 00700  
 Master Bank Account: EURO      Bank Account #: 115201849174  
 Activity Type: Bi-Directional      Business Unit: CHE01 Switzerland 1  
 Value Date: 11/12/2008      Cash Position: 0.00  
 Worksheet: CASH\_SWEEP\_EUR

Cash Sweep Details      Personalize | Find | View All | First 1-2 of 2 Last

Select	Bank SetID	Bank Code	Bank Account	Sweep Currency	Recommended Transfer Amount	Actual Transfer Amount	Activity Type	Transfer Class	Template ID
<input type="checkbox"/>	SHARE	CHBK2	CHCK	EUR	26,950.96	26,950.96	Concentration	EFT Transfer	CS_CHF_2_EUR
<input type="checkbox"/>	SHARE	CHBK2	EURC	EUR	40,499.15	40,499.15	Concentration	Bank Transfer	CS_URC_2_URO

Select All       Clear All  
 Generate Transfers

#### Image: Cash Sweep Results page – Other Amounts tab

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Cash Sweep Results page – Other Amounts tab. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

Cash Sweep Details      Personalize | Find | View All | First 1-2 of 2 Last

Select	Bank SetID	Bank Code	Bank Account	Sweep Currency	Target Balance	Cash Position	Minimum Transfer Amount	Maximum Transfer Amount
<input type="checkbox"/>	SHARE	CHBK2	CHCK	EUR	6,673.79	33,624.75	0.00	0.00
<input type="checkbox"/>	SHARE	CHBK2	EURC	EUR	10,000.00	50,499.15	0.00	0.00

#### Image: Cash Sweep Results page – Account Information tab

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Cash Sweep Results page – Account Information tab. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

Cash Sweep Details      Personalize | Find | View All | First 1-2 of 2 Last

Select	Bank SetID	Bank Code	Bank Account	Sweep Currency	Bank ID	Bank Account #	Account Currency
<input type="checkbox"/>	SHARE	CHBK2	CHCK	EUR	00700	115201849173	CHF
<input type="checkbox"/>	SHARE	CHBK2	EURC	EUR	00700	115201849175	EUR

**Image: Cash Sweep Results page – Message Log tab**

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Cash Sweep Results page – Message Log tab. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

Select	Bank SetID	Bank Code	Bank Account	Sweep Currency	Message Text
<input type="checkbox"/>	SHARE	CHBK2	CHCK	EUR	
<input type="checkbox"/>	SHARE	CHBK2	EURC	EUR	

**Select** This check box will only appear if the funds transfer still need to be generated, which means that the Auto Generate Transfers check box was not selected on the Cash Sweep Structure page of the associated cash sweep structure.

**Generate Transfers** Click this button to generate either a bank transfer or an EFT request for the selected rows. Generating a bank transfer will update the Transfer ID field on the Transaction Detail tab with the Bank Transfer ID, and generating an EFT request will update the Transfer ID field with the EFT Request ID.

**Transaction Detail Tab**

**Recommended Transfer Amount** After comparing the minimum and maximum transfer limits, the Cash Sweep Calculations process adjust the transfer amount as necessary, sets this final recommended transfer amount and updates this field.

**Actual Transfer Amount** The default value is the amount that appears in the Recommended Transfer Amount field. You can override the this default amount and perform the transfer.

**Activity Type** Displays either Funding or Concentration at the grid level for a bidirectional cash sweep structure.

---

**Note:** A bidirectional cash sweep structure enables you to override the activity type on the subaccount grid. This provides you with the flexibility to change the direction in the movement of funds and override the actual transfer amount.

---

**Other Amounts Tab**

**Target Balance** The Cash Sweep Calculations process retrieves the target balance and updates this field.

**Cash Position** The Cash Sweep Calculations process retrieves the cash position for each subaccount and updates this field.

## Account Information tab

This tab displays the sub bank account information that was entered on the Cash Sweep Structure – Accounts page.

## Message Log tab



A warning or error icon appears before the Select column on each tab, which indicates there is a message on the Message Log tab.

### Message Text

If the system issues a warning or error message and displays an icon, the text describing the warning or error appears in this field.

## Generating Cash Sweep Reports

This section presents an overview of the cash sweep reports and describes the page navigation and usage of each report:

You can generate these cash sweep reports:

- The Cash Sweep Structure report (TRX5000).

This report lists detailed information for a cash sweep structure, includes the master bank account, overall cash sweep processing attributes, sub-accounts, sub-account processing attributes and audit information

You must select a SetID and an As of Date for report. You have the option of selecting a specific Sweep ID or leaving the field blank, which will include all cash sweep structures that were created with the specified setID and as of the specified date.

- Cash Sweep Bank Accounts (TRX5001)

This report lists all of the cash sweep structures associated with a given bank account and whether the account is the master bank account or subaccount in the structure.

You must select a SetID and an As of Date for this report. You have the option of selecting a Bank Code, the Business Unit associated with the bank, and a Bank Account number, or you can leave one or all of these values blank and the system will list all cash sweep structures created with the specified setID and as of the specified date and any bank values associated with a master bank account or subaccount in the structures.

- Cash Sweep Summary (TRX5002)

This report summarizes cash sweep amounts within a cash sweep structure by bank account.

You must select a setID and select From Date and To Date values for this report. You can enter the same date in both fields to run the report as of that date only. You have the option of selecting a specific Sweep ID or leaving the field blank which will display a list of cash sweep amounts for all cash sweep structures that were created with the specified setID within or on the specified dates.

- Denied Cash Sweep Payments (TRX5003)

This report lists all denied cash sweep payments.

You must select SetID, From Date, and To Date values for this report. You can enter the same date in both fields to run the report as of that date only. You have the option of selecting a specific Sweep ID or leaving the field blank which will display a list of all cash sweep payments that were denied that fall under the specified setID within or on the specified dates.

## Pages Used to Generate Cash Sweep Reports

<b>Page Name</b>	<b>Definition Name</b>	<b>Navigation</b>	<b>Usage</b>
Cash Sweep Structure	RUN_TRX5000	Cash Management, Cash Sweep, Reports, Cash Sweep Structure	Run the Cash Sweep Structure report.
Cash Sweep Bank Accounts	RUN_TRX5001	Cash Management, Cash Sweep, Reports, Cash Sweep Bank Accounts	Run the Cash Sweep Bank Accounts report.
Cash Sweep Summary	RUN_TRX5002	Cash Management, Cash Sweep, Reports, Cash Sweep Summary	Run the Cash Sweep Summary report.
Denied Cash Sweep Payments	RUN_TRX5003	Cash Management, Cash Sweep, Reports, Denied Cash Sweep Payments	Run the Denied Cash Sweep Payments report.

## Chapter 9

# Transferring Funds

---

## Understanding the Funds Transfer Process

Cash Management defines and supports these two funds transfer methods:

- Bank account transfers

Bank account transfers are used by your organization to transfer money between banks that are on your organization's general ledger (from one of your organization's bank accounts to another bank account belonging to your organization). This could be a transfer between your internal bank accounts, between your external bank accounts, or between your internal and your external bank accounts. PeopleSoft defines the following two categories of bank account transfers:

- External bank transfers are used by your organization to transfer money between banks that are on your organization's general ledger (from one of your organization's bank accounts to another bank account belonging to your organization).
- Internal bank transfers are transfers between business units using internal banks and internal bank accounts that you have created for your organization.

- EFTs

EFTs are used to transfer funds from your organization's bank to an external third party.

For bank account transfers and EFTs, you can send funds transfers from templates, as well as on an ad hoc basis. To minimize the amount of manual entry when sending these ad hoc funds transfers, you can complete recipient information from settlement instructions, such as when you are paying a supplier who provides occasional services.

Cash Management also includes repetitive transfer, drawdown transfer, and prenotification functionality. Repetitive transfers and drawdown transfers are preapproved agreements to transfer monetary amounts on a periodic basis. (The Federal Reserve Banks operate the Fedwire Funds Service, which supports four types of transfers: repetitive, semi-repetitive, non-repetitive or freeform, and drawdown. PeopleSoft funds transfer functionality supports all four transfer types.) There is not a funds transfer method as described above for bank account transfers and EFTs. The relationship of the involved parties determines whether a repetitive or drawdown transfer is in the form of a bank account transfer or EFT. A prenotification is a file sent to a debtor's bank to test if payments may be made to a creditor through a specified bank account. The creditor will not process a payment made through the debtor's bank account until a prenotification is sent and successfully processed.

Cash Management supports the following transfer types:

- A repetitive transfer is used when a company frequently makes a transfer between the same debit and credit parties.

The parties involved may be your organization and your bank—or your organization, your bank, and a third party. The Originating Depository Financial Institution (ODFI) has a record of the debit and credit parties and receives electronic and telephonic instructions to make the transfer. The ODFI also assigns a unique identifier to each instruction template. The items communicated to the ODFI as part of the transfer consist of the unique identifier, the date of the transfer, and the dollar amount. Of these three items, only the date and dollar amount may be changed, which decreases the risk of misdirected funds.

- A semi-repetitive transfers is similar to a repetitive transfer.

The difference is that you can also modify the transfer description, in addition to the amount and date information.

- A non-repetitive or freeform transfer is used for ad-hoc transfers; you can edit all fields.
- A drawdown is a request sent by a company to an ODFI to initiate a wire transfer from its own account or another party's account at a Receiving Depository Financial Institution (RDFI).

For drawdown transfers, the RDFI is the payor of funds. The RDFI requires that it have authorization for payment from the account holder—meaning the party being debited must preauthorize the transfer.

Drawdown transfers are most frequently used as part of a company's cash concentration system. Organizations use cash concentration systems to consolidate many bank accounts (operated by individual areas in the organization) to a cash position in a single account.

Drawdown transfers are also a subset of repetitive transfers. You can set up a drawdown transfer to be a repetitive transfer.

- A prenotification or "prenote" is an EFT Request used to verify that payments can be made to a creditor from the debtor's bank account. Prenotes are created using a transfer template. From the template you can create a prenote which is basically an EFT for a zero dollar amount. After settling the EFT, the prenote will then be processed via Financial Gateway like any other EFT. Prenotes can only be settled through Financial Gateway.

In the case of ACH prenotes, if no return is sent back after a specified number of days, then the debtor can assume that it can send payments to the creditor's bank account. A back-end process updates the prenotes' status after the specified number of days has passed.

If an ACH Return file is received from the creditor's bank, it will contain information that the prenote had errors that must be corrected before the creditor will accept payments from the debtor. The creditor must send a new, corrected prenote. If no return file is received after the defined number of days, then it can be assumed that the debtor's payments will be processed by the creditor's bank.

You can set up preapproved repetitive transfers and drawdown transfers in the Cash Management funds transfer pages, creating a template that stores the repetitive transfer agreement information. This information includes the unique identifier assigned by the bank that authorizes (or administrates) the transfer.

---

**Note:** As repetitive transfers and drawdown transfers are preapproved and preconfigured agreements, they cannot be initiated on an ad hoc basis.

---

## Funds Transfer Business Process

To process funds transfers, you create the transfer (either ad hoc or using a template), select it for settlement, and if required, route it for settlement approval. After it is approved, the system forwards the transfer to either the Financial Gateway or obtained via Pay Cycle Manager depending on what you select on the Settle Through field on the External Accounts - Payment Methods page. Use the dispatch settlements functionality to transmit the transfer to the appropriate bank and bank account.

For repetitive and drawdown transfers, only the repetitive transfer code (for drawdown transfers, this is the third-party authorization code), amount, and date are transmitted to the ODFI.

Here is a general overview of the steps in the funds transfer process:

1. Create all of the templates required by your organization.

Here are some possible combinations:

- Bank account transfer.
- Bank account transfer as a repetitive transfer.
- Bank account transfer as a drawdown transfer.
- Bank account transfer as a repetitive drawdown transfer.
- EFT.
- EFT as a repetitive transfer.
- EFT as a drawdown transfer.
- EFT as a repetitive drawdown transfer.
- EFT as a prenotification.

2. Approve new and modified templates.
3. Create a bank account transfer or EFT request.
4. On the bank account transfer or EFT request, select the appropriate template to create the specific transfer needed and provide any necessary transfer information to complete the transfer instructions.

You are not required to select a template if the transfer is considered a freeform transfer.

5. Select and approve transfers for settlement using the Settlement Manager.
6. Dispatch settlements to the appropriate banking institution for payment using Financial Gateway.

---

**Note:** If the settlement is to be settled through Pay Cycle Manager, it will be picked up at a later time.

---

The system processes the approved funds transfers and generates the appropriate accounting entries. Accounting entries for EFT transfers may be generated only if an accounting template has been specified on the EFT transfer request. Accounting events for bank transfers are automatic and do not need an accounting template.

If Financial Gateway is used as the settle-through option, you can, with the proper setup, get periodic updates to the original transaction until the settlement is paid. For wire transfers, the system can be configured to update the transaction with the Fed Wire ID generated by the bank for reference during inquiries.

## Prenotification Process

To create a prenote:

1. Create a new EFT template on the Enter Transfer Templates - Origin page using a payment method and a payment layout that will support prenotes and select the Prenote check box.

See "Understanding the Layout Catalog (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Financial Gateway*)".

2. (Optional) Access the Prenotification Details page.

The prenote status is assigned a status of "New." You can set the number of calendar days that must transpire after the prenote is sent to Financial Gateway before the prenote status changes to Confirmed by the system if no ACH Return file is received.

3. Approve the template on the Approve Transfer Templates page.

Upon approval, the system will prompt you to create a zero-dollar EFT Request, which serves as the transaction representing the prenote.

4. Click Yes.

The EFT Request page is displayed with the Prenotification field selected. All of the information from the template is transferred to this EFT Request transaction with a zero-dollar amount.

5. Select the prenote for approval from the Select Settlements page.
6. Approve the prenote EFT Request from the Approve Settlements page.
7. Dispatch the prenote in Financial Gateway just as you would any other payment.

This changes the status from "New" to "Pending." If no return is sent back from the bank within the number of business calendar days specified on the Prenotification Details page, the prenote status changes to "Confirmed." The status change is performed by a batch process that checks the number of days that have transpired since the creation of the prenote and compares it with the number of days specified on the Prenotification Details page (see Step 2).

If a return acknowledgment file is sent back from Financial Gateway, the prenote status changes to "Rejected" and the template will not be approved for use. If the errors in the prenote are correctable, a second prenote may be sent using this template. The status can be reset from "Error" to "New."

## Related Links

[Understanding the Settlements Payment Process](#)

---

## Common Elements Used to Transfer Funds

<b>Payment Method</b>	Indicate the method used to get the funds from the funding account. For example, select <i>ACH</i> if the funds are to be processed through an Automated Clearing House (ACH).
<b>Repetitive Transfer Code</b>	A code for any repetitive funds transfer type, assigned by a bank (or financial institution) to automatically initialize the bank's transfer process.
<b>Drawdown Transfer</b>	If selected, it indicates the transfer is a repetitive drawdown transfer.

---

## Prerequisites

To process funds transfers:

- Configure banks.
- Configure bank branches.
- Configure bank accounts and account payment methods.

At this time, you can optionally:

- Define settlement instructions.
- Define bank account transfer templates.
- Define EFT request template instructions and field level security for templates.
- Define settlement approval options.

### Related Links

"Account Settlement Page (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Banks Setup and Processing*)"

"Settlement Instructions Page (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Banks Setup and Processing*)"

"Setting Up the Bank Statement Import Process (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Banks Setup and Processing*)"

---

## Creating and Approving Funds Transfer Templates

To define transfer templates, use the Enter Transfer Templates component (TR\_WIRE\_TEMPLATES).

This section discusses how to:

1. Enter template origin information.
2. Specify template destination information.

3. Configure template EFT handling options.
4. Define template intermediary bank routings.
5. Enter template transfer addenda.
6. Add template internal notes.
7. Record template beneficiary address information.
8. Define template field security.

## Understanding the Funds Transfer Template Component

Your organization may benefit from setting up transactions in advance with parties with which you conduct regular, specific transactions. For example, using template transactions can streamline the process of distributing quarterly payouts to clients or monthly or annual payments to suppliers.

You set up the template, specifying whether it is for bank account transfers or EFTs. You can then further specify if the template is a repetitive transfer or drawdown transfer. Page values established at the template level for repetitive and drawdown transfers cannot be changed by a user at the transfer request level. In addition, you can specify security at the field level for the template.

---

**Note:** Pages and fields in the funds transfer template become available or unavailable for entry, depending on the selected transfer class.

---

To create a funds transfer template:

1. Select the Add a New Value tab on the Funds Transfer Templates search page.
2. Enter a SetID and Transfer Template ID, and specify a Transfer Class of *Bank Transfer* or *EFT Transfer*.
3. Complete the Origin, Destination, Beneficiary Address, and Template Field Security pages of the funds transfer template pages.

## Pages Used to Create and Approve Funds Transfer Templates

<b>Page Name</b>	<b>Definition Name</b>	<b>Navigation</b>	<b>Usage</b>
Enter Transfer Templates - Origin	TR_WR_TEMPLATE_FR	Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, Enter Transfer Templates, Origin	Enter template origin information. Set up the template for withdrawing funds from an account to transfer those funds.
Category Purpose	CAT_PURP_EFT_TPL	Click the Category Purpose link on the Enter Transfer Templates – Origin page.	Identify the high-level purpose of the payment instruction based on a set of pre-defined categories as per ISO 20022 external code list or a proprietary scheme name.

<b>Page Name</b>	<b>Definition Name</b>	<b>Navigation</b>	<b>Usage</b>
Prenotification Details	TR_WR_PRENOTE	Click the Prenotification Details link on the Enter Transfer Templates - Origin page.	Enter parameters for creating a template for prenotification requests.
Enter Transfer Templates - Destination	WR_TEMPLATE_FR	Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, Enter Transfer Templates, Destination	Specify template destination information. Set up templates to send wire transfers repeatedly to particular parties.
Identification Information	TR_WR_TPL_OID_SP	Click the Identification Information icon on the Enter Transfer Templates – Destination page.	Provide other identification for Name1, Bank, and/or Bank Account values, respectively.
EFT Options	TR_EFT_OPT_SEC	Click the EFT Options link on the Enter Transfer Templates - Destination page.	Configure template EFT handling options.  Values specified at the template level cannot be overwritten at the request level.
Routings	TR_INTR_TBL_SEC	Click the Routings link on the Enter Transfer Templates - Destination page.	Define template intermediary bank routings. Set up multiple routing information for a funds transfer.
Enter Transfer Templates - Detailed Description	TR_WR_DESC_SEC	Click the View Description button on the Enter Transfer Templates - Destination page.	Enter any of your in-house notes for the funds transfer. This information is not transmitted to the recipient.
Enter Transfer Templates - Addenda	STL_ADDENDA2_SP	Click the Addenda link on the Enter Transfer Template - Destination page.	Enter addenda information. This information is transmitted to the recipient.
Enter Transfer Templates - Beneficiary Address	WR_TEMPLATE_ADR	Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, Enter Transfer Templates, Beneficiary Address	Set up address information for the recipient of the funds transfer.
Enter Transfer Templates - Template Field Security	WR_TMPLT_FLDLST	Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, Enter Transfer Templates, Template Field Security	Select the active fields in your template, choose whether to enable accounting or to allow settlement instructions.

## Enter Transfer Templates - Origin Page

Use the Enter Transfer Templates - Origin page (TR\_WR\_TEMPLATE\_FR) to enter template origin information.

Set up the template for withdrawing funds from an account to transfer those funds.

## Navigation

Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, Enter Transfer Templates, Origin

### Image: Enter Transfer Templates - Origin page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Enter Transfer Templates - Origin page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

The screenshot displays the 'Origin' tab of the 'Enter Transfer Templates' page. It includes the following fields and controls:

- SetID:** SHARE
- Transfer Template ID:** EFTR-REPDRW
- Transfer Class:** EFT Transfer
- \*Description:** EFT Repetitive Draw Down
- \*Status:** Active (dropdown menu)
- From Bank Account:**
  - Bank Code:** USBNK
  - Bank Account:** CHK
  - Payment Method:** WIR
  - Layout:** PAYMENTEIP
  - Currency:** USD
  - Amount:** (empty field)
  - Repetitive Transfer:**
  - Drawdown Transfer:**
  - Repetitive Transfer Code:** EFTR-REPDRW
  - Template Expiration:** 12/31/2015
  - Accounting Template:** TR\_WIRES
  - Pool Business Unit:** (empty field)
  - Pool ID:** (empty field)
- Template Approval Status:**

Approval Status	Date	By
Approved	02/17/2006	SAMPLE

All available fields on this page are required. They contain relevant information about the account from which you are transferring funds. Available fields depend on the selected transfer class.

### Status

Select *Active* or *Inactive*. If you mark a template *Inactive*, it is not available for use (it does not appear in the funds transfer pages).

### Template Expiration

Enter a date that the repetitive transfer template expires.

If you select an expired template for use—meaning, if the template status is set to *Active* and the system date is past the date entered in this field—the system displays a warning message that you have selected an outdated template.

### Pool Business Unit and Pool ID

If this bank account is used for holding investment pool funds, enter the business unit and identifier of the pool.

### Payment Method

Available payment methods are determined by the values that you define in the Bank Code and Bank Account fields.

### Prenote

Select to create a prenotification.

### Prenotification Details

Click to access the Prenotification Details page to set prenote status and confirmation parameters if the template being created is for a prenote.

<b>Repetitive Transfer Code</b>	Enter the repetitive transfer code that the bank assigned to this transfer. This field is required because the code is necessary to initiate the transfer process with the bank.
<b>Repetitive Transfer</b>	Select if this template is for a repetitive transfer.
<b>Drawdown Transfer</b>	Select if this template is for a drawdown transfer.
<b>Accounting Template</b>	For transfers of an <i>EFT Transfer</i> transfer class, specify the accounting template from which to generate accounting entries.
<b>Approval Status</b>	Displays <i>Pending</i> as the value when you first create a transfer. The status changes as activity occurs later in the workflow—for example, when a supervisor approves the entered funds.
<b>Category Purpose</b>	Click this link to access the Category Purpose page (CAT_PURP_EFT_TPL), where you can where you can identify the high-level purpose of the payment instruction based on a set of predefined categories as per ISO 20022 external code list or a proprietary scheme name.

## Prenotification Details Page

Use the Prenotification Details page (TR\_WR\_PRENOTE) to enter parameters for creating a template for prenotification requests.

### Navigation

Click the Prenotification Details link on the Enter Transfer Templates - Origin page.

<b>Prenotification Status</b>	Defaults to New for first-time prenotes. If an initial prenote was rejected using this template, the status be changed to "Rejected." You can change the prenote status from here, however, if you modify the template, the system will recreate the prenote and a new settlement will be processed.
<b>Confirm Prenote After [number of] Days</b>	Select the number of calendar days that must transpire after the prenote is sent to Financial Gateway before the prenote status changes to Confirmed by the system if no ACH Return file is received back from Financial Gateway. The default setting is seven (7) days.
<b>View Prenote</b>	Click to access the EFT Request - Origin page and view the details of the prenote created using this template.

See [Understanding the Funds Transfer Process](#).

## Enter Transfer Templates - Destination Page

Use the Enter Transfer Templates - Destination page (WR\_TEMPLATE\_FR) to specify template destination information.

Set up templates to send wire transfers repeatedly to particular parties.

## Navigation

Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, Enter Transfer Templates, Destination

### Image: Enter Transfer Templates - Destination page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Enter Transfer Templates - Destination page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

For Bank Transfer templates, only the Bank Code and Bank Account fields are available for entry.

Complete all applicable and available fields for EFT Transfer classes.

### Get Settlement Instructions

Click to select settlement instructions and automatically populate fields. All page fields are overwritten with the settlement instruction information, including fields on the Beneficiary Address, EFT Options, Routings, and Detailed Description pages. Also, if a field is blank in the settlement instruction, the corresponding field on this page is also blank.

### Name 1 and Name 2

Enter the recipient's name and other significant identifying information, for example, a company name, a DBA (doing business as), or joint payees.



Click this icon to access the Identification Information page (TR\_WR\_TPL\_OID\_SP), where you can provide other identification for Name1, Bank, and/or Bank Account values, respectively. Available only for a Partner Instructions/ Pay Into settlement type.

### Country

Select the destination country code, which also determines the selection of available Bank ID Qual (bank ID qualifier) values. Then specify a qualifier that determines which edit algorithm the system uses to check the bank ID number sequence.

### Bank ID

Enter the routing number of your recipient's financial institution.

### Branch ID

Enter the recipient's branch number.

**Acct Type (account type)**

Select the destination account type:

- *Bond*
- *Bus Acct* (business account)
- *Check Acct*(checking account)
- *Dem Dep* (demand deposit)
- *Lf Ins-Net* (life insurance)
- *Mutual* (mutual fund)
- *Ret It-DDA* (returned item, demand deposit account)
- *Ret It-Sav* (returned item, savings account)
- *S&B Acct* (stocks and bonds account)
- *Stock*
- *Time Dep* (time deposit)
- *Trust Fund*

**Account # (account number)**

Enter the account number that you are funding with this transaction.

**Check Digit**

This field is conditional and depends on the country that you selected.



Click the View Description icon to add internal notes about the funds transfer. These notes are not transmitted to the recipient.

**IBAN Digit**

Create an IBAN for this template to facilitate automated processing of cross-border transactions.

See "Understanding Bank Setup (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Banks Setup and Processing*)".

Enter the check digit and click View IBAN. If the DFI qualifier for the specified country is IBAN enabled, and the system successfully validates the check digit, the IBAN for this account appears. This field and the View IBAN button appears only if the IBAN Enterable field is not selected on the IBAN Formats page.

See "IBAN Formats Page (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Banks Setup and Processing*)".

**IBAN (international bank account number)**

Enter the IBAN. This field appears only if the IBAN Enterable field is selected on the IBAN Formats page.

See "IBAN Formats Page (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Banks Setup and Processing*)".

### **DFI Qualifier (depository financial institution qualifier)**

Select to identify the bank and enter the associated DFI ID (depository financial institution ID), if required. If you use intermediary routings, this bank represents the final bank into which funds are transferred.

The DFI qualifier indicates what format—how many characters and numerics—are in the bank's DFI ID. Note that each type has a specific number of digits that you can enter. Values are:

*Transit Number*: Exactly 9 numeric characters, plus check digit calculation.

*Swift ID*: Once you select 02 for the DFI Qualifier, you can enter the BIC code in the DFI ID field, which can be 8 or 11 characters, where positions 5 and 6 must be a valid 2-character country code.

*CHIPS Participant ID* (Clearing House Interbank Payments System participant ID): 3 or 4 numeric characters.

*CHIPS Universal ID* (Clearing House Interbank Payments System universal ID): 6 numeric characters.

*Canadian Bank Branch/Institute*: No validation.

*Mutually Defined*: No validation.

### **EFT Options**

Click the EFT Options link to access the EFT Options page (TR\_EFT\_OPT\_SEC). Define specifics for EFT transmissions when using these settlement instructions.

See "Defining Bank Information (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Banks Setup and Processing*)".

### **Routings**

Click the Routings link on the Enter Transfer Templates - Destination page to access the Routings page.

See [Enter Transfer Templates - Bank Routings Page](#).

### **Addenda**

Click the Addenda link on the Enter Transfer Templates - Destination page to access the Enter Transfer Templates - Addenda page.

See [Enter Transfer Templates - Addenda Page](#).

### **Remittance Advice Attributes**

Click the Remittance Advice Attributes link to access the Remittance Advice Attributes page.

See "Using Remittance Advice in Financial Gateway (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Financial Gateway*)".

## Related Links

[EFT Request - Destination Page](#)

"International Bank Account Number (IBAN) Functionality (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Banks Setup and Processing*)"

## Enter Transfer Templates - Bank Routings Page

Use the Routings page (TR\_INTR\_TBL\_SEC) to define template intermediary bank routings.

Set up multiple routing information for a funds transfer.

### Navigation

Click the Routings link on the Enter Transfer Templates - Destination page.

Values specified at the template level can not be overwritten at the request level.

**Seq (sequence)** Enter a sequence number for the routing row. This sequence number determines in which order the system routes the message.

**Routing** Select from *Bank* or *DFI*.

## Enter Transfer Templates - Addenda Page

Use the Enter Transfer Templates - Addenda page (STL\_ADDENDA2\_SP) to enter addenda information.

This information is transmitted to the recipient.

### Navigation

Click the Addenda link on the Enter Transfer Template - Destination page.

Values specified at the template level cannot be overwritten at the request level.

For funds transfers, direct debits, and treasury wires, this page consists of four 35-character lines. For Automated Clearing House transactions, this page is a free form, 80-character field.

## Enter Transfer Templates - Detailed Description Page

Use the Enter Transfer Templates - Detailed Description page (TR\_WR\_DESC\_SEC) to enter any of your in-house notes for the funds transfer.

This information is not transmitted to the recipient.

### Navigation

Click the View Description button on the Enter Transfer Templates - Destination page.

Values specified at the template level can not be overwritten at the request level.

Information recorded in the Descr (description) field is not transmitted with the funds transfer.

## Enter Transfer Templates - Template Field Security Page

Use the Enter Transfer Templates - Template Field Security page (WR\_TMPLT\_FLDLST) to select the active fields in your template, choose whether to enable accounting or to allow settlement instructions.

### Navigation

Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, Enter Transfer Templates, Template Field Security

### Image: Enter Transfer Templates - Template Field Security page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Enter Transfer Templates - Template Field Security page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

Origin | Destination | Beneficiary Address | **Template Field Security**

SetID: SHARE      Transfer Template ID: EFTTR-REPDRW      Transfer Class: EFT Transfer

**Template Security Options**

Disable All Template Fields       Enable Accounting  
 Selectively Enable Fields       Allow Settlement Instructions  
 Enable All Template Fields

**Field Security Options**      Personalize | Find | View All | [?] | [📅]

Select	Label Text	Field Name	Page Name
<input type="checkbox"/>	Accounting Template	ACCTG_TMPL_ID	TR_WR_TEMPLATE_FR
<input type="checkbox"/>	ACH Description	ACH_DESCR	STL_ADDENDA_SP
<input type="checkbox"/>	Line 1	ADDENDA_REF1	STL_ADDENDA2_SP
<input type="checkbox"/>	Line 2	ADDENDA_REF2	STL_ADDENDA2_SP
<input type="checkbox"/>	Line 3	ADDENDA_REF3	STL_ADDENDA2_SP
<input type="checkbox"/>	Line 4	ADDENDA_REF4	STL_ADDENDA2_SP
<input type="checkbox"/>	Address Line 1	ADDRESS1	EO_ADDRESS_SBP
<input type="checkbox"/>	Address Line 2	ADDRESS2	EO_ADDRESS_SBP
<input type="checkbox"/>	Address Line 3	ADDRESS3	EO_ADDRESS_SBP
<input type="checkbox"/>	Address Line 4	ADDRESS4	EO_ADDRESS_SBP

### Template Security Options

- Disable All Template Fields**      If selected, deselects all check boxes in the Field Security Options grid.
- Selectively Enable Fields**      If selected, more than one field security option is selected.
- Enable All Template Fields**      If selected, all field security options are selected.
- Enable Accounting**      Select to activate accounting from a template.

**Allow Settlement Instructions**

Select to leverage the EFT request into settlement instruction data.

## Managing Funds Transfer Template Approval

This section discusses how to approve funds transfer template changes.

### Page Used to Manage Funds Transfer Template Approval

<i>Page Name</i>	<i>Definition Name</i>	<i>Navigation</i>	<i>Usage</i>
Approve Transfer Templates	TR_WR_TMPLT_APPR	Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, Approve Transfer Templates	Approve or deny funds transfer template changes.

### Approve Transfer Templates Page

Use the Approve Transfer Templates page (TR\_WR\_TMPLT\_APPR) to approve or deny funds transfer template changes.

#### Navigation

Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, Approve Transfer Templates

#### Image: Approve Transfer Templates page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Approve Transfer Templates page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

Once transfer templates are created, or if existing templates are modified, you must approve templates prior to using them. This is true for funds transfers as well as prenotes. You can search for a specific template with a particular approval status and select to approve or deny items with your specified values.

To approve or deny transfer templates:

1. Enter your search criteria and click Search.
2. Click the template link in the Template ID column to view template information prior to approval or denial.

3. Select templates for approval or denial and click either Approve or Deny.

**Prenote Status**

Displays the current status of the prenotification.

See [Prenotification Details Page](#).

## Beginning Transfer Funds Requests

This section discusses how to begin a transfer request.

You can create EFT, bank, and deals transfers from various locations in Cash Management. The Transfer Funds page acts as the first page of a multistep "wizard." Select options to create a particular funds transfer type, and the system then routes you to the correct pages to complete the transfer.

### Page Used to Begin a Transfer Funds Request

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Transfer Funds	TR_TRANSFER_PAGE	Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, Transfer Funds	Select a funds transfer type. Begin the setup of an funds transfer request for an EFT, banks, or deals request.

**Related Links**

[Creating EFT Requests](#)

[Creating Bank Account Transfers](#)

## Transfer Funds Page

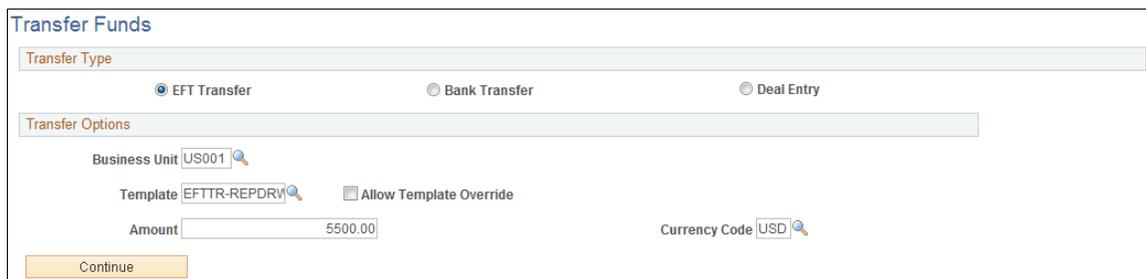
Use the Transfer Funds page (TR\_TRANSFER\_PAGE) to select a funds transfer type and begin the setup of an funds transfer request for an EFT, banks, or deals request.

**Navigation**

Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, Transfer Funds

**Image: Transfer Funds page**

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Transfer Funds page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Available fields on this page change depending on the transfer type that you select.

<b>EFT Transfer</b>	Transfer money to a third party. Select Template to prepopulate the EFT Request Entry pages.
<b>Bank Transfer</b>	Move funds between accounts that you own. Select <i>External</i> or <i>Internal</i> in the Transfer Type field.
<b>Deal Entry</b>	Transfer funds using a deal (for example, an intercompany loan).

### Related Links

[Creating Bank Account Transfers](#)

[Creating and Approving Funds Transfer Templates](#)

[Enter Transfer Templates - Template Field Security Page](#)

## Creating EFT Requests

This section discusses how to:

- Enter transfer origin information.
- Specify destination information.
- (Optional) Configure EFT handling options.
- (Optional) Define intermediary bank routings.
- (Optional) Enter transfer addenda.
- (Optional) Add internal notes.
- Record beneficiary address information.

You can use the pages in this section to create an EFT request, whether your request is for a regular EFT request, or an EFT request involving repetitive transfer or drawdown transfer information.

### Pages Used to Create an EFT Request

<b>Page Name</b>	<b>Definition Name</b>	<b>Navigation</b>	<b>Usage</b>
EFT Request - Origin	TR_WIRE_PNL	Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, EFT Request, Origin	Enter transfer origin information. Capture data on the account from which funds will be furnished for the transfer

<b>Page Name</b>	<b>Definition Name</b>	<b>Navigation</b>	<b>Usage</b>
Category Purpose	CAT_PURP_EFT	Click the Category Purpose link on the EFT Request - Origin page.	Identify the high-level purpose of the payment instruction based on a set of predefined categories as per ISO 20022 external code list or a proprietary scheme name.
EFT Request - Destination	TR_WIRE_TO_PNL	Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, EFT Request, Destination	Specify destination information by entering recipient information for a funds transfer.
Identification Information	TR_WR_OTHID_SP	Click the Identification Information icon on the EFT Request - Destination page.	Provide other identification for Name1, Bank, and/or Bank Account values, respectively.
EFT Options	TR_EFT_OPT_SEC	Click the EFT Options link on the EFT Request - Destination page.	Configure EFT handling options.
Routings	TR_INTR_TBL_SEC	Click the Routings link on the EFT Request - Destination page.	Set up multiple routing information for a funds transfer.
EFT Request - Detailed Description	TR_WR_DESC_SEC	Click the View Description icon on the EFT Request - Destination page.	Enter any of your in-house notes for the funds transfer. This information is not transmitted to the recipient.
EFT Request - Addenda	STL_ADDENDA2_SP	Click the Addenda link on the EFT Request - Destination page.	Enter addenda information. The system transmits this information to the recipient. For funds transfers, direct debits, and treasury wires, this page consists of four 35-character lines. For ACH transactions, this page is a freeform, 80-character field.
EFT Request - Beneficiary Address	TR_WIRE_ADDRESS	Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, EFT Request, Beneficiary Address	Capture the address and telephone information for the recipient of your funds transfers.

## Related Links

[Creating Bank Account Transfers](#)

## EFT Request - Origin Page

Use the EFT Request - Origin page (TR\_WIRE\_PNL) to enter transfer origin information.

Capture data on the account from which funds will be furnished for the transfer

## Navigation

Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, EFT Request, Origin

### Image: EFT Request - Origin page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the EFT Request - Origin page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

The screenshot displays the 'Origin' tab of the EFT Request - Origin page. At the top, there are tabs for 'Origin', 'Destination', and 'Beneficiary Address'. Below the tabs, the 'Unit' is set to 'US001' and the 'EFT Request ID' is 'CSCZEFT4'. The 'EFT Request Information' section includes a '\*Description' field with 'CSCZEFT4', a 'Fed Wire ID' field, and a 'Fees' link. The 'From Bank Account' section contains fields for 'Bank Code' (CZBNK), 'Bank Account' (CHCK), 'Payment Method' (Automated Clearing House), 'Amount' (23,298.75), '\*Business Date' (11/14/2008), 'Bank ID' (0800), 'Account #' (000019-2000145399), 'Layout' (ISOV2), and 'Currency' (CZK). There are also checkboxes for 'Drawdown Transfer' and 'Prenote', and a 'Repetitive Transfer Code' field. The 'Acctg Template' is set to 'CS\_CZK\_2\_EUR' and the 'Document Type' is 'TR-JG'. The 'Transaction Information' table shows 'Entered By' as 'DVP1', 'Date Time' as '12/02/2008 2:27:29PM', and 'EFT Request Status' as 'Unapproved'. At the bottom, there are links for 'Event Log', 'Pool Information', 'Attachments (0)', and 'Category Purpose'.

### Template ID

Select the template, if you are executing the EFT requests from a template.

---

**Note:** Expired templates are not available for selection.

---

### Prenotification

This field is display-only and will appear selected for ACH prenotes.

See [Understanding the Funds Transfer Process](#).

### Fed Wire ID (federal wire ID)

For EFT requests associated with federal fund transfers, the Federal Reserve agency assigns a Federal Wire ID code after receiving the request. Enter the code in this field for your reference. This field is automatically populated if the bank returns acknowledgements containing the Fed Wire ID.

This field is used only as reference in Cash Management; it is not necessary for the accounting process.

---

**Note:** The Federal Wire ID code is the only reference number that the Federal Reserve recognizes when handling issues or questions about the transfer.

---

### Fees

Click to create fees for this EFT request.

See [Creating Fee Entries for EFT Requests](#).

**Payment Method**

Select an available payment method (methods are determined by the values that you defined in the Bank Code and Bank Accountfields).

Values are *Automated Clearing House*, *Direct Debit*, *Electronic Funds Transfer*, or *Wire Transfer*.

You cannot select a payment method for any type of repetitive transfer.

**Business Date**

Enter the business date on which the funds transfer is to occur. The date that you select carries over to the next business day, depending on:

- Holiday lists associated with the currency of the nation funding the transaction.
- Business day conventions established at your organization's Treasury Management implementation.

**Acct Template (accounting template)**

Select an accounting template if accounting is to be run for the transfer. Leave this field blank if the transfer is already accounted for in another PeopleSoft application (for example, Payables).

---

**Note:** The Acct Template field is unavailable when the selected account in the Account # field is not enabled for cash clearing.

---

**Category Purpose**

Click to identify the high level purpose of the payment instruction based on a set of pre-defined categories as per ISO 20022 external code list or a proprietary scheme name.

**Transaction Information****EFT Request Status**

Displays a value of *Unapproved*. This value changes as activity occurs later in the workflow—for example, when a supervisor approves the entered funds.

**Pool Information**

Click to access the Pool Information page. If this bank account is used for holding investment pool funds, enter the business unit and identifier of the pool.

**Related Links**

"Defining External Account Information (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Banks Setup and Processing*)"

**EFT Request - Destination Page**

Use the EFT Request - Destination page (TR\_WIRE\_TO\_PNL) to specify destination information by entering recipient information for a funds transfer.

## Navigation

Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, EFT Request, Destination

### Image: EFT Request - Destination page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the EFT Request - Destination page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

### Get Settlement Instructions

Click to select settlement instructions and automatically populate fields. All fields are overwritten with the settlement instruction information, including fields on the Beneficiary Address, EFT Options, Routings, and Detailed Description pages. Also, if a field is blank in the settlement instruction, the corresponding field on this page is also blank.

### Name 1 and Name 2

Enter the recipient's name and other significant identifying information (for example, a company name, a DBA, or joint payees).



Click this icon to access the Identification Information page (TR\_WR\_TPL\_OID\_SP), where you can provide other identification for Name1, Bank, and/or Bank Account values, respectively. Available only for a Partner Instructions/ Pay Into settlement type.

### Country

Select the destination country code, which also determines the selection of available values in the Bank ID Qual (bank ID qualifier) values. Then specify a qualifier that determines which edit algorithm the system should use to check the bank ID number sequence.

### Bank ID

Enter the routing number of your recipient's financial institution.

### Branch ID

Enter the recipient's branch number.

### Acct Type (account type)

Select the destination account type:

- *Bond*
- *Bus Acct* (business account)

- *Check Acct* (checking account)
- *Dem Dep* (demand deposit)
- *Lf Ins-Net* (life insurance)
- *Mutual* (mutual fund)
- *Ret It-DDA* (returned item, demand deposit account)
- *Ret It-Sav* (returned item, savings account)
- *S&B Acct* (stocks and bonds account)
- *Stock*
- *Time Dep* (time deposit)
- *Trust Fund*

**Account # (account number)**

Enter the account number that you are funding with this transaction.

**Check Digit**

This field is conditional and dependent on the selected country.



Click the View Description button to add internal notes about the funds transfer. These notes are not transmitted to the recipient.

**DFI Qualifier (depository financial institution qualifier)**

Select to identify the bank and enter the associated DFI ID (depository financial institution ID), if required. If you use intermediary routings, this bank represents the final bank into which funds are transferred.

The DFI qualifier indicates what format—how many characters and numerics—are in the bank's DFI ID. Note that each type has a specific number of digits that you can enter. Values are:

*Transit Number*: Exactly 9 numeric characters, plus check digit calculation.

*Swift ID*: 8 or 11 characters; positions 5 and 6 must be a valid 2-character country code.

*CHIPS Participant ID* (Clearing House Interbank Payments System participant ID): 3 or 4 numeric characters.

*CHIPS Universal ID* (Clearing House Interbank Payments System universal ID): 6 numeric characters.

*Canadian Bank Branch/Institute*: No validation.

*Mutually Defined*: No validation.

**IBAN (international bank account number)**

Enter the IBAN. This field appears only if the IBAN Enterable field is selected on the IBAN Formats page.

**IBAN Digit (international bank account number digit)**

Define the account's IBAN for transmittal with other transfer information. Enter the check digit and click View IBAN. If the DFI qualifier for the specified country is IBAN enabled, and the system successfully validates check digit, the IBAN for this account appears. This field and the View IBAN button appears only if the IBAN Enterable field is not selected on the IBAN Formats page.

**BIC (bank identifier code)**

Enter the BIC code for the selected bank. This code is based on the ISO standard (9362), which is the universal method used to identify the financial institutions that enable automated processing of payments. A BIC code is used to route cross-border and some domestic payments to a bank branch or payments center.

SEPA requires the use of BIC and IBAN codes to uniquely identify the creditor's and debtor's banks and bank accounts in all euro cross-border payments. It is imperative that the IBAN and BIC codes are correct to avoid repair fees that the bank charges due to processing errors, and to avoid delays in processing payments and collections due to the time-consuming correction of these errors.

Once you enter a BIC code, the system validates the length and layout of the characters, and validates the BIC country code against the country code set up for the bank branch .

**Validating DFI Field Requirements for EFT Requests**

The DFI Qualifier and DFI ID fields on the EFT Request - Destination page are by default not required fields, however, you can configure the system to return an error or warning in case these fields are not populated. PeopleSoft Cash Management provides two message numbers (9450, 3007 and 9450, 3008) for this purpose, where you can change the message severity to error or warning to get the following behavior:

- *Error* - An error message is displayed, processing terminates, and data cannot be saved until the DFI Qualifier and DFI ID values have been entered.
- *Warning* - A warning message is displayed. You can decide to either stop processing or continue processing without the DFI Qualifier and DFI ID values.

**Related Links**

"Understanding Bank Setup (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Banks Setup and Processing*)"

"IBAN Formats Page (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Banks Setup and Processing*)"

"International Bank Account Number (IBAN) Functionality (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Banks Setup and Processing*)"

"External Accounts Page (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Banks Setup and Processing*)"

## Creating Fee Entries for EFT Requests

This section discusses how to:

- Define fee codes for EFT requests.
- Create fee entries using EFT request fee codes.

### Pages Used to Create Fee Entries for EFT Requests

<i>Page Name</i>	<i>Definition Name</i>	<i>Navigation</i>	<i>Usage</i>
Fee Codes	FA_FEE_CD_PNL	Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Treasury, Fee Codes, Fee Codes	Define fee codes for EFT requests.
Enter Fees	FEE_GENERATOR_PNL	Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, Enter Fees, Enter Fees	Create fee entries for EFT requests using previously defined fee codes.

## Creating Bank Account Transfers

This section provides an overview of bank account transfers and discusses how to:

1. Process bank account transfers.
2. (Optional) View associated bank transfer ChartFields.
3. (Optional) View accounting events.
4. Process bank transfers using electronic settlements.

### Pages Used to Create Bank Account Transfers

<i>Page Name</i>	<i>Definition Name</i>	<i>Navigation</i>	<i>Usage</i>
Bank Account Transfer	BAX_TRANSFER_PNL	Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, Bank Account Transfer	Initiate bank transfers for internal or external bank transfers.
Category Purpose		Click the Category Purpose link on the Bank Account Transfer page.	Identify the high-level purpose of the payment instruction based on a set of predefined categories as per ISO 20022 external code list or a proprietary scheme name.
Bank Transfer ChartFields	BAX_CF_ENTRY	Click ChartFields on the Bank Account Transfer page.	View associated bank transfer ChartFields.

<b>Page Name</b>	<b>Definition Name</b>	<b>Navigation</b>	<b>Usage</b>
Accounting Events	TRA_EVENT_CAL	Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Accounting Events	View summary accounting event information generated from deals, facility fees, and bank transfers.

## Understanding Bank Account Transfers

Transferring funds between bank accounts is a common requirement for cash managers. Typical tasks that require fund transfers are:

- Adjusting daily cash balances.
- Making a trade payment or receipt on behalf of a business unit.
- Funding the internal accounts of other business units.

---

**Note:** Only corporate treasury-designated banks can initiate fund transfers. However, this rule does not apply when the transfer is between two bank accounts that belong to the same business unit.

---

The system schedules accounting events and updates bank balances. Bank transfer transactions are also available to the settlements module for all settlement-related processes and eventual payment. You can create templates for transfers that occur frequently; you can then recall the template and enter the amount and the date.

These transfer types are supported by the system:

- Internal bank transfers: from one internal account to another internal account.
- External bank transfers: from one external account to another external account.

### Related Links

"Defining Internal Account Information (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Banks Setup and Processing*)"

## Prerequisites

You must set up internal bank accounts for internal transfers. For external transfers, external accounts must be created.

To set up internal bank accounts:

1. Define a bank with the Type set to *Internal* on the Bank Information page.
2. Create an internal bank account between two internal bank types.
3. Begin the setup of a bank transfer on the Transfer Funds page (TR\_TRANSFER\_PAGE).

### Related Links

"Defining Internal Account Information (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Banks Setup and Processing*)"

## Bank Account Transfer Page

Use the Bank Account Transfer page (BAX\_TRANSFER\_PNL) to initiate bank transfers for internal or external bank transfers.

### Navigation

Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, Bank Account Transfer

### Image: Bank Account Transfer page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Bank Account Transfer page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

The screenshot displays the 'Bank Account Transfer' page with the following sections and fields:

- Bank Transfer Information:**
  - Business Unit: US001
  - Transfer ID: CSCHBAX1
  - Transfer Type: External Transfer
  - \*Description: CSCHBAX1
  - \*Trans Date: 11/12/2008
  - Chartfields
- Template Information:**
  - Transfer Template ID: [Searchable]
  - Template Expiration: [Field]
  - Repetitive Transfer Code: [Field]
- Transfer From Account:**
  - \*Bank Code: BLBANK 320
  - Bank Account: CHCK 0347134
  - Payment Method: EFT
  - Layout: PAYMENTEIP
  - \*Amount: 7,931.26
  - Currency: EUR euro
- Transfer To Account:**
  - Bank Code: CHBK2 00700
  - Bank Account: CHCK 115201849173
  - Instructions: CHBRC
- Footer:**
  - Event Log
  - Document Sequencing
  - Attachments
  - Category Purpose

To create internal bank account transfers:

1. Select the Add a New Value tab on the Bank Account Transfer search page.
2. Enter values in the Business Unit and Transfer ID fields, and specify a value of *Internal Transfer* in the Transfer Type field.
3. Click Add.
4. Enter a description.
5. Create internal bank account transfers from a template or on an ad hoc basis:
  - Click Use Template to select a defined template on which to base a transfer. This displays a list of templates from which you can select according to the business unit transfer ID and description. The system populates all of the fields except Trans Date (transaction date) and Amount. To create the transfer, complete those fields.

---

**Note:** Expired templates are not available for selection.

---

- Create an ad hoc internal bank account transfer by completing fields only in the Transfer From Account and Transfer To Account regions.

If you anticipate that the ad hoc transfer will recur frequently, select the Can be used as Template check box to save it as a template.

- Click the Instructions button to review the settlement instructions. The settlement instructions define how the payment or transfer is made—the system uses the deposit instructions from the bank account that is receiving funds (the Transfer To Account bank).

6. Save the transfer.

If you are creating external bank account transfers, you can specify a transfer template that may also include drawdown wire or repetitive wire information.

To create external bank account transfers:

1. Select the Add a New Value tab on the Bank Account Transfer search page.
2. Enter values in the Business Unit and Transfer ID fields, and specify a value of *External Transfer* in the Transfer Type field.
3. Click Add.
4. Enter a description.
5. Create external bank account transfers from a template or on an ad hoc basis:
  - Select a transfer template ID to automatically populate the external bank account transfer with information. If you create an external bank account transfer from a template, you can also click the Chartfields link to edit the bank transfer ChartFields.
  - Leave the Transfer Template ID field blank to create an ad hoc bank account transfer. Complete the remaining fields on the page. If you create an ad hoc external bank account transfer, you cannot modify the bank transfer ChartFields.
  - Click the Instructions button to review the settlement instructions. The settlement instructions define how the payment or transfer is made—the system uses the deposit instructions from the bank account that is receiving funds (the Transfer To Account bank).
6. Save the transfer.

## Transfer From Account

Describe the bank account that is serving as the fund source.

- For an external bank, select the bank and the bank account.
- For an internal bank, select the bank, and then specify the account customer and associated bank account. (The customer represents the business unit that is serving as the fund source.) Enter the monetary amount to transfer.

## Transfer to Account

Indicate the bank account or internal account that is receiving the funds. Select a bank that is an appropriate match for the transfer from account only.

- If the transfer from account bank is an external bank, then the transfer to account bank must also be external. For an external bank, select the bank and bank account.

- For an internal bank, select the bank and then specify the customer and the associated bank account. (The customer represents the business unit that is receiving funds.)

For example, suppose that you want to move business unit UBUO3's balance from its account with TBU02 to TBU01's account with TBU02. This table lists the set up:

<b>Group box</b>	<b>Bank</b>	<b>Customer</b>
Transfer From Account	TBU02	OBU03
Transfer To Account	TBU02	TBU01

---

**Note:** External transfers must first be selected and approved before being processed through the Financial Gateway or Pay Cycle Manager.

---

For internal transfers, some restrictions are enforced:

- The customer specified as the Transfer From Account cannot be the same as the bank specified as the Transfer To Account for the same transaction.
- Similarly, the bank specified as the Transfer From Account cannot be the same as the customer specified as the Transfer To Account for the same transaction.

After you save the transfer, the system updates cash flows and generates an accounting event to create journal entries for this transaction.

---

**Note:** When internal accounts are established between two business units, you can specify a default internal account. If more than one account exists between two business units with the same currency, the default account is the one that is processed in bank transfer.

---

## Related Links

[Reviewing Accounting Information](#)

"Understanding Electronic Banking (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Financial Gateway*)"

## Accounting Events Page

Use the Accounting Events page (TRA\_EVENT\_CAL) to view summary accounting event information generated from deals, facility fees, and bank transfers.

## Navigation

Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Accounting Events

### Image: Accounting Events page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Accounting Events page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

The screenshot shows the 'Accounting Events' page with the following search criteria:

- Unit: US001
- Source Code: Bank Transfers
- Event ID: (empty)
- From Date: 11/12/2008
- To Date: 11/12/2008
- Status: (empty)

The 'Accounting Events' table displays the following data:

Source	Event ID	Event Date	Line	Leg	Seq #	Status	Event Type	Accounting Template	Document Type
Bank Transfers	CSCHBAX1	11/12/2008	1	1	1	Not Processed	Initial Payment		
Bank Transfers	CSCHBAX4	11/12/2008	1	1	1	Not Processed	Initial Payment		
Bank Transfers	CSCZBAX1	11/12/2008	1	1	1	Not Processed	Initial Payment		
Bank Transfers	CSGBBAX1	11/12/2008	1	1	1	Not Processed	Initial Payment		

Enter *Bank Transfers* in the Source Code field to view the scheduled accounting event.

See [Reviewing Accounting Information](#).

## Reviewing Repetitive Transfers

This section discusses how to review repetitive transfers.

### Page Used to Review Repetitive Transfers

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Review Repetitive Templates	TR_REPTVE_TRNF_PG	Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, Review Repetitive Templates, Review Repetitive Templates	Search for and maintain your organization's repetitive transfer templates.

### Review Repetitive Templates Page

Use the Review Repetitive Templates page (TR\_REPTVE\_TRNF\_PG) to search for and maintain your organization's repetitive transfer templates.

## Navigation

Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, Review Repetitive Templates, Review Repetitive Templates

### Image: Review Repetitive Templates page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Review Repetitive Templates page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

### Review Repetitive Templates

**Search Criteria**

\*SetID

Transfer Class

Bank Code

Bank Account

Status

Repetitive Transfer Templates							Personalize   Find   View All   <input type="button" value="🔍"/>   <input type="button" value="📄"/>
Template ID	Repetitive Transfer Code	Transfer Class	Drawdown	Originating Bank	Account	Status	Expiration Date
<a href="#">BNKTR-REPDRW</a>	BNKTR-REPDRW	Bank Transfer	Yes	USBNK	CHCK	Active	12/31/2015
<a href="#">BNKTR-REPREG</a>	BNKTR-REPREG	Bank Transfer	No	USBNK	CHK	Active	12/31/2015
<a href="#">EFTTR-REPDRW</a>	EFTTR-REPDRW	EFT Transfer	Yes	USBNK	CHK	Active	12/31/2015
<a href="#">EFTTR-REPREG</a>	EFTTR-REPREG	EFT Transfer	No	USBNK	CHCK	Active	12/31/2015

To maintain your repetitive transfers:

1. Enter your search criteria, and click the Search button.
2. From the returned results, click a Template ID to access the specific transfer template's information.
3. If you edit any information on the transfer template:
  - Click OK to save your changes and return to the Review Repetitive Templates page.
  - Click Cancel to discard your changes without saving, and return to the Review Repetitive Templates page.
  - Click Apply to save your changes without returning to the Review Repetitive Templates page.

## Chapter 10

# Working with Settlements

---

## Understanding the Settlements Payment Process

This section discusses the process for handling settlements within Treasury.

Settlements are cash flow transactions that the system transforms into payment instructions for different financial institutions. In Cash Management you can generate settlements from bank account transfers, electronic funds transfer (EFT) requests, and fee entries. You can also generate a settlement by entering a deal in Deal Management. The settlement process involves three steps: selection, approval (an optional step), and dispatch. You first select settlements that are to be processed as payments by using the Select Settlements page. Depending on system settings, certain selected settlements must be approved prior to being processed. You can establish one of three following settlement approval methods:

- No approval required.
- Manual settlement approval, performed by an authorized user (or users) by using the Settlement Approval page.
- Automatic settlement approval, performed by PeopleSoft Workflow.

If the financial sanctions service is enabled and the bank that is being used to pay requires validation, the system automatically performs a search for the matches between the names and addresses entered on the settlement with those on the financial sanctions list. This functionality is enabled on the Financial Sanctions Options page by selecting the Enable in Treasury Settlements check box.

See "Financial Sanctions Options Page (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Application Fundamentals*)".

Next, the Financial Sanction Validation check box must be selected on the Bank Information page. Settlements transacted through these banks will initiate the financial sanctions comparison upon there selection.

See "Bank Information Page (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Banks Setup and Processing*)".

Once the settlements are approved, they are either sent to Financial Gateway where they are dispatched to a financial institution using the Dispatch Payments page or obtained by the Pay Cycle Manager for processing. The system processes payments according to the pay method that is defined on the External Accounts - Payment Methods page. Depending on the payment method type, you can specify that the payment be settled through one of two methods: PeopleSoft Financial Gateway or the Payables Pay Cycle Manager. Within Financial Gateway, the dispatch process transforms these settlements into payment files, and submits them to the appropriate institution.

- For payments that are set to be processed through Financial Gateway, you use the pages and functionality that is discussed in the Financial Gateway PeopleBook.

See "Understanding the Payment Process in Financial Gateway (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Financial Gateway*)".

- For payments that are set to be processed through Payables Pay Cycle Manager, you should refer to the Payables documentation about Processing Pay Cycles to process these types of payments.

---

**Note:** If deal approval is required, then related deal transactions do not appear for selection on the Select Settlements page until the deal is approved.

---

See "Understanding Pay Cycle Processing (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Payables*)".

### Related Links

"Understanding the Payment Process in Financial Gateway (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Financial Gateway*)"

"Understanding the Financial Sanctions Service (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Banks Setup and Processing*)"

## Settlement Workflow

Settlement selection and settlement approval functionality are integrated with PeopleSoft Workflow. When you select or approve settlements, the system routes workflow notifications to defined user's worklists, alerting them that the settlements are being processed.

If you implement multiple levels of approval, the system automatically routes the approval through the levels until the appropriate user authorizes it.

For example, you establish the following two levels of approval:

- Administrator, with a 50,000 USD limit.
- Manager, with a 100,000 USD limit.

If the administrator approves a settlement of 75,000 USD, the system does not set the settlement status to approved as the amount is over the defined approval limit. Instead, the system routes the settlement to the manager's worklist for approval. The manager can then select settlement approval work items on the worklist to access the Settlement Approval page, and approve the settlement.

### Related Links

[Delivered Workflows for Cash Management](#)

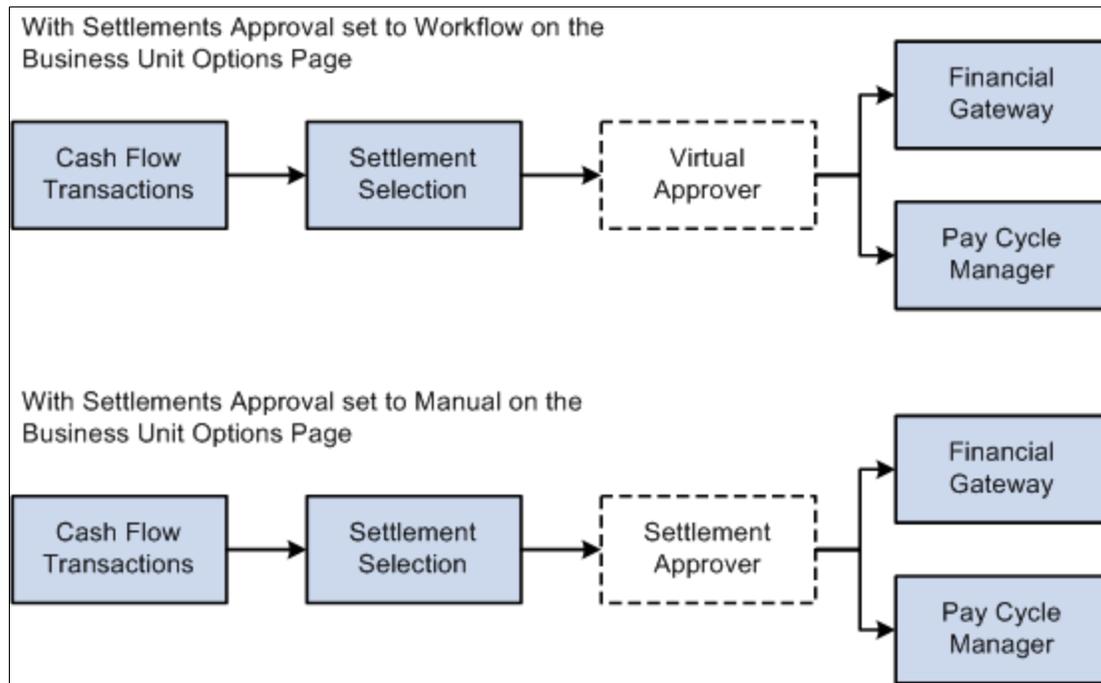
## Settlement Approval

You use one of two approval methods: manual settlement approval, or automatic settlement approval using a PeopleTools Workflow process called Virtual Approver. Once authorized, whether manually or automatically by the Virtual Approver, you process the settlements for payment.

See *PeopleTools: Workflow Technology, "Defining Approval Processes," Understanding Virtual Approver*

This diagram illustrates the settlement process:

**Image: Understanding the settlement process**



**Note:** If you're enabling Virtual Approver, you must select *Workflow* as the approval method on the Treasury Options page. Also, you can only authorize settlements up to the maximum approval limit with Virtual Approver.

## Common Elements Used to Work with Settlements

<b>Account</b>	Displays the account from which payment originates.
<b>Bank</b>	Displays the bank from which payment originates.
<b>Cpty (counterparty)</b>	Displays the counterparty receiving the payment.
<b>Cutoff Time</b>	Enter the time by which the payment must be received.
<b>Cutoff Date</b>	Enter the date by which the payment must be received.
<b>Filter by Source</b>	Select <i>Bank Fees</i> , <i>Bank Transfers</i> , <i>Deal Fees</i> , <i>Deals</i> , <i>Facility Fees</i> , <i>Hedges</i> , <i>Interest Calculated</i> , <i>Letter of Credit Fees</i> , <i>Treasury Wires</i> , or <i>Wire Fees</i> to limit the search results.
<b>Preferences</b>	Click to establish the default search criteria for settlement selection or settlement approval.
<b>Stlmt Inst (settlement instructions)</b>	Enter payment instructions for the settlement, including recipient address and bank information.

<b>Sort By</b>	You can also sort the results by <i>Account</i> , <i>Amount</i> , <i>Bank</i> , <i>Method</i> , or <i>Source ID</i> , using this field.
<b>Src BU (source business unit)</b>	Displays the Treasury Management source business unit.
<b>Source Code</b>	Displays the original Treasury Management source for the transaction. Source codes are represented by a single letter in the transaction results.  Bank Fees: <i>B</i> .  Bank Xfers (bank transfers): <i>X</i> .  Deals: <i>F</i> .  Deal Estimated Maturity Accrual: <i>M</i> .  Deal Fees: <i>E</i> .  EFT Fees: <i>R.g</i>  EFT's: <i>W</i> .  Fac Fees (facility fees): <i>F</i> .  Hedges: <i>H</i> .  Interest Calculated: <i>I</i> .  LC Fees (letter of credit fees): <i>T</i> .
<b>Source ID</b>	Displays the source identifier code for the specific transaction.
<b>Status</b>	Indicates the payment status: <i>Selected</i> for payment, <i>Unselected</i> for payment, or <i>Pending</i> approval. When you select a payment on this page, its status changes to <i>Pending</i> .
<b>Total Payment Amount</b>	Displays the sum of all payment results, and currency code.
<b>Value Date</b>	Enter the effective date of the settlement.
 <b>View Payment Life Cycle</b>	Click to access payment details and events in the settlement's life cycle.  See <a href="#">Treasury Payment Life-Cycle Page</a> .

---

## Selecting Settlements for Outbound Submission

This section discusses how to:

- Select settlements for outbound submission.
- Use payment life-cycle functionality.

## Pages Used to Select Settlements

<i>Page Name</i>	<i>Definition Name</i>	<i>Navigation</i>	<i>Usage</i>
Select Settlements	STL_SELECTION	Cash Management, Settlements, Select Settlements	Review and select payments that are scheduled for outbound submission.
Settlements User Preferences	STL_SELECTION_PREF	Click Preferences on the Review Settlements page.	Set up the default criteria for searching settlements.
Sanction Review	STL_VIOLATIONS	Select payments on the Select Settlements page that fail the financial sanctions validation.	Lists selected settlements where the names or addresses match those found on the list of Specially Designation Nationals (SDN) published by the US Department of the Treasury's Office of Foreign Asset Control (OFAC), the European Union, or an enterprise-defined list.
Treasury Payment Life-Cycle	PMT_LIFE_CYCLE_PG	Click View Payments Life Cycle icon on the Select Settlements page.	View detailed and summary information for a payment, from the initial creation through payment and reconciliation.
Review Settlements	STL_INQUIRY	Cash Management, Settlements, Review Settlements	View the payments that are scheduled for authorization and release.

### Selecting Settlements Page

Use the Select Settlements page (STL\_SELECTION) to review and select payments that are scheduled for outbound submission.

## Navigation

Cash Management, Settlements, Select Settlements

### Image: Select Settlements page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Select Settlements page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

The screenshot shows the 'Select Settlements' interface. At the top, there are search criteria fields for Source Unit, Bank Code, Bank Account, Currency, From Date, To Date, and Status. Below these is a 'Total Payable Amount' of USD -1,141,800.00. A table of payments is displayed with columns for Select, Source Unit, Source ID, Business Date, Amount, Curr, Stmt Inst, Cpty, Status, Bank, Account, Cutoff Time, and Cutoff Date. The table contains 13 rows of payment data. At the bottom, there are buttons for 'Select All', 'Clear All', 'Select Payments', 'Deny Payments', and 'Edit Bank Account'.

Select	Source Unit	Source ID	Business Date	Amount	Curr	Stmt Inst	Cpty	Status	Bank	Account	Cutoff Time	Cutoff Date
<input type="checkbox"/>	US001	DEMO_BAX_003	01/05/2005	-30,000.00	USD	TUS01		Unselected	DEMO1	CHK1		01/05/2005
<input type="checkbox"/>	US001	DEMO_BAX_006	01/05/2005	-60,000.00	USD	TUS01		Unselected	DEMO1	CHK1		01/05/2005
<input type="checkbox"/>	US001	DEMO_BAX_009	01/05/2005	-90,000.00	USD	TUS01		Unselected	DEMO1	CHK1		01/05/2005
<input type="checkbox"/>	US001	DEMO_BAX_012	01/05/2005	-120,000.00	USD	TUS01		Unselected	DEMO1	CHK1		01/05/2005
<input type="checkbox"/>	US001	DEMO_EFT_003	01/05/2005	-30,000.00	USD			Unselected	DEMO1	CHK1		01/05/2005
<input type="checkbox"/>	US001	DEMO_EFT_006	01/05/2005	-60,000.00	USD			Unselected	DEMO1	CHK1		01/05/2005
<input type="checkbox"/>	US001	DEMO_EFT_009	01/05/2005	-90,000.00	USD			Unselected	DEMO1	CHK1		01/05/2005
<input type="checkbox"/>	US001	DEMO_EFT_012	01/05/2005	-120,000.00	USD			Unselected	DEMO1	CHK1		01/05/2005
<input type="checkbox"/>	US001	DEMO_EFT_015	01/05/2005	-150,000.00	USD			Unselected	DEMO1	CHK1		01/05/2005
<input type="checkbox"/>	US001	DEMO_EFT_018	01/05/2005	-1,800.00	USD	TUS02		Unselected	DEMO1	CHK1		01/05/2005
<input type="checkbox"/>	US001	DEMO_EFT_018	01/05/2005	-180,000.00	USD			Unselected	DEMO1	CHK1		01/05/2005
<input type="checkbox"/>	US001	DEMO_EFT_021	01/05/2005	-210,000.00	USD			Unselected	DEMO1	CHK1		01/05/2005

## Settlement Search Criteria

Enter the search criteria for payments and click Search to display a list of payments.

### Status

Select a status value of *Denied*, *Selected*, or *Unselected*. The selected value determines what settlement action buttons are available to you.

## Payments - (All)

### Source ID

Click to view a settlement's details.

### Stmt Inst (settlement instructions)

Click to view the specified settlement instructions.

### Cutoff Time and Cutoff Date

Payments arriving by this time and date are processed by the bank that day. Payments arriving afterwards are processed on the next business day.

### Method

Displays the payment method for the settlement, as defined in the settlement instructions.

### Select Payments

Select a payment and click to process. After you select a payment, the system changes the Status field to *Pending* (pending approval).

If the payment is designated for financial sanctions validation, the system will compare the names and addresses of the financial sanctions list with those entered on the To Account for EFT Requests and the settlement instructions for all other settlements. If potential matches are found, the Sanction Review page appears displaying the payments that require a closer review.

If you enable settlement authorization workflow, the system submits payments to the appropriate worklists for approval. If you enable auto approval, the system marks the payments as approved and ready for dispatch.

If you enable manual settlement approval, you must manually approve the payments on the Settlement Approval page.

If you do not enable automatic settlement approval, the system automatically marks the payments as approved and ready for dispatch.

---

**Note:** Settlements associated with a deal that requires deal approval, will not be available for approval until the deal itself is first approved.

---

### Deny Payments

Click to deny settlements for payment. After you deny a payment, the system changes the Status field to *Denied*.

---

**Note:** You cannot deny a payment once the automated accounting process is run for the settlement.

---

See [Processing Accounting Entries](#).

### Edit Bank Account

Select a payment and click to change the settlement bank account. If more than one payment is selected, the payments must be in the same currency.

### UnSelect Payments

Click to reverse the status of settlements that are pending approval. After you clear a payment, the system changes the Status field to *Unselected*.

### Related Links

[Delivered Workflows for Cash Management](#)

## Sanction Review Page

Use the Sanction Review page (STL\_VIOLATIONS) to lists selected settlements where the names or addresses match those found on the list of Specially Designation Nationals (SDN) published by the US Department of the Treasury's Office of Foreign Asset Control (OFAC), the European Union, or an enterprise-defined list.

## Navigation

Select payments on the Select Settlements page that fail the financial sanctions validation.

This page displays settlements that have payees who potential match those listed on the financial sanctions list.

<b>Sanction Detail</b>	Click to view details of the payee on the Financial Sanctions Entry page.
<b>Clear Settlement</b>	After selecting and reviewing the settlement, click to allow further processing of the settlement.
<b>Deny Settlement</b>	After selecting and reviewing the settlement, click to deny further processing of the settlement.
<b>Return</b>	Click to return to the Select Settlements page.

## Treasury Payment Life-Cycle Page

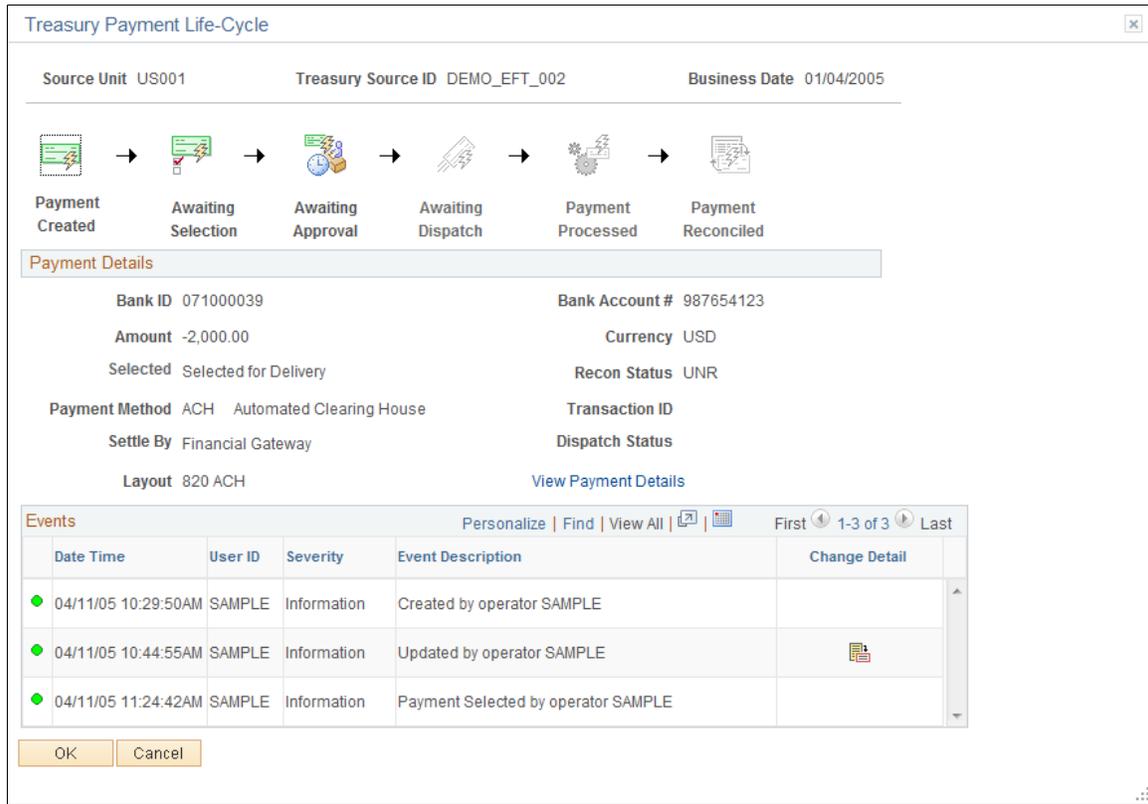
Use the Treasury Payment Life-Cycle page (PMT\_LIFE\_CYCLE\_PG) to view detailed and summary information for a payment, from the initial creation through payment and reconciliation.

## Navigation

Click View Payments Life Cycle on the Select Settlements page.

### Image: Treasury Payment Life-Cycle page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Treasury Payment Life-Cycle page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



The buttons at the top of the page—Payment Created, Awaiting Selection, Awaiting Approval, Awaiting Dispatch, Payment Processed, and Payment Reconciled—become linked and change from black and white to color when that specific action occurs for the payment. Click a button to access the associated page and view the indicated life-cycle information.

### Payment Details

View summary information about the settlement. The Status and Recon Status field values change as you process the settlement.

### Payment Events

View date, time, and descriptive information about each event that you perform on the settlement.

### Related Links

[Delivered Workflows for Cash Management](#)

# Manually Approving Settlements

This section discusses how to manually approve settlement payments. You need to manually approve or deny settlements if you do not configure automatic Settlement Approval Workflow.

## Pages Used to Manually Approve Settlements

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Approve Settlements	STL_SELECTION	Cash Management, Settlements, Approve Settlements	Authorize the release of scheduled treasury settlement transactions.
Settlement Approval - Preferences	STL_SELECTION_PREF	Click the Preferences link on the Approve Settlements page.	Set up the default criteria for searching for settlements for approval.

## Approve Settlements Page

Use the Approve Settlements page (STL\_APPROVAL) to authorize the release of scheduled treasury settlement transactions.

### Navigation

Cash Management, Settlements, Approve Settlements

### Image: Approve Settlements page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Approve Settlements page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

The screenshot shows the 'Approve Settlements' interface. At the top, there are search criteria fields for Source Unit, Bank Code, Bank Account, Currency, From Date (01/01/2005), To Date (01/05/2005), and \*Status (Selected). A 'Search' button is present. Below this, the 'Total Payable Amount' is shown as USD -103,400.00. A 'Filter by Source' dropdown is set to '(All)'. The main section is a table titled 'Payments - (All)' with columns: Select, Source Unit, Source ID, Business Date, Amount, Curr, Stmt Inst, Cpty, Status, Bank, Account, Cutoff Time, and Cutoff Date. The table contains 14 rows of payment data, all with a status of 'Selected'. At the bottom, there are 'Select All' and 'Clear All' checkboxes, and three buttons: 'Approve Payments', 'Deny Payments', and 'Pushback'.

## Settlement Search Criteria

Enter the search criteria and click Search to display a list of payments.

**Status** Select a status value of *Approved*, *Denied*, or *Selected*. The selected value determines what settlement action buttons are available to you.

## Payments - (All)

**Approve Payments** Select payments and click to approve settlements for payment processing. The Status of the payments changes to *Approved* and is sent to Financial Gateway.

---

**Note:** The status will not change immediately to *Approved* if the system is configured to use workflow for settlements requiring additional approval based on the dollar amount.

---

**Note:** Settlements associated with a deal that requires deal approval, will not be available for approval until the deal itself is first approved.

---

See [Delivered Workflows for Cash Management](#).

**Deny Payments** Select payments and click to deny settlements for payment processing. The Status of the payments changes to *Denied*.

---

**Note:** You cannot deny a payment once the automated accounting process is run for the settlement.

---

See [Processing Accounting Entries](#).

---

**Note:** You define settlement approval options on the Treasury Options page. If you enable settlement approval workflow, do not use this page to approve settlements. Instead, the system changes the settlement status to *Approved* when Virtual Approver finds that the item passes the approval rules that are defined under workflow.

You establish the workflow approval rule definition at implementation. PeopleSoft delivers a rule in the database for the Approval Rule Set called Execute Treasury Settlements.

---

See the product documentation for *PeopleTools: Workflow Technology*.

## Related Links

[Settlement Workflow](#)

[Delivered Workflows for Cash Management](#)

## Using the Settlement Manager

Use the Settlement Manager to review all of the settlements from a central location. You can see the gross daily exposure, make projections, and view exposures according to counterparty. In addition, you can select a settlement category to review and approve settlements from the same page.

This section discusses how to:

- Use the Settlement Manager.
- Set Settlement Manager preferences.

### Pages Used with the Settlement Manager

<i>Page Name</i>	<i>Definition Name</i>	<i>Navigation</i>	<i>Usage</i>
Settlement Manager	STL_MGR	Cash Management, Settlements, Settlement Manager	Review and manage all settlement activity from a central location.
Settlement Manager Preferences	STL_MGR_PREF	Click the Preferences link on the Settlement Manager page.	Set up default search criteria for the Settlement Manager.
Cash Flow Settlements	RUN_TRC1014	Click the Cash Flow Settlements link on the Settlement Manager page.	Run the Cash Flow Settlements process (RUN_TRC1014) to generate the a report that lists bank, account, and settlement information for cash flows of a specified business unit and time period.
Review Settlements	STL_INQUIRY	Cash Management, Settlements, Review Settlements	View the payments that are scheduled for authorization and release.
Settlements User Preferences	STL_SELECTION_PREF	Click the Preferences link on the Review Settlements page.	Set up the default criteria for handling settlements.

### Settlement Manager Page

Use the Settlement Manager page (STL\_MGR) to review and manage all settlement activity from a central location.

## Navigation

Cash Management, Settlements, Settlement Manager

### Image: Settlement Manager page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Settlement Manager page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

**Settlement Manager**
\* Show Data for Last 30 days [Preferences](#)

**Net Deal Settlements**
Personalize | Find | View All | First 1 of 1 Last

Bus Unit	Settle Date	Counterparty	Bank	Account	Treasury Source ID	Amount	Currency

**Settlement Selection**
Personalize | Find | View All | First 1 of 1 Last

Treasury Source ID	Bank	Account	Amount	Currency	Date	Status

**Settlement Approval**
Personalize | Find | View All | First 1 of 1 Last

Treasury Source ID	Bank	Account	Amount	Currency	Date	Status

**Dispatch Payments**
Personalize | Find | View All | First 1-2 of 2 Last

Source Reference ID	Bank Code	Bank Account	Amount	Currency Code	Payment Date	Dispatch Status
TRW000000017	USBNK	CHCK	200.00	USD	11/28/2012	Awaiting
TRW000000016	USBNK	CHCK	100.00	USD	11/28/2012	Awaiting

[Review Settlements](#)
[Cash Flow Settlements](#)

This manager displays settlement categories with summarized information. To view the content of a settlement category, click the link that is located on the right in each category.

### Show Data for

Select to view data of:

- *Today*
- *Last 7 Days*
- *Last 30 Days*
- *Next 7 Days*
- *Next 30 Days*

### Preferences

Click to establish the default search criteria for Settlement Manager.

### Net Deal Settlements

Click to access the Net Deal Settlements page, and view deal transactions that are coming up for netting.

<b>Select Settlements</b>	Click to access the Select Settlements page, and view which settlements are available for selection.
<b>Approve Settlements</b>	Click to access the Approve Settlements page, and view which settlements are coming up for approval.
<b>Review Settlements</b>	Click to access the Review Settlements page and review settlement information.
<b>Cash Flow Settlements</b>	Click to access the Cash Flow Settlements page and generate the Cash Flow Settlement report (RUN_TRC1014).

## Settlement Manager Preferences Page

Use the Settlement Manager - Preferences page (STL\_MGR\_PREF) to set up default search criteria for the Settlement Manager.

### Navigation

Click Preferences on the Settlement Manager page.

**Default Time Period**                      Select *Today*, *Last 7 Days*, or *Last 30 Days*.

---

## Specifying Deal Settlement Netting

This section discusses how to:

- Specify deal settlement netting.
- Select payable and receivable cash flows.

The Deal Settlement Netting page enables you to select which cash flows to net that results from deal transactions. You can view and offset cash flows by counterparty, categorized by bank account and currency per settlement date. This creates a netted cash flow record for each counterparty and currency combination by bank account.

## Page Used to Specify Deal Settlement Netting

<b>Page Name</b>	<b>Definition Name</b>	<b>Navigation</b>	<b>Usage</b>
Deal Settlement Netting	STL_NETTING	Cash Management, Settlements, Net Deal Settlements	Select which cash flows to net that resulted from deal transactions.
Settlement Details	STL_NETTING_DTL	Click Show Details on the Net Deal Settlements page.	Select to include or exclude payable and receivable cash flow actions for a deal settlement net.

<b>Page Name</b>	<b>Definition Name</b>	<b>Navigation</b>	<b>Usage</b>
Review Deal Netting	STL_NETTING_INQ	Cash Management, Settlements, Review Deal Netting	View the results of net-deal settlements (Deal Settlement Netting page).

## Deal Settlement Netting Page

Use the Deal Settlement Netting page (STL\_NETTING) to select which cash flows to net that resulted from deal transactions.

### Navigation

Cash Management, Settlements, Net Deal Settlements

---

**Note:** Transactions are netted depending on the settlement netting options that are set on the Counterparty Information page. For netted cash flows, you can view the transaction detail and clear any transactions that you want to exclude.

---

### Search Criteria

**Netting Status** Displays *Do Not Net* or *Net Bulk*.

### Cash Flow

**Detail** Click to see the individual transactions that compose the net amount. To modify which transactions are included in the net, select or clear them here.

**Cpty Ref (counterparty reference)** Enter the reference ID that the counterparty provides referring to this netting transaction.

**CP Nettor (counterparty nettor)** Enter the name of the person in the counterparty's organization that agreed to the net.

**Net** Click to process the netting transaction.

### Related Links

"Defining Netting Accounts (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Banks Setup and Processing*)"

"Understanding the Deal Capture Process (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Deal Management*)"



# Managing Investment Pools

---

## Understanding Investment Pools

Agencies and organizations use investment pools to collect and concentrate surplus funds from various departments and programs for investment purposes. The departments and programs that deposit their surplus funds into the investment pool are referred to as participants. Each participant is assigned an individual account number in order to track their fund transactions within the investment pool.

An investment pool administrator organizes the investment pool and manages the fund's investments similar to that of a portfolio manager. The funds in the investment pool are invested by either the pool administrator or by an external investment manager. The system stores only the investment manager's contact information.

Participants do not enter transactions into the investment pool system, but rather communicate their requests to deposit, withdraw, or transfer funds to the pool administrator. The pool administrator then enters the appropriate data—participant and transaction information—into the system. Participants may transfer funds from one account to another within the same investment pool, but may not transfer funds from one account to an account belonging to another investment pool.

If the pool is set up using share accounts, then shares are distributed to the participants pool account. Share balances are then updated periodically for deposits, withdrawals, and transfers.

Interest and fees are periodically distributed among the participants of the pool.

The method used for transferring funds depends on the structure of the organization and pool's participants. Funds can be transferred by way of accounting book entries or between the participant's bank and the investment pool's bank through electronic wire transfers and Automated Clearing House (ACH) transactions.

Periodically, the investment pool transfers funds to an external investment manager (if applicable) or to the internal investment system. The investment manager provides the pool with reports containing the current market value, income, interest and fees data. Using these data, the pool administrator updates the pool with this information by entering the market value information online and in turn updates the market value for the pool and each participant. The new share price (if applicable) is also computed based on the new market values and the number of shares in the pool.

Besides providing investment and fund management expertise to the participants, the pool administrator also provides accounting and financial reporting for each participant's funds as well as consolidated reporting for the entire investment pool.

---

## Setting Up Investment Pools

To define investment pool information, use the Investment Pool component (TRP\_POOL\_DEFN).

This section discusses how to:

- Set up an investment pool.
- Define pool investment limits.

## Pages Used to Set Up an Investment Pool

<i>Page Name</i>	<i>Definition Name</i>	<i>Navigation</i>	<i>Usage</i>
Pool Information	TRP_POOL_DEFN	Cash Management, Investment Pools, Pool Information	Define the fee, interest, and accounting ChartField information of the investment pool.
Concentration Limits	TRP_POOL_LMT_SEC	Cash Management, Investment Pools, Pool Information  Click the Concentration Limits link on the Pool Information page.	Define the securities to which the investment pool funds will be invested, as well as the maximum percentage of the pool's funds that can be invested in each security.
Contact Information	TRP_POOL_CNT_SEC	Cash Management, Investment Pools, Pool Information  Click the Contact Information link on the Pool Information page.	Enter contact information for the external investment managers who are investing pool funds.

## Pool Information Page

Use the Pool Information page (TRP\_POOL\_DEFN) to define the fee, interest, and accounting ChartField information of the investment pool.

## Navigation

Cash Management, Investment Pools, Pool Information

### Image: Pool Information page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Pool Information page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

The screenshot shows the 'Pool Information' page for Pool ID IP001. It is divided into several sections:

- Pool Details:** Includes Business Unit (US001), Pool ID (IP001), Effective Date (01/01/1900), Status (Active), and Description (Fremont University).
- Interest Information:** Includes Interest Type (Fixed Rate), Rolling Periods (12), Interest Accounting Template (TRP\_INTEREST), Interest Document Type (TR-JG), Interest Rate (%) (5.00000000), Calendar ID (Q1), Currency (USD), and Initial Share Price (1.00). There is a checked box for 'Shares Distributed for Pool'.
- Fee Information:** Includes Fee Type (N/A), Fee Accounting Template, Fee Document Type, Fee Rate (%), and Fee Amount.
- ChartField Details:** A table with columns for Account, Oper Unit, Fund, Dept, Program, and Class. The Account field contains '000000'.

Navigation and utility links are present at the top and bottom of the form, including 'Find | View All', 'First 1 of 1 Last', 'Personalize', and 'Event Log'.

### Fee Type

Specify how the fee charged to participants for maintaining the investment pool will be assessed. The options are:

- *Fee Rate:* The fee is based on a percentage of the income transactions the participant has present in the pool. Selecting this option requires that a value be entered in the Fee Rate (%) field.
- *Flat Fee:* Participants are charged a flat fee. Selecting this option requires that a value be entered in the Fee Amount field.
- *N/A:* No maintenance fees are assessed.

### Fee Accounting Template

Select an existing accounting template to enter the correct accounting and debit and credit configuration for the maintenance fee.

### Fee Document Type

If using document sequencing, select a document type for tracking maintenance fee transactions.

### Fee Rate (%)

Enter the percentage rate for the maintenance fee charged to participants. This is a required field if *Fee Rate* was selected in the Fee Type field.

**Fee Amount**

Enter the amount for the maintenance fee charged to participants. This is a required field if *Flat Fee* was selected in the Fee Type field.

**Interest Information****Interest Type**

Select how the interest on participants' pool investments is accrued. The options are:

- *Fixed Rate*: Interest is accrued based on the amount of a participant's investment multiplied by an interest rate. Selecting this option requires a value be entered in the Interest Rate (%) field.
- *Percentage in Pool*: Interest is accrued based on return on pool's investment multiplied by the percentage of the total investment funded by the participant.

**Interest Rate (%)**

Enter the rate at which income is allocated to the participants' pool account. A value is required here if fixed rate is selected in the Interest Type field.

**Shares Distributed for Pool**

Select if pool is based on share accounts. Share distribution is commonly used when the interest type is fixed rate.

**Initial Share Price**

If the investment pool issues shares, enter the initial share price. Most investment pools seek to maintain an initial net asset value of \$1.00 USD per share.

**Rolling Periods**

Enter the number of periods, based on the calendar selected, for which to calculate the interest on the average participant position over the span of the number of periods entered. For example, using a monthly calendar with three rolling periods, the interest calculation is based on the average participant position over a span of three months.

**Calendar ID**

Select the business calendar to be used for calculating accrued interest payments to the participants' pool account.

**Interest Accounting Template**

Select an existing accounting template to enter the correct accounting and debit/credit configuration for interest accruals.

**Interest Document Type**

If using document sequencing, select a document type to track interest accrual transactions.

**ChartField Details**

Enter the investment pool's ChartField information for accounting purposes.

**Concentration Limits Page**

Access the Concentration Limits page (click the Concentration Limits link on the Pool Information page).

Use the Concentration Limits page (TRP\_POOL\_LMT\_SEC) to define the securities to which the investment pool funds will be invested, as well as the maximum percentage of the pool's funds that can be invested in each security.

### Navigation

Cash Management, Investment Pools, Pool Information

Click the Concentration Limits link on the Pool Information page.

### Image: Concentration Limits page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Concentration Limits page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

The screenshot shows a web interface titled "Concentration Limits". At the top, it displays "Business Unit US001", "Pool ID IP001", and "Effective Date 01/01/1900". Below this is a table with the following structure:

*Sequence Number	*Security Type	*Maximum Investment (%)
1		

Navigation controls include "First", "1 of 1", and "Last". There are also buttons for "OK", "Cancel", and "Refresh".

Use the Concentration Limits page to identify the securities to which the investment pool funds can be invested, and the maximum percentage of the pool's total investment that can be invested in the specified type of security. The Investment concentration limits are set to ensure investment diversity and are defined by the organization's investment policy.

**Note:** Concentration Limits page is for information only. There is no underlying functionality to enforce the maximum investment percentages for each security. Thus, the total maximum investment percentages can equal more than 100 percent.

<b>Sequence Number</b>	Enter the unique identifier for the security type.
<b>Security Type</b>	Enter a security to which to invest pool funds.
<b>Maximum Investment</b>	Enter the maximum percentage of the pool's total funds that can be investment in a particular security.

## Adding Participants to an Investment Pool

To define investment pool participant information, use the Participant Information component (TRP\_PART\_DEFN).

This section provides an overview of pool participant information and discusses how to:

- Add an agency or department as a participant of an investment pool.

- View and adding participants' contact information.

## Pages Used to Add Participants to an Investment Pool

<i>Page Name</i>	<i>Definition Name</i>	<i>Navigation</i>	<i>Usage</i>
Participant Information	TRP_PART_DEFN	Cash Management, Investment Pools, Participant Information	Define the account details of a participant of an investment pool.
Contact Information	TRP_POOL_CNT_SEC	Cash Management, Investment Pools, Pool Information  Click the Contact Information link on the Pool Information page.	View and modify a list of external investment managers responsible for investing the pool's funds.
Contact Information (Detail)	TR_CONTACT_PNL	Cash Management, Investment Pools, Pool Information  Click the Add Pool Contact link on the Contact Information page.	Enter detailed contact information for an external investment manager.

## Pool Participation Information

When an entity joins an investment pool, the organizational entity's name, and the person who is authorized to act on behalf of the entity must be recorded. In addition, the participating entity may have alternative pools in which to invest based on their investment objectives.

Each entity can have one or more accounts that tie them to a pool:

- One account that is used for making deposits to the investment pool. (required)
- One account that is used for tracking investment income. (optional)

Participants typically set up both accounts—deposit accounts for the depositing new funds into the pool and income accounts for accruing income from the pool. Each pool account has at least one general ledger account and related fund.

## Participant Information Page

Use the Participant Information page (TRP\_PART\_DEFN) to define the account details of a participant of an investment pool.

## Navigation

Cash Management, Investment Pools, Participant Information

### Image: Participant Information page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Participant Information page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

The screenshot displays the 'Participant Information' page with the following details:

- SetID:** SHARE, **Participant ID:** PT001
- General Information:**
  - Effective Date: 12/13/2005
  - Status: Active
  - \*Description: Math Fund
- Account Information:**
  - \*Business Unit: US001
  - \*Pool ID: IP001
  - \*Participant Account: PA001
  - Allow Withdrawal from Deposit
  - \*Description: Donations Account
- Account Details:**
  - ChartFields table:

*Account Type	Transfer Template ID	*Account	Oper Unit	Fund	Dept	Program	Class
Deposit		100001					
Income		100002					

**Note:** You can import participant information by creating an ExcelToCI spreadsheet and using the TRP\_PART\_DEFN\_CI component interface.

See *PeopleTools: PeopleSoft Component Interfaces*, "Using the Excel-to-Component Interface Utility."

- Effective Date** Date current status took effect.
- Business Unit** Enter the business unit to which the investment pool account belongs.
- Pool ID** Enter the pool identifier to which the entity will participate.
- Participant Account** Enter the account identifier for the participant's account for the specified investment pool.
- Allow Withdrawal from Deposit** Select to allow the withdrawal funds from the participant's investment pool deposit account. Left unchecked, withdrawals will be allowed only from the a participant's investment pool income account.

### Account Details

Enter ChartField information for a participant's investment pool deposit account, and, if required, its investment income account.

## Managing Participants' Funds

This section provides and overview on participant transactions and discusses how to:

- Create a transaction between an investment pool and a participant.
- View and approve transactions between the pool and a participant.

## Pages Used to Create Participant Transactions

<i>Page Name</i>	<i>Definition Name</i>	<i>Navigation</i>	<i>Usage</i>
Participant Transactions	TRP_PART_TXN	Cash Management, Investment Pools, Participant Transactions	Used by the pool administrator to record a participant's request to deposit, withdraw, or transfer funds among a participant's investment pool accounts.
Approve Transactions	TRP_TXN_APPR	Cash Management, Investment Pools, Approve Transactions	Review and approve or reject transactions initiated by participants of an investment pool.
View Transactions	TRP_TXN_INQ	Cash Management, Investment Pools, View Transactions	View all investment pool transactions matching the defined search criteria.  Provides a view of transactions related to an investment pool to users who do not have access to the Approve Transactions page because they are not authorized to approve or reject transactions. The View Transactions page is identical to the Approve Transactions page without the approval functionality.

## Understanding Participant Transactions

A participant invests in a pool by moving cash into its pool deposit account and making a request to pool administrator to deposit the cash into the pool. The pool administrator makes a record of this request using the Participant Transactions page. The actual cash transaction, however, is tracked outside of investment pools.

Because withdrawals entail an actual transfer of cash, participants have the option of creating an electronic fund transfer (EFT) for a withdrawal of funds from the bank. Clicking the Create EFT link on the Participant Transactions page accesses the EFT Request - Origin page that displays the key information required for the cash transaction. The pool administrator can save the EFT. The EFT is reconciled and accounted for in Cash Management. The relevant book entry is tracked in the investment pools component.

Deposit transactions created on the Participant Transactions page are saved as "pending" transactions. These transactions are approved on the Approve Transactions page by the pool administrator once it has been verified that the actual funds have been received through the EFT.

Besides deposits, the pool administrator also uses the Participant Transactions page to maintain records of all requests to withdraw, or transfer investment pool funds on behalf of its participants. All transactions are managed from within the pool by the pool administrator. Some of these transactions can be scheduled in advance. Records of recent pending activity and completed activity are retained. Participants can also view a listing of transactions on the View Transactions page, which is similar to the Approve Transactions page, but without the transaction approval functionality.

## Participant Transactions Page

Use the Participant Transactions page (TRP\_PART\_TXN) to used by the pool administrator to record a participant's request to deposit, withdraw, or transfer funds among a participant's investment pool accounts.

### Navigation

Cash Management, Investment Pools, Participant Transactions

### Image: Participant Transactions page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Participant Transactions page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

### Participant Transactions

**Transaction Information**

Business Unit	US001		
Pool ID	IP001	Fremont University	
Participant ID	PT001	Math Fund	
Account	PA001	Account Type	Deposit
Transaction Type	Deposit	Transaction ID	1

**Transaction Details**

Description	Initial deposit		Status	Approved
Amount	10,000.00	Currency	USD	
Date	04/15/2005			
Accounting Template	TRP_DEPOSIT	Document Type	TR-JG	

**Audit Information**

Entered by	SAMPLE	Entered On	04/15/05 6:13PM
------------	--------	------------	-----------------

**Note:** You can import participant transactions by creating an ExcelToCI spreadsheet and using the TRP\_PART\_TXN\_CI component interface.

See *PeopleTools: PeopleSoft Component Interfaces* "Using the Excel-to-Component Interface Utility."

### Transaction Type

Displays the type of transaction being initiated by the pool participant. The options are:

- *Deposit:* Participants can make a deposit only to a pool deposit account and selecting Deposit from the To Account Type field.

- *Withdrawal*: Participants can withdraw funds from income accounts. They can also withdraw from a deposit account only if Allow Withdrawal from Deposit is selected on Participant Information page.
- *Transfer*: Transfers are allowed between different accounts of a participant within the same pool, however, a participant cannot transfer funds from a deposit account to an income account.

<b>Status</b>	All newly created transactions are given a status of <i>Pending</i> until the pool administrator has approved or denied them. Pool administrators can <i>Deny</i> the transaction or <i>Approve</i> it. Approval for withdrawal transactions are contingent upon verification of the transfer of funds from the bank by the pool administrator.
<b>To Account</b>	Used only for fund transfer requests. Enter an account to which to transfer the funds.
<b>To Account Type</b>	Used only for fund transfer requests. Select either Deposit or Income. Transferring funds from an deposit account to an income account are not allowed.
<b>Date</b>	Enter a date for completing the transaction. The transaction date must be after the last accounting date for transactions of the pool (viewable in the Position Details grid on the Participant Position page), or the transaction will be rejected.
<b>Transfer Template ID</b>	Select a transfer template to facilitate the transfer of funds with parties with which you conduct regular, specific transactions. Fields from the template selected here are used as default values when creating an EFT for withdrawal transactions.
	<hr/> <b>Note:</b> Expired templates are not available for selection. <hr/>
<b>Transaction Accounting Template</b>	Select the accounting template that depicts the correct accounting and debit/credit configuration for the particular transaction.
<b>Document Type</b>	Select the document type that the system uses to assign document sequence numbers.
<b>Create EFT</b>	Click to access the EFT Request - Origin page to request a physical transfer of funds—withdrawal—based on the parameters of the current participant transaction request defined on this page and fields from the selected transfer template. This link appears on the page only for withdrawal transactions.

## Related Links

"Using Document Sequencing (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Global Options and Reports*)"  
[Creating and Approving Funds Transfer Templates](#)  
[Accounting Templates](#)

"Understanding External, Internal, and Netting Accounts (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Banks Setup and Processing*)"

## Approve Transactions Page

Use the Approve Transactions page (TRP\_TXN\_APPR) to review and approve or reject transactions initiated by participants of an investment pool.

### Navigation

Cash Management, Investment Pools, Approve Transactions

### Image: Approve Transactions page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Approve Transactions page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

The screenshot shows the 'Approve Transactions' page with the following search criteria:

- Business Unit: US001
- Pool ID: IP001
- Participant ID: (empty)
- Participant Account: (empty)
- Status: (dropdown menu)
- Transaction Type: (dropdown menu)
- From Date: 01/01/2005
- To Date: 11/29/2012

Below the search criteria is a table of transactions:

Select	Participant ID	Account	Transaction ID	Type	Date	Amount	Currency	Status
<input type="checkbox"/>	PT001	PA001		1 Deposit	04/15/2005	10,000.00	USD	Approved
<input type="checkbox"/>	PT001	PA001		2 Market Value	04/30/2005	10,000.00	USD	Approved

At the bottom of the page, there are controls for 'Select All' (checked), 'Clear All', 'Approve', and 'Deny'.

Use the Search Criteria to define the transactions related to a business unit and investment pool. To approve a transaction, check the corresponding Selectbox and click Approve. To deny the transaction, click Deny.

## View Transactions Page

Use the View Transactions page (TRP\_TXN\_INQ) to view all investment pool transactions matching the defined search criteria.

### Navigation

Cash Management, Investment Pools, View Transactions

## Viewing Investment Pool Positions

This section discusses how to:

- View pool positions.
- View participants' positions.

- View position details for a single participant.

## Pages Used to Manage Investment Pool Positions

<i>Page Name</i>	<i>Definition Name</i>	<i>Navigation</i>	<i>Usage</i>
Pool Position	TRP_POOL_POS	Cash Management, Investment Pools, Pool Position	View the current position of an investment pool.
Pool Position - Position History	TRP_POOL_POS_DTL	Click the Market Values/Incomes link on the Pool Position page.	View the historical market values and income transactions of the investment pool.
Participant Position	TRP_PART_POS	Cash Management, Investment Pools, Participant Position	View the cash investment, balances, and income of an investment pool's participants.
Participant Position - Position History	TRP_PART_POS_DTL	Click the Mkt/Val Income icon on the Participant Position page.	View the historical market values and income transactions of the pool participant.
Position Details	TRP_PART_POS_DTL	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Cash Management, Investment Pools, Pool Position Click the Details link for specific investment pool.</li> <li>• Cash Management, Investment Pools, Participant Position Click the Details link for specific participant.</li> </ul>	<p>If accessed from the Pool Position page, you can view the cash investment, balances, and income of a specified investment pool.</p> <p>If accessed from the Participant Position page, you can view the cash investment, balances, transactions, and income of a participant of a specified investment pool.</p>
Participant Transaction	TRP_PART_TXN	Cash Management, Investment Pools, Participant Position, Details link  Click the Transaction ID link of a specific transaction.	View details of a specific transaction of a pool's participant.

### Pool Position Page

Use the Pool Position page (TRP\_POOL\_POS) to view the current position of an investment pool.

## Navigation

Cash Management, Investment Pools, Pool Position

### Image: Pool Position page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Pool Position page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

#### Pool Position

**Search Criteria**

Business Unit   Pool ID

From Date   To Date

**Current Position**

Market Value	20,000.00	Date 04/30/2005
Book Value	10,000.00	Currency USD
Change in Market Value	10,000.00	Shares 10,000
Share Price 2.00		

**Position History** Personalize | Find | View All |  |

First  1-2 of 2  Last

Date	Market Value	Change in Market Value	Book Value	Currency	Shares
04/30/2005	20,000.00	10,000.00	10,000.00	USD	10,000
04/15/2005	10,000.00	10,000.00	0.00	USD	10,000

[Update Pool Position](#)
[Market Values/Incomes](#)

#### Market Value

Displays the current value of the investment pool based on the last reported sale price of securities to which the pool funds are invested.

#### Book Value

Displays the previous market value of the pool.

#### Change in Market Value

Displays the change in the market value of the pool since the last time the pool position was updated.

#### Shares

If shares are used, this field displays the number of shares of the investment pool.

#### Share Price

Displays the current price of investment pool shares.

#### Update Pool Position

Click to access the Update Pool Position page to manually update the pool's cash position.

See [Update Pool Position Page](#).

#### Market Values/Incomes

Click to access the Position History page to view the historical market values and position updates of the investment pool.

You can generate a report of a pool's position as well as the positions of each pool's participants for a specified business unit.

## Related Links

[Cash Management Reports: A to Z](#)

## Participant Position Page

Use the Participant Position page (TRP\_PART\_POS) to view the cash investment, balances, and income of an investment pool's participants.

### Navigation

Cash Management, Investment Pools, Participant Position

### Image: Participant Position page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Participant Position page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

The screenshot shows the 'Participant Position' page with search criteria and a table of position history.

**Search Criteria:**

- Business Unit: US001
- Pool ID: IP001
- Participant ID: PT001
- Participant Account: (empty)
- From Date: (empty)
- To Date: (empty)
- Search button

**Position History Table:**

Participant ID	Account	Account Type	Date	Market Value	Change in Market Value	Book Value	Currency	Shares	Mkt Val/Income
PT001	PA001	Deposit	04/30/2005	20,000.00	10,000.00	10,000.00	USD	10,000	
PT001	PA001	Deposit	04/15/2005	10,000.00	10,000.00	0.00	USD	10,000	

This page displays the position and information of all participants' accounts for a specified pool.

### Details

Click to access the Position Details page that lists the participant's transactions. Details of the transactions can be accessed from the Position Details page.

You can generate a report of a pool's position as well as the positions of each pool's participants for a specified business unit.

## Related Links

[Cash Management Reports: A to Z](#)

## Maintaining Pool Positions

This section provides an overview of the investment pool maintenance process discusses how to:

- Import pool position data from an external investment management source.
- Manually update pool positions.
- Distribute investment pool income.

## Pages Used to Update Pool Positions

<i>Page Name</i>	<i>Definition Name</i>	<i>Navigation</i>	<i>Usage</i>
Import Pool Position	BSP_IMPORT	Cash Management, Investment Pools, Import Pool Position	Update an investment pool's position by importing data in a flat file format from an outside investment source.
Layout Catalog	PMT_FORMAT_CATALOG	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click the View Layout Details link on the Import Pool Position page.</li> <li>Banking, Administer Bank Integration, Layout Catalog</li> </ul>	<p>Define and configure the files that will be used to import a flat file containing pool position data into the system.</p> <p>Modify the POOL file layout to define your pool-position, flat file.</p>
Update Pool Position	TRP_POOL_POS_ADD	<p>Cash Management, Investment Pools, Pool Position</p> <p>Click the Update Pool Position link.</p>	Manually update the pool's cash position with current values obtained from outside investment sources. Obtaining the updated pool data may require running the Import Pool Position process.
Income Distribution	TRP_INC_RUN	Cash Management, Investment Pools, Income Distribution	Run the Income Distribution Application Engine (TRP_INC_DIST) process to disburse investment pool income and maintenance fees among participants based on the parameters set on the Pool Information page.

## Updating Investment Pools

In order to have an accurate view of an investment pool's position, as well as the position of its participants, you must periodically update the investment data. To do so requires importing income and fee data from external investment managers into the pool and distributing it among the pools participants.

There are two ways to update investment pool data:

- Import the data in a flat-file format from the Import Pool Position page.

A file layout already provided will need to be modified along with its transformation code.

- Obtain a hard copy of the data and manually enter it using the Update Pool Position page.

Once the pool has been updated, run the Income Distribution Application Engine process (TRP\_INC\_DIST) to update the pool's participant positions by distributing the income and maintenance fees among them.

## Import Pool Position Page

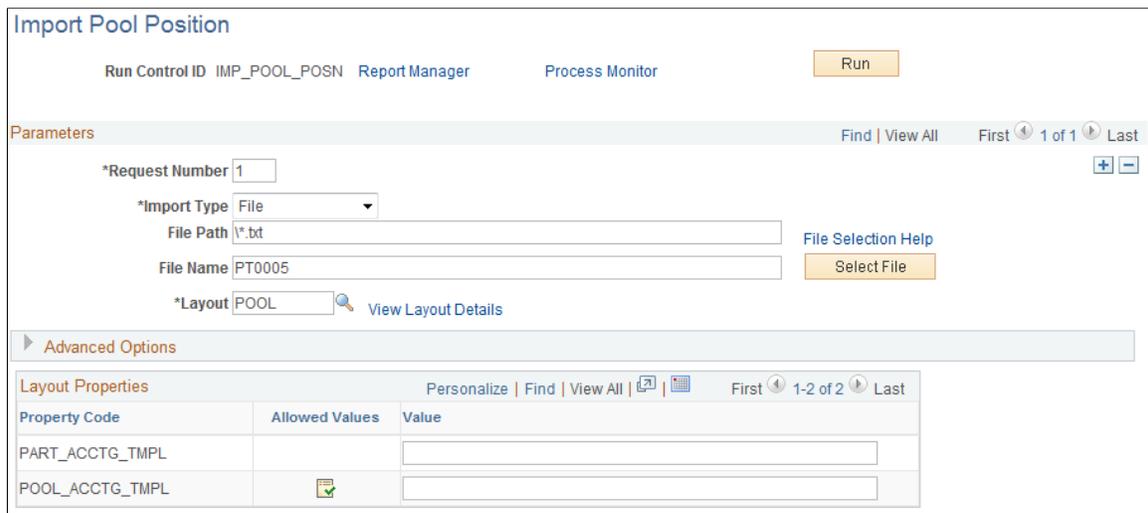
Use the Import Pool Position page (BSP\_IMPORT) to update an investment pool's position by importing data in a flat file format from an outside investment source.

### Navigation

Cash Management, Investment Pools, Import Pool Position

### Image: Import Pool Position page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Import Pool Position page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



### Parameters

#### Import Type

Select the method for importing the data file. The options are:

- *FTP*: Select if you are importing the file by using file transfer protocol, and enter a bank node through which to transfer the data.
- *File*: Select if you are importing a file, and complete the File Path and File Name fields.
- *HTTP*: Select if you are importing a file using a URL that is included as part of the node configuration. No file path or file name is required.

#### Integration Node

Enter the integration node used to transfer the data. This field appears only if FTP or HTTP is selected as the Import Type.

See *PeopleTools : PeopleSoft Integration Broker Administration*, "Adding and Configuring Nodes."

See *PeopleTools : PeopleSoft Integration Broker Administration*, "Using Listening Connectors and Target Connectors," Working With the AS2 Connectors.

See "Understanding Electronic Banking (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Financial Gateway*)".

### **View Integration Node Details**

Click to access the Integration Node Details page and review property details of the selected node. This link appears only if FTP or HTTP is selected as the Import Type.

### **File Path**

Enter the complete file path location. To select files by using the Select File button, the file path must have a trailing backslash ( \).

You can also search for files of a specific type by entering an asterisk and the extension suffix. For example, to search all files with a .txt suffix enter \\* .txt.

### **File Selection Help**

Click to view help information on specifying file paths and file names.

### **File Name**

Select the specific file to import. If you want to import multiple files based on extension, leave this field blank.

## **Advanced Options**

### **Encryption Profile**

Select an encryption profile to decrypt the data file. Encryption profiles contain both encryption and decryption information.

### **Use Integration Broker**

Select this check box to format the files and publish the formatted document to PeopleSoft Integration Broker. Integration Broker then processes the formatted file accordingly.

You select this option if you want to use the pool position information as a trigger for Integration Broker to perform other processes, or to integrate with other systems.

### **Post Process File Action**

Select what action, if any, to be performed on the pool position data file after the data has been processed. The options are:

- *Copy*: Copy the file to the directory entered in the Post Process File Directory field.
- *Delete*: Delete the file after the data in it is processed.
- *Move*: Move the file to the directory entered in the Post Process File Directory field.
- *None*: Take no action. The data file remains unprocessed.

### **Post Process File Directory**

Enter a file path to the directory to which the file will be moved or copied if either option is selected as the Post Process File Action.

See also *PeopleTools: PeopleSoft Integration Broker, Configuring Nodes and Transactions*.

## Update Pool Position Page

Use the Update Pool Position page (TRP\_POOL\_POS\_ADD) to manually update the pool's cash position with current values obtained from outside investment sources.

### Image: Update Pool Position page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Update Pool Position page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

The screenshot shows a window titled "Update Pool Position" with the following fields and values:

- Business Unit: US001
- Pool ID: IP001
- \*Position Type: Market Value (dropdown)
- Date: 11/29/2012 (calendar icon)
- Amount: 1,000,000.00
- Currency: USD
- \*Accounting Template ID: TRP\_DEPOSIT (lookup icon)
- Document Type: TR-JG (lookup icon)
- \*Participant Acctg Template ID: TRP\_DEPOSIT (lookup icon)
- Document Type: TR-JG (lookup icon)
- Buttons: OK, Cancel

---

**Note:** Obtaining the updated pool data may require running the Import Pool Position process.

---

Obtaining the updated pool data may require running the Import Pool Position process.

### Position Type

Select the type of position being updated. The options are:

- *Market Value:* Update the current value of the investment pool based on the last reported sale price of securities to which the pool funds are invested.
- *Interest:* Updated the interests accrued on the pool's investments.

### Amount

Enter the new market value of the investment pool.

### Accounting Template ID

Select the accounting template for the pool that depicts the correct accounting and debit and credit configuration for this update transaction.

### Document Type

Select the document type that the system uses to assign document sequence numbers.

### Participant Acctg Template ID

Select the accounting template for the participants account that depicts the correct accounting and debit and credit configuration for this update transaction.

## Chapter 12

# Managing Treasury Accounting

---

## Understanding the Treasury Management Accounting Process

You use accounting templates to define the ChartFields to use for various kinds of accounting activities, called *accounting events*. By associating accounting templates with accounting events, you can automate most of the accounting process. In addition, you can also manually adjust accounting entries and create ad hoc entries.

### Accounting Templates

The accounting template depicts the correct accounting and debit and credit configuration for a given treasury transaction and business event. For example, the purchase of a U.S. Treasury bond may involve the construction of two debit lines, Bonds Receivable and Unamortized Bond Discount, as well as one credit line, Cash. The accounting template for this type of transaction would include three predefined records to depict this particular debit or credit configuration.

The accounting template contains the following characteristics:

- A unique template ID.
- Options that determine how the correct ChartField combination is selected.
- An attribute (calculation type) that describes how the accounting monetary amount is calculated or derived.
- An attribute that designates whether the accounting build requires review.

### Accounting Events

An accounting event describes an event in the treasury business process that triggers the construction of a pending accounting build.

Oracle delivers the following treasury accounting event types with the system:

- Deal transactions.
- Facility, deal, wire, and letter of credit fees.
- Bank transfers.
- Bank statement processing transactions.
- Hedges.
- Electronic File Transfer (EFT) requests.
- Internal account interest.

- Investment pool transactions.

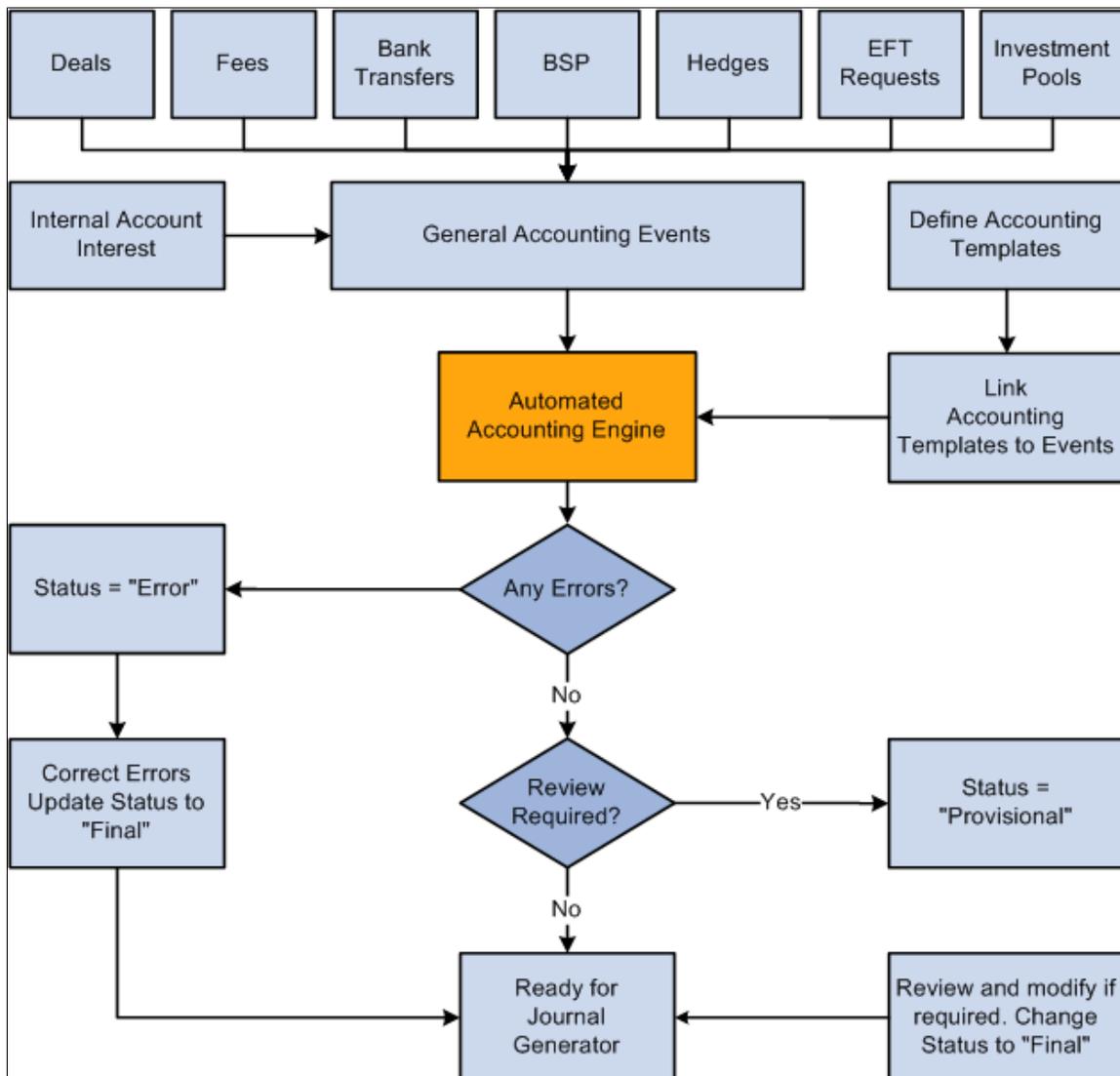
To automate accounting entries, you assign each accounting event type to a corresponding accounting template for all accounting events except bank transfers. Bank transfers do not have accounting templates because the accounting is derived from the bank and business unit of the bank. The template controls which ChartFields and monetary amounts to use in each accounting entry.

For treasury deals, you define the accounting event at the instrument level. You associate each instrument with various accounting events, depending on the instrument base type. In addition, you define each accounting event based on the accounting treatment (Held to Maturity, Available for Sale, Trading, or Other) and assign each accounting template to the appropriate accounting treatment. At deal entry, you select the appropriate accounting treatment. The system then automatically associates the appropriate accounting template, based on the accounting treatment of the instrument type.

The following diagram illustrates the process flow:

**Image: Process flow for treasury accounting**

Process flow for treasury accounting from general accounting event to Journal Generator



## Interunit and Intraunit Processing in Accounting

The PeopleSoft centralized processor generates the due-to and due-from entries for both interunit and intraunit balancing. PeopleSoft Treasury Management provides functionality to support interunit and intraunit processing using the centralized processor on the Accounting Template and Accounting Entries pages.

### Interunit and Intraunit Balancing Methods

*Interunit* refers to balancing transactions that involve two general ledger business units. The bank accounts contain the ChartFields and the rules by which their values should be determined.

*Intraunit* refers to balancing transactions within the same general ledger business unit in which the transaction involves more than one value on the lower level balancing ChartField. For all transactions that Treasury Management generates, the system obtains the ChartFields from either the bank account or an accounting template. Inherited ChartFields obtain their values from the corresponding ChartField on the offsetting entry.

### Treasury System Transaction Definitions

To facilitate interunit and intraunit processing, you segregate your interunit and intraunit payable and receivable accounts by the type of transaction. The interunit and intraunit system transactions are a predefined list of transactions, with one system transaction for each major type of Treasury transaction that generates interunit and intraunit entries. By defining transaction codes and associating them with system transactions, you control the level by which you segregate your Interunit and intraunit balances.

---

**Important!** Oracle delivers predefined system transactions, which you can view on the System Transaction Definition page. You should not change the information on this page because it affects the intraunit and interunit processing.

---

See "Running the Centralized Interunit and Intraunit Processor (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Application Fundamentals*)".

This table associates a system-defined transaction with a PeopleSoft accounting source:

<b>Accounting Source</b>	<b>System Transactions</b>
Deals	TRDEAL
Hedges	TRHEDGE
Letter of Credit, Deal, Facility, or EFT Fees	TRFEE
Bank Statement Items	TRBSP
EFT Requests	TREFT
Bank Transfers	TRBAX
Interunit Interest	TRIUINT
Manual Entry	TRMANUAL

<b>Accounting Source</b>	<b>System Transactions</b>
Investment Pools	TRINPOOL

## **Intraunit and Interunit Accounting Entries Generation Using the Centralized Processor**

Here is an overview of the process:

1. Specify an anchor entry in the accounting template as a model for any interunit and intraunit entries.  
The anchor entry cannot be a line where the ChartField is determined by Bank Account.
2. Process treasury accounting using the Automated Accounting process (TR\_ACCTG), which invokes the centralized processor. The centralized processor automatically creates any necessary offset entries that are tagged with the source identifier label *System IU* (viewable on the Additional Details tab of the Accounting Entries page) and inserts these data into the accounting tables.
3. If you make any changes to an accounting entry line, you must click the Update Accounting button to invoke the centralized processor and regenerate accounting entries.

### **Related Links**

[Establishing Accounting Templates](#)

[Automated Accounting Page](#)

"Product Interface and System Transaction Categorization (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Application Fundamentals*)"

## **Defining and Maintaining Accounting Substitution Rules**

This section discusses how to:

- Set up accounting substitution rule criteria.
- Maintain accounting substitution rules.

Use substitution rule functionality to make minor adjustments to templates without having to rebuild them. To define substitution rules that can be shared by multiple accounting templates, use the Define Substitution Rules component (SUB\_RULE\_DEFN) under Treasury Accounting. You can also maintain substitution rules by running reports and by copying, renaming, or deleting substitution rules under Treasury Accounting.

Accounting substitution rules can be created for Deals, Bank Statement Accounting, and Fees.

## Pages Used to Define and Maintain Substitution Rules

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Substitution Rule Definition	SUB_RULE_DEFN	Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Define Substitution Rules, Substitution Rule Definition	Set up substitution criteria based on source attribute values and unique ChartField values.
Manage Substitution Rules	SUB_RULE_REQ	Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Manage Substitution Rules, Manage Substitution Rules	Run control to execute a process to copy, rename, or delete substitution rules.
Substitution Rule Definition (report)	RUN_TRX1001	Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Reports, Substitution Rule Definition	Generates a list with detailed information for one or more substitution rules.
Substitution Rule Templates (report)	RUN_TRX1002	Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Reports, Substitution Rule Templates	Generates a list of all accounting templates associated with one or more substitution rules.

### Substitution Rule Definition Page

Use the Substitution Rule Definition page (SUB\_RULE\_DEFN) to set up substitution criteria based on source attribute values and unique ChartField values.

#### Navigation

Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Define Substitution Rules, Substitution Rule Definition

#### Image: Substitution Rule Definition page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Substitution Rule Definition page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

**Substitution Rule Definition**

SetID: SHARE      Substitution Rule: DEALS\_PORTFOLIO\_DEPT      Copy

Source Type: Deals

\*Description: Substitute Department based on Portfolio

Status: Active

Date Modified: 09/01/12 9:17:15AM      Modified By: SAMPLE

Substitution Rule      Find | View All      First 1 of 1 Last

\*Test Attribute: TREASURY\_PORTFOLIO      \*Set ChartField: DEPTID

Substitute Translate		Personalize   Find   View All	First 1-2 of 3 Last
Attribute Value	ChartField Value		
RTI	10000	+	-
RTO	15000	+	-

On this page, establish the Test Attribute field and the matching Attribute Values. In this example for the DEAL\_OPRID\_TO\_DEPT rule, when the DEALER\_OPRID equals a particular dealer, such as DVP1, then the department (DEPTID) ChartField value is set to 14000.

**Test Attribute and Attribute Value** Define the database object to test in. Your selection for this field determines the attribute values available in the Attribute Value field. For example, a Deal rule has different test attributes than a Fee or BSP rule. Each source has its own attribute values.

**Set ChartField and ChartField Value** Select which ChartField to set against the test attribute, and enter the ChartField value in the ChartField Value field to substitute when the defined test attribute equals the specified attribute value

You can have more than one substitute rule per definition, but additional rules must control a unique Set ChartField value.

**Copy** Click this button to clone an existing Substitution Rule and make changes as appropriate.

**Source Type** Substitution rules can be created for Deals, Bank Statement Accounting, and Fees.

## Manage Substitution Rules Page

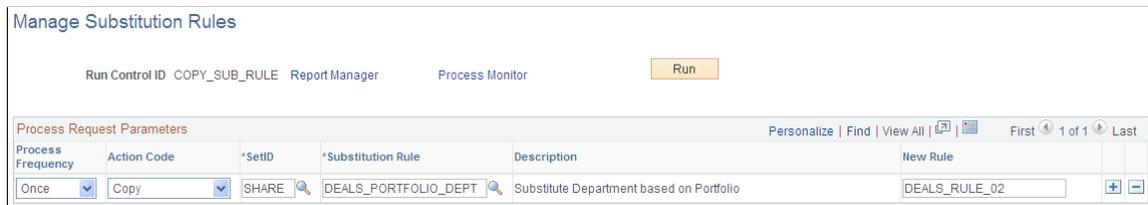
Use the Manage Substitution Rules page (SUB\_RULE\_REQ) to run control to execute a process to copy, rename, or delete substitution rules.

### Navigation

Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Manage Substitution Rules, Manage Substitution Rules

### Image: Manage Substitution Rules page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Manage Substitution Rules page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



**Action Code** Select an action from the list. Choose from these values:

- *Copy*: Creates a new substitution rule that is identical to the rule specified in the Substitution Rule ID field. The Substitution Rule ID and the New Rule value cannot be the same. You must enter a New Rule value that does not already exist.
- *Rename*: Changes the name of the specified substitution rule. The Substitution Rule ID and the New Rule value

cannot be the same. You must enter a New Rule value that does not already exist. When you rename a substitution rule, accounting templates where it is applied are updated with the new substitution rule ID.

- *Delete:* Removes the specified substitution rule. If the Substitution Rule ID is associated with an active Accounting Template, the system generates a warning before deleting.

When you delete a substitution rule, accounting templates where the rule was applied are updated to remove the substitution rule.

You can request multiple actions for the same Substitution Rule ID. To add an action, click the Add a Row button.

## Running Accounting Substitution Rule Reports

### Substitution Rule Definition Report Run Control Page

Use the Substitution Rule Definition report run control page (RUN\_TRX1001) to generate a list with detailed information for one or more substitution rules.

#### Navigation

Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Reports, Substitution Rule Definition

#### Image: Substitution Rule Definition report run control page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Substitution Rule Definition report run control page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

The screenshot shows the 'Substitution Rule Definition' report run control page. At the top, there is a header with the title 'Substitution Rule Definition'. Below the header, there are several fields and buttons: 'Run Control ID' is set to 'SUB\_RULE01', 'Report Manager' and 'Process Monitor' are buttons, and a 'Run' button is on the right. Below these, there is a 'Language' dropdown menu set to 'English'. A horizontal line separates this section from the next. Below the line, there is a '\*SetID' text box with the value 'SHARE' and a search icon. Below that is a 'Substitution Rule' text box with the value 'FEES\_FACILITYID\_DEPT' and a search icon. At the bottom, there is a 'Source Type' dropdown menu set to 'Fees'.

**Substitution Rule ID** (Optional) Enter an existing Substitution Rule ID or a wildcard.

Use the Substitution Rule Templates report run control page (RUN\_TRX1002) to generate a list of all accounting templates associated with one or more substitution rules.

### Navigation

Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Reports, Substitution Rule Templates

#### Image: Substitution Rules Templates run control page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Substitution Rules Templates run control page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

## Establishing Accounting Templates

To define accounting templates, use the Accounting Templates component (ACCTG\_TEMPLATES).

This section discusses how to:

1. Enter accounting template information.
2. Associate substitution criteria with accounting template lines.
3. Link templates with associated accounting events.

### Pages Used to Establish Accounting Templates

<i>Page Name</i>	<i>Definition Name</i>	<i>Navigation</i>	<i>Usage</i>
Accounting Templates	TRA_TMPL_DETL	Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Accounting Templates	Enter general accounting template and template line information.
Accounting Templates - Substitution Rule	TRA_SUB_RULE	Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Accounting Templates, Substitution Rule	Associate a defined substitution rule with an accounting template line.
VAT Defaults Setup	VAT_DEFAULTS_DTL	Click VAT Defaults link on the Accounting Templates page.	Define value-added tax (VAT) default processing options for the specified accounting template.

## Accounting Templates Page

Use the Accounting Templates page (TRA\_TMPL\_DETL) to enter general accounting template and template line information.

### Navigation

Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Accounting Templates

### Image: Accounting Templates page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Accounting Templates page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

The screenshot shows the 'Accounting Templates' page with the following details:

- SetID: SHARE
- Accounting Template ID: BSP-INTEXP
- Source Type: BSP
- Description: BSP Interest Expense
- Status: Active
- \*Document Type: TR-FBO
- \*Requires Review:
- \*Journal Template: TR\_ENTRIES
- VAT Defaults
- Last Changed By: SAMPLE
- Last Dtm: 09/01/2012 9:23:04AM

Line	Calc Type	Description	Trans Line	Leg	II Anchor	*Sign	*Determined By	Acct Type	Substitution Rule
1	01	Cashflow Amount	1	1		Credit	Bank Account	Cash	Substitution Rule
2	01	Cashflow Amount	1	1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Debit	Explicit Chartfield		Substitution Rule

### Requires Review

Select to force review of the accounting transactions that use this template.

When you select this check box, the system assigns error-free accounting entries and a status of *Provisional*. To finalize the provisional entry, use the View/Approve Entries page to review and change the status to *Final*.

If you do not select this check box, the system assigns error-free accounting entries using this template and a status of *Final*.

### Source Type

Displays the source of the accounting entry, which can be *BSP* (bank statement processing), *Deals*, *Fees*, *Hedge Accounting*, *Interest*, *EFT Requests*, or *Investment Pools*.

### Status

Indicate whether this accounting template is *Active* or *Inactive*. This determines which templates are available to users. The system selects only active accounting templates for display and use.

This feature enables you to:

- Retain all the accounting templates that you create, both current and discontinued.
- Research the accounting for all your accounting entries, whether the respective accounting template is active or not.

When an accounting template is marked inactive, it is not available for processing, but is retained for historical reference.

If you need to review accounting entries processed by an inactive accounting template, the template is still present in the system.

**Document Type**

Select the document type to use as the basis for assigning document sequencing numbers to these types of transactions.

**VAT Defaults (value-added tax defaults)**

Click to access the VAT Defaults Setup page (VAT\_DEFAULTS\_DTL).

The VAT Defaults Setup page is a common page used to set up VAT defaults for all PeopleSoft applications that process VAT transactions. On this page, you can define accounting template defaults as applicable. You must first specify one of the accounting lines as a VAT-applicable line to establish VAT defaults for this template.

**Line Detail Tab**

Select the Calc Type (calculation type) to use on each template line—this varies depending on the source type. For deal-related calculation types, you must also specify a transaction line and leg of the deal.

The following table lists each available calculation type by source type.

<b>Source Type</b>	<b>Available Calculation Types</b>
<i>Bank Statement Processing (BSP)</i>	Cashflow Amount
<i>Fees</i>	Cashflow Amount
<i>Fees</i>	Fee Accrued
<i>Deals</i>	Cashflow Amount
<i>Deals</i>	Deal Amount
<i>Deals</i>	Price
<i>Deals</i>	Purchased Interest
<i>Deals</i>	Interest Compounded into Principal
<i>Deals</i>	Interest Accrued
<i>Deals</i>	Mark to Market Gain/Loss
<i>Deals</i>	Forward Points
<i>Deals</i>	FX Deal Cash-flow Amount
<i>Deals</i>	Forward Points Accrued

<b>Source Type</b>	<b>Available Calculation Types</b>
<i>Deals</i>	Maturity Interest
<i>Deals</i>	Maturity Principal
<i>Deals</i>	Amortized Discount/Premium
<i>Deals</i>	Sale Current Accounted Value
<i>Deals</i>	Premium Accrued
<i>Deals</i>	Sale Settlement
<i>Deals</i>	Sale Price (Clean)
<i>Deals</i>	Sold Accrued Interest
<i>Deals</i>	Gain/Loss on Sale
<i>Deals</i>	Accumulated MTM Gain/Loss
<i>Deals</i>	Bond Discount/Premium
<i>Deals</i>	Principal Payment
<i>Deals</i>	Interest Payment
<i>Deals</i>	Amounts Rolled Out
<i>Deals</i>	Principal Rolled Out
<i>Deals</i>	Interest Rolled Out
<i>Deals</i>	Amounts Rolled In
<i>Deals</i>	Principal Rolled In
<i>Deals</i>	Interest Rolled In
<i>Deals</i>	Write-Off Unamort Disc/Premium
<i>Deals</i>	Write-Off Unamort Fee
<i>Deals</i>	Day Delay Price
<i>Deals</i>	Day Delay Purchased Interest
<i>Deals</i>	Dividend Payment

<b>Source Type</b>	<b>Available Calculation Types</b>
<i>Deals</i>	FV Excluded time Value G/L
<i>Deals</i>	CF Excluded Time Value G/L
<i>Deals</i>	FX Net Investment Excluded G/L
<i>Deals</i>	Fair Value Hedge Gain/Loss
<i>Deals</i>	Cash Flow Hedge Gain/Loss
<i>Deals</i>	FX Net Investment Gain/Loss
<i>Deals</i>	Not Hedge Designated Gain/Loss
<i>Hedges</i>	Fair Value Hedged Item G/L
<i>Hedges</i>	Firm Commitment to Carrying
<i>Hedges</i>	Amortize Adj to Carrying
<i>Hedges</i>	De-recognize Firm Commitment
<i>Hedges</i>	AOCI Adjustments
<i>Hedges</i>	AOCI Reclassify
<i>Hedges</i>	Will Not Occur-AOCI Reclassify
<i>Interest</i>	Cashflow Amount
<i>Investment Pools</i>	Cashflow Amount
<i>Investment Pools</i>	Interest Payment
<i>Investment Pools</i>	Mark-to-Market Gain/Loss
<i>EFT Requests</i>	Cashflow Amount

**Trans Line (transaction line)**

For Deals source type, indicates the line from the deal instrument. All other sources have a default of *I*.

**Leg**

Indicates the deal accounting leg number.

**IU Anchor (interunit anchor)**

Specify one line of the template as the anchor. This is a required field because the centralized processor uses it to generate interunit entries. The anchor line cannot be a line where the ChartField is determined by bank account.

**Sign**

Select the numerical sign for a transaction *Credit, Debit, Keep Sign, or Rev Sign* (reverse sign).

**Determined by**

Indicate how to inherit ChartField values for the specified template line. Values are:

*Bank Account:* ChartField values are inherited from the bank account that is specified by the source transaction. Fields on the ChartField tab for this line are then disabled.

*Explicit ChartField:* You define specific ChartField values on the ChartField tab.

**Acct Type (account type)**

If the ChartField is determined by bank account, then you must choose the General Ledger account type. For Treasury, select *Cash Account*.

If the ChartField is determined by Explicit ChartField, then leave this field blank.

**ChartFields Tab**

Enter the appropriate ChartField values.

**Image: Accounting Templates page - Chartfields tab**

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Chartfields tab of the Accounting Templates page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

Line	Account	Description	Alt Acct	Oper Unit	Fund	Dept	Program	Class	Bud Ref	Product	Project	Affiliate	Fund Affl	Oper Unit Affl	Stat	VAT Line
1																
2	773300	Bank Fees VAT Applicable														<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

**Stat (statistic)**

Select a statistics code for the specific accounting line. This field can be edited on the accounting entry.

**VAT Line (value-added tax line)**

Click to specify that VAT is applicable for this accounting line. You can specify VAT options only for accounts with:

- The VAT Applicable Flag check box selected on the Account page.

See "Adding Account Values (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Application Fundamentals*)".

- Source types of *BSP* or *Fees*.

**Related Links**

[Managing Accounting Entries](#)

"Setting Up for Journal Entries Using Statistics (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: General Ledger*)"

## Accounting Templates - Substitution Rule Page

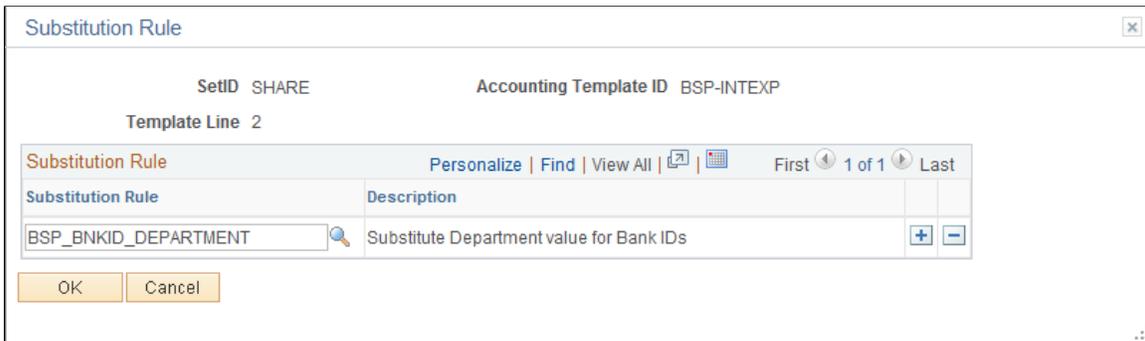
Use the Substitution Rule page (TRA\_SUB\_RULE) to associate a defined substitution rule with an accounting template line.

### Navigation

Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Accounting Templates, Substitution Rule

### Image: Accounting Templates - Substitution Rule page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Accounting Templates - Substitution Rule page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



Use substitution rule functionality to make minor adjustments to templates without having to rebuild them. For example, you might require that certain departments perform deal accounting on deals by dealers by specifying criteria for each dealer's user ID. The substitution rule that addresses this need is assigned to the applicable accounting template lines here. In this example, the substitution rule ID applied is DEAL\_OPERID\_TO\_DEPT, which was defined on the Substitution Rule Definition page.

### Substitution Rule

Enter a predefined substitution rule to apply to the template line. You can have more than one substitute rule per template line. Substitution rules are set up on the Substitution Rule Definition page (Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Define Substitution Rules, Substitution Rule Definition).

When multiple substitution rules are defined for a template line, the system validates that the Set ChartField value is unique within all the associated substitution rules.

## Linking Templates with the Associated Accounting Events

Accounting events are linked with their corresponding accounting templates on various pages, as defined in this table:

<b>Accounting Event Source</b>	<b>Page Name</b>	<b>Navigation</b>
Bank Statement items	External Transactions	Banking, Reconcile Statements, External Transactions  Select the Transactions Detail tab, Accounting Template ID field.

<b>Accounting Event Source</b>	<b>Page Name</b>	<b>Navigation</b>
Deals	Accounting Templates	Deal Management, Administer Deals, Define Instruments, Accounting Templates
EFT Requests	EFT Template	Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, EFT Requests, Origin tab, Template ID field
Letter of Credit, Deal, Facility, or Wire Fees	Fee Codes	Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Treasury, Fee Codes, Fee CodesExpense Template or Accrual Template field
Hedges	Deal Accounting	Risk Management, Analyze Hedge, Hedges, Deal Accounting
Hedges	Item Accounting	Risk Management, Administer Risk, Hedged Item Sources
Investment Pools	Pool Information Participant Transactions Pool Position	Cash Management, Investment Pools, Pool Information  Cash Management, Investment Pools, Participant Transactions  Cash Management, Investment Pools, Pool Position

## Processing Accounting Entries

This section presents a diagram of the inbound and outbound transaction process and provides an overview of the Automated Accounting Build process and discusses how to process automated accounting.

### Page Used to Process Accounting Entries

<b>Page Name</b>	<b>Definition Name</b>	<b>Navigation</b>	<b>Usage</b>
Automated Accounting	TRA_ACCTG_REQ	Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Automated Accounting	Run the Automated Accounting process, which creates accounting entries and prepares them for the Journal Generator (FSPGJGEN) process.

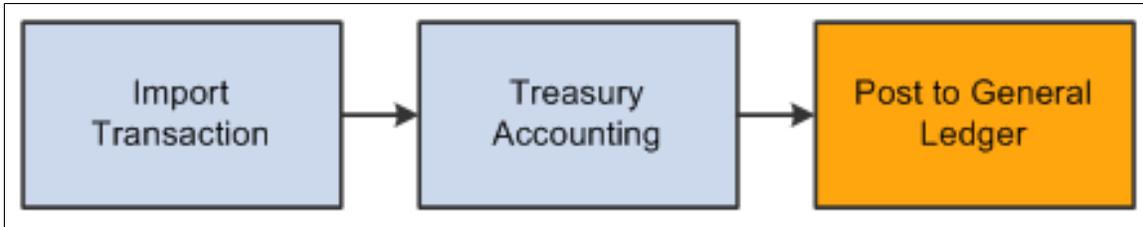
## Understanding the Inbound and Outbound Transaction Process Flow

During processing, the program calls the centralized processor to generate interunit and intraunit balancing (IU\_PROCESSOR).

These diagrams illustrate the inbound and outbound transaction processes.

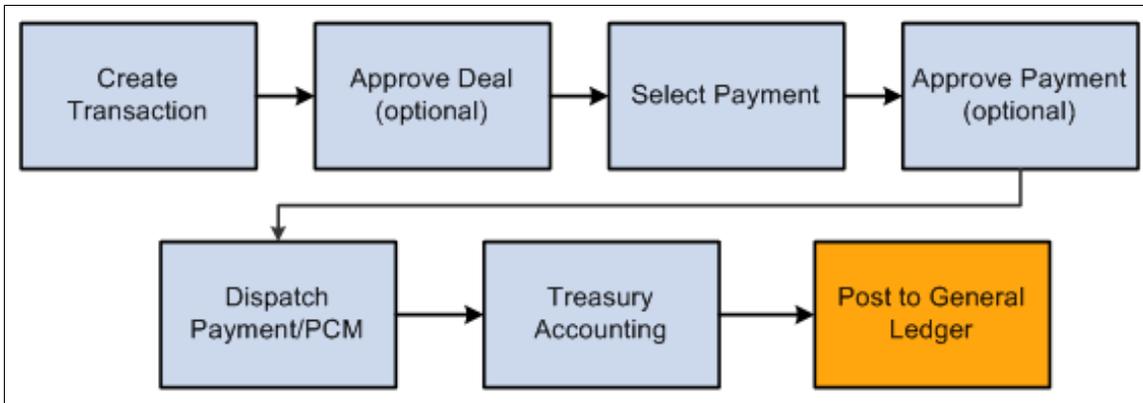
**Image: Inbound transaction process**

Inbound process from importing a transaction to Treasury Accounting to posting to General Ledger



**Image: Outbound transaction process**

Outbound process from creating transaction through payment dispatch and Treasury Accounting to posting to General Ledger



**Understanding the Automated Accounting Build Process**

The Automated Accounting process populates the treasury accounting event calendar with transaction reference information, event type, event date, template ID, and processing state.

When specific processing events occur (as shown in the following table), the program that builds automatic accounting entries selects any unprocessed transactions from the treasury accounting event calendar and copies them into the Accounting Entries table.

<b>Accounting Event Type</b>	<b>Processing Event</b>
Treasury Deals	The open deal is saved and the Cash Flows button is clicked.
Bank Transfers, EFT transfers	The transaction is dispatched.
Fees and Charges	Fees are saved.
Mark to Market	During revaluation processing.

<b>Accounting Event Type</b>	<b>Processing Event</b>
Investment Pools	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Participant transactions are approved.</li> <li>• Pool positions are updated.</li> <li>• Income Distribution Application Engine process (TRP_INC_DIST) is run.</li> </ul>

When the underlying data are established, the Automated Accounting process works in the following way:

1. Selects unprocessed records with the correct event date from the Accounting Event table.
  - Processes inbound cash flows unconditionally upon receipt of cash.
  - Processes outbound cash flows after transactions have been approved and sent to the bank.
2. Constructs the ChartField combination according to the appropriate accounting template.

If ChartField combination errors occur, the system will insert error details for each of the accounting entries. You can review and fix these ChartField combination errors by accessing the Accounting Entries component.

3. Retrieves the correct monetary amount according to the calculation type.

## Automated Accounting Page

Use the Automated Accounting page (TRA\_ACCTG\_REQ) to run the Automated Accounting process, which creates accounting entries and prepares them for the Journal Generator (FSPGJGEN) process.

### Navigation

Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Automated Accounting

### Image: Automated Accounting page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Automated Accounting page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

**Automated Accounting**

Run Control ID AUTO\_ACCTG [Report Manager](#) [Process Monitor](#) Run

---

**General Accounting Options**

Business Unit  \*Combo Template

Acctg Events End Date

SetID  Calendar ID

Fiscal Year  Period

---

**Accounting Sources**

All Sources  Bank Statements  Bank Transfers  Deals  EFTs

L/C Fees  Facility Fees  Deal Fees  EFT Fees

Investment Pools  Interest  Hedges

---

**Excluded Accounting Events**

All Accruals  Interest Accrual  Discount Accrual  Forward Points Accrual

Fee Accrual  Option Premium Accrual

---

**Deal Accounting Options**

Instrument Type  Portfolio

Deal ID  User ID

### Business Unit

Enter a value to process automated accounting for a specific business unit. You can also leave the Business Unit field blank to set up automated accounting for multiple business units.

If you enter a business unit defined with a calendar ID on the Treasury Options page, the calendar ID appears on the page.

**Note:** Your system administrator can set up the option to issue a warning instead of an error message (13550, 70) for processing a single business unit using an Accounting Events End Date when the selected Business Unit is defined with a Calendar ID. This table provides an overview of the selections a user can make on the run control page and the accounting entries that the Automated Accounting Engine processes.

<b>Run Control Selections</b>	<b>Processing Results</b>
Business Unit	Specified business unit, must <i>not</i> be defined with a calendar ID.
Acctg Events End Date	

<b>Run Control Selections</b>	<b>Processing Results</b>
Business Unit – <i>None</i> (leave field blank) Acctg Events End Date	All business units that are <i>not</i> defined with a calendar ID.
Business Unit Fiscal Year Period <hr/> <b>Note:</b> When Fiscal Year and Period are populated, leave Acctg Events End Date blank.	Specified business unit, must be defined with a calendar ID.
Business Unit – <i>None</i> (leave field blank) Fiscal Year Period <hr/> <b>Note:</b> When Fiscal Year and Period are populated, leave Acctg Events End Date blank.	

**Combo Template**

Enter a template ID for the combination of business unit and general ledger.

**Acctg Events End Date**

Enter an accounting events end date. The system processes all associated accounting events on or before the specified date. If a business unit has a calendar associated with it, you must leave this field blank and enter Fiscal Year and Period values.

**SetID**

Displays the setID value associated with the Calendar ID that controls the Fiscal Year and Period.

**Calendar ID**

Displays the Calendar ID value that controls the Fiscal Year and Period. If you enter a business unit associated with a calendar ID on the Treasury Options page, that calendar ID will appear here. If the business unit has a calendar associated with it, you must enter Fiscal Year and Period values and leave the Acctg Events End Date field blank.

**Fiscal Year and Period**

Enter the Fiscal Year and Period values that will be used to determine the accounting events to be processed by Automated Accounting process.

---

**Note:** The process creates accounting entries even if errors occur. Use the Accounting Entries page to correct any errors, and then change the status from *Error* to *Provisional*. Use the View/Approve Entries page to change the status from *Provisional* to *Final*. The accounting entries are then ready for General Ledger. You do not have to rerun the Automated Accounting process.

---

## Managing Accounting Entries

This topic lists common elements used to manage accounting entries and discusses how to:

- Adjust accounting entries.
- Create ad hoc accounting entries.
- Review and approve accounting entries.
- View the accounting summary.
- Reverse accounting entries.

### Pages Used to Manage Accounting Entries

<i>Page Name</i>	<i>Definition Name</i>	<i>Navigation</i>	<i>Usage</i>
Accounting Entries	TRA_ACCTG_LINE	Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Accounting Entries	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Review and adjust automated accounting entries.</li> <li>• Create manual accounting entries online.</li> </ul>
Treasury VAT Information	TRV_ACCTG_LINE_VAT	Click VAT on the Accounting Entries page.	Review VAT information for a VAT-applicable accounting entry line.
View/Approve Entries	TRA_ACCTG_LINE	Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, View/Approve Entries	Approve accounting entries that are awaiting review.
Accounting Summary	TRA_ENT_SUM_PNL	Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Accounting Summary	View line-by-line accounting events. You can retrieve information according to ad hoc search criteria and navigate to all functional areas of accounting.
Reverse Accounting Request	REV_ACCTG_REQ	Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Reverse Accounting Request, Reverse Accounting Request	<p>Run a process to create reversal accounting entries.</p> <hr/> <p><b>Note:</b> Accounting entries can be reversed only one time.</p> <hr/>

### Common Elements Used to Manage Accounting Entries

**Created By** Displays the userID of the user who created the entry.

**Created Dttm (created date and time)** Displays the entry creation date and time.

**Last Changed By** Displays the userID of the most recent user to edit the entry.

**Last Dttm (last updated date and time)**

Displays the most recent modification date and time.

**Source Code**

Indicates the source for the accounting entry or fee. Values are:

- *(none)*
- *BSP* (bank statement processing)
- *Bank Xfers* (bank transfers)
- *Deal Fees*
- *Deals*
- *EFT Fees*
- *EFTs*
- *Fac Fees* (facilities fees)
- *Hedges*
- *Interest*
- *LC Fees* (letter of credit fees)
- *Other*
- *Pools*
- *Securities*

## Accounting Entries Page

Use the Accounting Entries page (TRA\_ACCTG\_LINE) to review and adjust automated accounting entries.

Create manual accounting entries online.

## Navigation

Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Accounting Entries

### Image: Accounting Entries page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Accounting Entries page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

**Accounting Entries**

Unit US001	Accounting ID 0000000037
Event Discount Accrual	Orig Accounting ID 0000000033
Source Code Deals	Source ID CFLOW_1
Seq Nbr 1	Leg 1
Acctg Date 02/08/2013	Description Reverse Accounting Entries
*Status <span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px;">Provisional</span>	Error Status None
Acctg Template <span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px;">IRP-DISACC</span>	Doc Type <span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px;">TR-FRBB</span>
Combo Template <span style="border: 1px solid gray; padding: 2px;">TREASURY</span>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Requires Review
Created By DVP1	Last Changed By
Create Dttm 02/08/2013 10:17:05AM	Last Dttm

---

**Summary Totals**

142.40 DRs	-142.40 CRs	0.00 Net
------------	-------------	----------

---

**Accounting Entries** Personalize | Find | First 1-2 of 2 Last

Line	GL Unit	Amount	Currency	Exchg Rate	Exch Rt Dtl	Base Amount	Base Currency	IU Anchor
1	US001	181.16	CAD	1.27223091		142.40	USD	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
2	US001	-181.16	CAD	1.27223091		-142.40	USD	<input type="checkbox"/>

Update Accounting
Attachments (0)

**Accounting ID**

Displays the ID of the accounting entry.

**Orig Accounting ID**

Indicates the entry is a reversal entry. Click the link to view the original accounting entry in a separate window.

The Description field also identifies whether the entry is a Reversal Accounting Entry.

**Event**

Displays a descriptive label for the accounting entry, based on the source code value.

**Source Code**

Displays the accounting entry source, as processed by the Automated Accounting process, or entered on a manual accounting entry.

**Source ID**

Displays the unique identification number on the source side for the accounting entry.

**Acctg Date (accounting date)**

Displays the date that the entry was processed through Automated Accounting, or entered as a manual accounting entry.

**Status**

Indicates the current condition of the accounting entry. Values are:

*Provisional:* The entry is not finalized. You can make any required changes.

*Error:* An error exists within the accounting entry. The system assigns this status—you cannot select it. When you correct an error, change the status to *Provisional*. After the status has been changed to *Provisional*, use the View/Approve Entries page to change the status to *Final*. The entry is then ready for the Journal Generator process—you do not need to reprocess it.

*Final:* The entry is ready for Journal Generator processing and is free from errors.

Until the entry is processed through the Journal Generator process, you can continue to make changes to it, even if the status is *Final*. When the Journal Generator processes the entry, the distribution status changes to *Distributed*, indicating that it has been posted to a General Ledger journal and no further modifications can be made.

### Acctg Template (accounting template)

Displays the name of the accounting template that is attached to the accounting entry. If the accounting template is missing or inactive, Automated Accounting sets the accounting event status to *Error*. You can reset the *Error* status for accounting events that have valid templates and reprocess the accounting entries.

---

**Note:** If you use General Ledger, you can automatically reverse any unrealized gain/loss accounting that is generated by Treasury Management at the next accounting period. You need to create a journal template for this type of treasury accounting and enable the feature for automatic journal reversal. You must assign this journal template to the treasury accounting template for General Ledger to perform the automatic reversals.

---

### Error

Indicates the error source of an automated accounting entry. Values are:

*None:* No error condition exists. This appears when the status is provisional or final.

*Unbalanced:* Debits do not equal credits, or debits and credits are not equal, but refer to different General Ledger business units.

*CF Combo Error* (ChartField combination error): The ChartField generated is invalid.

*No Exchange Rate:* The currency exchange rate for the applicable currency pair is missing. The base amount could not be converted to the accounting entry currency.

*Account Not Specified:* The account was undefined, and the amounts cannot be distributed.

*IU Processor Error:* The centralized processor encountered an error. Review the accounting entries, correct any errors, and click the Update Accounting button to regenerate accounting.

### **Requires Review**

Select this check box to require review of the accounting entries.

A check box that is selected and grayed-out indicates that the Review Required check box was already selected on the Template page on which this was based *or* the Review Manual Updates check box was selected on the Treasury Options page for the Treasury business unit and the accounting entry has been manually updated.

### **Update Accounting**

Click this button if you edit any of the information in the Accounting Entries grids to run the centralized interunit processor.

---

**Note:** If you are editing information only in the page header ( Status field or Requires Review check box), do not click the Update Accounting button.

---

When you click the Update Accounting button on the Accounting Entries page, the system determines whether the Review Manual Updates check box has been selected on the Treasury Options page associated with the Treasury Business Unit. If the Review Manual Updates check box is selected for the business unit, the system sets the accounting event status to *Provisional* and selects the Requires Review check box.

### **VAT (value-added tax)**

Click this link to access the Treasury VAT Information page ( TRV\_ACCTG\_LINE\_VAT). The VAT link appears for VAT-applicable accounting entries.

### **Integration Status**

Displays the status of the integration between Treasury and JD Edwards General Accounting. This field appears only if the integration is enabled on the Installation Options - Treasury page. Values are:

- *Pending:* The entry is ready to be sent to the Integration Broker for transmission to JD Edwards General Accounting.
- *Sent:* The entry has been sent to the Integration Broker.
- *Received:* The accounting entries have been loaded into the JD Edwards staging table.
- *Loaded:* The accounting entries have been loaded into the JD Edwards application tables.
- *Posted:* The accounting entries have been posted to JD Edwards General Accounting.

- *Error*: Indicates that the accounting entry contains erroneous data or an error occurred during the data transmission process and must be resent.

---

**Note:** If an entry must be resent, the integration status can be changed to *Pending* unless the integration status is already displayed as *Posted*.

---

See "Installation Options - Treasury Page (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Application Fundamentals*)".

See *JD Edwards Application Integrations with PeopleSoft Applications*, "Using the PeopleSoft Treasury with JD Edwards General Accounting Integration."

## Line Detail Tab

### Line

Displays the line number of the automated accounting process.

### Error

Displays this column and an *X* link next to the lines with ChartField combination editing errors. Click the *X* link to access an Accounting Entries secondary page, which contains a Line Errors grid that has these fields:

- Line # identifies the accounting entry transaction line number.

You can click a line number for an error and the system returns you to the specific line containing the error. You can correct the error and click the Update Accounting button on the Accounting Entries page to run the centralized interunit processor again.

- Message Set Number identifies the message set to which the error message belongs.
- Message Number identifies the specific number of the error message within the message set.
- Message Text describes information about the error.

---

**Note:** The Errors column only appears in the Accounting Entries page when there is a ChartField combination editing error. A ChartField combination error does not stop the Accounting Entries creation process (ACCOUNTING\_BUILD). You can review and fix the errors after the process has finished.

---

### GL Unit

Displays the associated General Ledger unit.



Click the Exchange Rate Detail button to view currency exchange rate information on the Exchange Rate Detail page (EXCH\_RT\_DTL).

**Base Amount**

Displays the GL BU (General Ledger business unit) amount in the base system currency.

**IU Anchor (interunit anchor)**

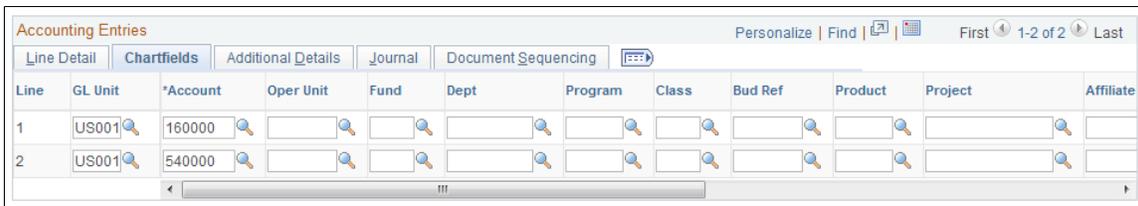
Specify one line of the template as the anchor. This is a required field, because the centralized processor uses it to generate interunit entries.

**ChartFields Tab**

Select the ChartFields tab.

**Image: Accounting Entries page - Chartfields tab**

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Accounting Entries page - Chartfields tab. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



**Stat (statistic)**

If a statistics code is set for this accounting line on the template, the code appears here. You can edit this field. Select a statistics code—the associated unit of measure (UOM) appears for the selected code. You must also enter a statistic amount with which to measure the statistic.

**Important!** If a ChartField combination editing error occurs, an Errors column will appear after the Line # column. An X link will appear next to a transaction line with a ChartField combination error. You click the X link to access an Accounting Entries secondary page, which contains a grid that describes the error message for each transaction. You can click on a transactions Line # link and access the accounting transaction with the ChartField combination error, and fix the problem. See the Accounting Entries subtopic in this section for additional details.

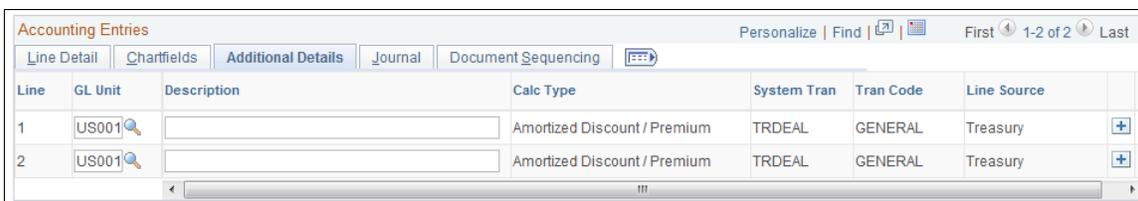
See "ChartField Values (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Application Fundamentals*)".

**Additional Details Tab**

Select the Additional Details tab.

**Image: Accounting Entries page - Additional Details tab**

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Accounting Entries page - Additional Details tab. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.



**Line Source**

Displays either *Treasury* for accounting lines that are generated by the treasury accounting program, or *System IU* for accounting lines that are generated by the centralized processor.

**Journal Tab**

Select the Journal tab.

**Image: Accounting Entries page - Journal tab**

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Accounting Entries page - Journal tab. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

Line	GL Unit	Journal ID	Journal Template	Reference	Combo Status	GL Status	Ledger Group	Ledger
1	US001		TR_ENTRIES		Valid	Hold	RECORDING	LOCAL
2	US001		TR_ENTRIES		Valid	Hold	RECORDING	LOCAL

**Combo Status**

Indicates whether the ChartField combination that the system built based on the accounting template is *Valid* or *Invalid*.

**GL Status (General Ledger status)**

Provides information about the posting status of the entry. Possible values include:

- *Distributed*: Distributed to a General Ledger journal.
- *Hold*: An error condition exists, the entry must be corrected before Journal Generator can process it, or the entry requires review.
- *None*: The entry has been created without errors, but has not been processed by the Journal Generator process.

**Ledger Group**

Indicates the general ledger group that is associated with the General Ledger Unit on the accounting line.

**Ledger**

Indicates the general ledger that is associated with the General Ledger Unit on the account line.

**Related Links**

[Establishing Accounting Templates](#)

[Reviewing VAT Accounting Entries](#)

**Creating Ad Hoc Accounting Entries**

On the Accounting Entries page, the Source Code, Source ID, Event, and Accounting Template fields are optional.

- If you complete the Source Code, Source ID, and Event fields, the system can create a link between the manual and the automated accounting results.

- If you enter entries manually on a recurring basis, you can create and use an accounting template to minimize the data entry process for these entries. Any template that you create appears in the Accounting Template field. When you select an accounting template for this ad hoc entry, the system automatically populates the accounting lines with the template data.

To create ad hoc accounting entries:

1. Enter the business unit and optionally, an accounting ID. Click Add.
2. Select an accounting event from the following values:
  - *(none)*
  - *AOCI Adjustment*
  - *AOCI Reclassify*
  - *Amortize Adj of Carrying*
  - *Barrier Rebate Payment*
  - *Commodity Cash Difference*
  - *Commodity Settlement*
  - *Deal Booking*
  - *Deal Maturity*
  - *Derecognize Firm Commitment*
  - *Discount Accrual*
  - *Fair Value Hedged Item G/L*
  - *Fee Accrual*
  - *Firm Commitment to Carrying*
  - *Forward Points Accrual*
  - *Generic Cash Flow*
  - *Initial Payment*
  - *Interest Accrual*
  - *Interim Principal Payment*
  - *Mark to Market*
  - *Maturity Payment*
  - *Option Cash Difference*
  - *Option Exercise*
  - *Option Premium Accrual*

- *Periodic Payment*
  - *Premium Payment*
  - *Sell / Buyback*
  - *Transaction Fee*
  - *Will Not Occur - AOCI Reclassify*
3. Specify a source code.
  4. Select a specific source ID of the selected source code.
  5. Review the accounting date for accuracy.
  6. Leave the default status for ad hoc entries as *Provisional*. Do not change this setting.
  7. The Require Review check box is automatically selected for ad hoc entries. You cannot deselect this check box.
  8. (Optional) Enter a description.
  9. Select an accounting template.
  10. Enter at least one debit and one credit line to balance the entry, and select one line as the IU anchor.
  11. Enter an account and any other ChartFields for each line.
  12. Select *TR\_ENTRIES* for the journal template.
  13. Click Update Accounting to run the centralized processor function, which creates any necessary offset entry lines and saves the manual accounting entry.

If the debits and credits do not balance, you receive an error message and the accounting entry is not saved. Make the necessary corrections, and then save the page.

---

**Note:** When the Journal Generator processes the entry, the distribution status changes from *None* to *Distributed*, and no further changes can be made.

---

## Related Links

[Accounting Entries Page](#)

## View/Approve Entries Page

Use the View/Approve Entries page (TRA\_ACCTG\_LINE) to approve accounting entries that are awaiting review.

### Navigation

Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, View/Approve Entries

### Image: View/Approve Entries page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the View/Approve Entries page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

**View/Approve Entries**

Unit US001	Accounting ID 000000007
Event Maturity Payment	
Source Code Deals	Source ID TCORPBOND
Seq Nbr 1	Leg
Acctg Date 12/05/1999	Description Offline Accounting Build - Deals
*Status <span style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px;">Provisional</span>	Error Status None
Acctg Template	Doc Type
Created By	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Requires Review
Create Dttm	Last Changed By
	Last Dttm

---

**Summary Totals**

1,150,558.74 DRs	-1,150,558.74 CRs	0.00 Net
------------------	-------------------	----------

---

**Accounting Entries** Personalize | Find | | First 1-3 of 3 Last

Line Detail	Chartfields	Additional Details	Journal	Document Sequencing	FEED		
Line	GL Unit	Amount	Currency	Exchg Rate	Base Amount	Base Currency	IU Anchor
1	US001	-1,150,558.74	USD	1.00000000	-1,150,558.74	USD	<input type="checkbox"/>
2	US001	1,100,000.00	USD	1.00000000	1,100,000.00	USD	<input type="checkbox"/>
3	US001	50,558.74	USD	1.00000000	50,558.74	USD	<input type="checkbox"/>

Attachments (0)

### Status

Initially displays the status of accounting entries that are displayed in the Accounting Entries grid. Values are:

- *Error*: Accounting entries are in error and must be corrected before they can be posted to the general ledger. Possible causes of errors include unbalanced entries, currency exchange rate cannot be found, accounting template cannot be found, interunit errors, and so forth. Error status can be set only by the Automated Accounting process.
- *Needs Correction*: Accounting entries are in error. Needs Correction status can only be set manually.
- *Provisional*: Accounting entries passed system verifications, but require visual inspection. You can review the entry and save it with a new status of *Final* or *Needs Correction*.
- *Final*: Accounting entries are ready to be posted to the general ledger.

---

**Note:** Use PeopleSoft Security functionality to identify which users have access and approval privileges to provisional accounting entries. You can define permission lists and accessible pages for a specific userID. See the product documentation for *PeopleTools: Security Administration*.

---

## Accounting Summary Page

Use the Accounting Summary page (TRA\_ENT\_SUM\_PNL) to view line-by-line accounting events.

You can retrieve information according to ad hoc search criteria and navigate to all functional areas of accounting.

### Navigation

Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Accounting Summary

<b>Acctg Date (accounting date)</b>	Displays the creation date of the accounting transaction.
<b>Status</b>	Select <i>Error</i> , <i>Final</i> , or <i>Provisional</i> .
<b>Line</b>	Click a link to access the Accounting Entries page for that event.
<b>Event ID</b>	Click to navigate back to the source transaction.

## Understanding Reverse Accounting

Accounting entries that need to be reversed can be identified using various identifiers, such as Accounting ID, Source, and Payment ID. The Reverse Accounting Entries Application Engine process (TR\_RVSL\_DRVR) does the following:

- Selects the accounting data (header, lines, and VAT).  
The reversal accounting entry is not linked to a fiscal period.
- Reverses the amounts and reset certain statuses and fields (for example, Journal Generator links).
- Assigns a new accounting ID to each selected header, lines, and VAT.  
The process does not reset the accounting event status associated to the original accounting entry.
- Calls document sequencing and ChartField combination editing, when applicable.
- Populates the accounting tables with the new data (header, lines, and VAT).
- Checks for errors (for example, combination edit, unbalanced entries) and updates the accounting header.
- Logs messages summarizing the entries (including type of errors, number of entries created).

When deactivating a deal, you can automatically reverse the accounting entries on the Undo Deal Utility page. When you select the Reverse Accounting check box, you can use additional options to specify the Reversal Date Option and Combo Edit Template. The TRX\_UNDO\_DEAL Application Engine process uses the entered parameters and calls the Reverse Accounting process.

### Related Links

"Deactivating Deals (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Deal Management*)"

"Understanding ChartField Combination Editing (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Application Fundamentals*)"

"Defining General Ledger Business Units (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: General Ledger*)"

## Reverse Accounting Request Page

Use the Reverse Accounting Request page (REV\_ACCTG\_REQ) to run a process to create reversal accounting entries.

---

**Note:** Accounting entries can be reversed only one time.

---

### Navigation

Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Reverse Accounting Request, Reverse Accounting Request

### Image: Reverse Accounting Request page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Reverse Accounting Request page.

The screenshot shows the 'Reverse Accounting Request' page with the following elements:

- Page title: Reverse Accounting Request
- Run Control ID: 1
- Buttons: Report Manager, Process Monitor, Run
- Process Request Parameters section:
  - \*Process Frequency: Always Process (dropdown)
  - \*Reverse Accounting Option: Reverse by Accounting ID (dropdown)
  - \*Reversal Date Option: Specify Date (dropdown)
  - \*Combo Template: TREASURY (text field with search icon)
  - Reversal Date: 02/08/2013 (text field with calendar icon)
- Accounting ID Criteria section:
  - Business Unit: US001 (text field with search icon)
  - Accounting ID From: 0000000032 (text field with search icon)
  - Accounting ID To: 0000000032 (text field with search icon)

### Reverse Accounting Option

Select from these values:

- *Reverse by Accounting ID*
- *Reverse by Payment ID*
- *Reverse by Source*

The page will render differently depending on the selected Reverse Accounting Option. Each option has different criteria for identifying the accounting entries to be reversed.

### Combo Template

Specify a combination editing template.

See "Setting Up Combination Editing (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Application Fundamentals*)".

### Reversal Date Option

Select the date to use as the accounting date for the reversal accounting entries.

The Reversal Date field is available for input when the reversal date option is *Specify Date*.

Select a reversal date from these values:

- *Current Date*- Select to use the current date as the accounting date for the reversal accounting entries.

- *Specify Date* - This option requires a value in the Reversal Date field, where you can enter a specific accounting date.

## Accounting ID Criteria

This section appears when you select *Reverse by Accounting ID* in the Reverse Accounting Options field.

### Image: Reverse Accounting Request page to reverse by Accounting ID

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Reverse Accounting Request page to reverse by Accounting ID.

The screenshot displays the 'Reverse Accounting Request' interface. At the top, it shows 'Run Control ID 1', 'Report Manager', 'Process Monitor', and a 'Run' button. Below this is the 'Process Request Parameters' section, which includes a search bar and navigation controls. The parameters are:
 

- \*Process Frequency: Always Process
- \*Reverse Accounting Option: Reverse by Accounting ID
- \*Reversal Date Option: Specify Date
- \*Combo Template: TREASURY
- Reversal Date: 02/08/2013

 The 'Accounting ID Criteria' section includes:
 

- Business Unit: US001
- Accounting ID From: 0000000032
- Accounting ID To: 0000000032

#### Business Unit

Enter a business unit. This is a required field.

#### Accounting ID From and Accounting ID To

Identify one or more accounting IDs to be reversed. Accounting entries for the accounting ID range will be reversed. Accounting ID From is a required field.

## Payment ID Criteria

This section appears when you select *Reverse by Payment ID* in the Reverse Accounting Options field.

### Image: Reverse Accounting Request page to reverse by Payment ID

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Reverse Accounting Request page to reverse by Payment ID.

The screenshot shows the 'Reverse Accounting Request' page. At the top, there are links for 'Run Control ID 1', 'Report Manager', and 'Process Monitor', along with a 'Run' button. Below this is a 'Process Request Parameters' section with a search bar and navigation controls. The parameters include:
 

- \*Process Frequency: Always Process
- \*Reverse Accounting Option: Reverse by Payment ID
- \*Reversal Date Option: Specify Date
- \*Combo Template: TREASURY
- Reversal Date: 02/08/2013

 The 'Payment ID Criteria' section contains:
 

- Bank SetID: SHARE
- Bank Code: USBNK (USA BANK)
- Bank Account: CHCK (USBNK CHECKING ACCT)
- Settle By: Financial Gateway
- Payment ID: CM0000000005

The following fields are required:

- Bank SetID** Enter the bank setID.
- Bank Code** Enter the bank code.
- Bank Account** Enter the bank account.
- Settle By** Select from these values:
  - *Financial Gateway*
  - *Pay Cycle*
- Payment ID** Enter the ID for the payment to be reversed.

## Source Criteria

This section appears when you select *Reverse by Source* in the Reverse Accounting Options field.

Accounting entries created for a source for a specific accounting date can be reversed.

**Image: Reverse Accounting Request page to reverse by source values**

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Reverse Accounting Request page to reverse by source values. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

The screenshot shows the 'Reverse Accounting Request' interface. At the top, there are links for 'Run Control ID 1', 'Report Manager', and 'Process Monitor', along with a 'Run' button. Below this is a 'Process Request Parameters' section with fields for '\*Process Frequency' (Always Process), '\*Reverse Accounting Option' (Reverse by Source), '\*Reversal Date Option' (Specify Date), '\*Combo Template' (TREASURY), and 'Reversal Date' (02/08/2013). A 'Source Criteria' section follows, containing 'Business Unit' (US001), 'Source Code' (Deals), 'Source ID' (TCORPBOND), 'Accounting Event Type' (Initial Payment), 'Accounting Date' (02/08/2013), 'Sequence Number', 'Line', and 'Leg'.

Business Unit, Source Code, and Source ID are required fields for all sources except *BSP* (bank statement processing).

**Business Unit** Enter a business unit.

**Source Code** Select from the values that appear in the following table.

Source Code Values	Criteria Used Identify Accounting Entries
<i>BSP</i>	Bank ID Bank Account Number Transaction Reference ID Transaction Date
<i>Bank Transfers</i> <i>EFT Requests</i> <i>Hedges</i> <i>Interest</i>	Source ID Accounting Event Type Accounting Date

<b>Source Code Values</b>	<b>Criteria Used Identify Accounting Entries</b>
<i>Deal Fees</i> <i>EFT Fees</i> <i>Facility Fees</i> <i>Investment Pools</i> <i>LC Fees</i>	Source ID Accounting Event Type Accounting Date Sequence Number
<i>Deals</i>	Source ID Accounting Event Type Accounting Date Sequence Number Line Leg

**Source ID** Enter the source ID. This field is required for all Source Code values except *BSP*.

**Accounting Event Type** Select an accounting event type from the list. The values available in the Accounting Event Type list depend on the Source Code selected.

**Accounting Date** Enter the accounting date.

**Sequence Number** Enter a sequence number.  
 The Sequence Number value is for multiple like events on the same date (that is, same Business Unit, Source Code, Source ID, Accounting Event Type, and Accounting Date). For example, two Deal Interim Principal Payments or two Deal Fees.

**Line** Enter a deal line to be reversed, if desired.

**Leg** Enter a deal leg, if desired.

## Reviewing Accounting Information

You can inquire on various aspects of your accounting activity. This section lists common elements used in this section and lists the pages used to review accounting information.

## Pages Used to Review Accounting Information

<b>Page Name</b>	<b>Definition Name</b>	<b>Navigation</b>	<b>Usage</b>
Accounting Events	TRA_EVENT_CAL	Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Accounting Events, Accounting Events	View accounting events generated from deals, facility fees, and bank transfers.  <a href="#">Accounting Events Page</a>
Bank Statement Processing Accounting (BSP)	TRA_EVENT_CAL_2	Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Accounting Events, BSP Accounting Events	View accounting events generated from bank statement processing.  "BSP Accounting Events Page (PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Banks Setup and Processing)"
Accounting Summary	TRA_ENT_SUM_PNL	Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Accounting Summary	View line by line accounting entries. You can retrieve information according to ad hoc search criteria and navigate to all functional areas of accounting.  <a href="#">Accounting Summary Page</a>
Treasury Journal Drill	TR_DRILL_GRP	Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Journal Drill	View accounting entries and associated General Ledger journal data. A link to the General Ledger Journal page enables you to view the journal in greater detail.

## Common Elements Used in Accounting Information

<b>Event ID</b>	Displays the source identifier mapped by the originating source transaction.
<b>Status</b>	Select <i>Accruing</i> , <i>Deactiva'd</i> (deactivated), <i>Error</i> , <i>In Process</i> , <i>Not Proc</i> (not processed), or <i>Processed</i> .
<b>Template</b>	Displays the associated accounting template. For events that have not been processed yet, or are only partially accrued, you can modify the template.  However, for BSP and Fee accounting events, if VAT is associated with the source transaction, you cannot change the template. You must adjust VAT charges at the source transaction level—this ensures that the VAT accounting is kept in synchronicity in the system.



Click to access a specific Accounting Template page.

## Treasury Journal Drill Page

Use the TR Journal Drill page (TR\_DRILL\_PNL) to view accounting entries and associated General Ledger journal data.

A link to the General Ledger Journal page enables you to view the journal in greater detail.

### Navigation

Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Journal Drill

"Securing ChartFields for PeopleSoft Treasury (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Application Fundamentals*)"

## Maintaining Fiscal Period Closure

This section provides an overview of the Fiscal Period Summary page, lists prerequisites, and discusses how to maintain fiscal period closure functionality.

### Page Used to Maintain Fiscal Period Closure

<i>Page Name</i>	<i>Definition Name</i>	<i>Navigation</i>	<i>Usage</i>
Fiscal Period Summary	TR_FISCPRD_CLS	Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Fiscal Period Summary	Close or <i>lock down</i> the accounting for a specified fiscal period, in preparation for end-of-period financial-report generation and analysis. This prevents other users from rerunning Treasury Management accounting processes for the closed fiscal period. You can also reset a fiscal period that has been closed in error.

## Understanding the Fiscal Period Summary Page

The Fiscal Period Summary page enables you (or those users with end-of-period accounting responsibilities) to manage your fiscal period close process and the integrity of closed fiscal periods. When you close a fiscal period, system processes prevent users from running Treasury Management accounting processes for that period. This helps ensure accurate end-of-period reporting and analytical results, because any additional accounting for the period is transferred to and handled by the next accounting cycle. This type of fiscal period close is considered a *soft-close* of your accounting ledger, because the closure occurs only in the Treasury Management product, not the General Ledger product.

If another user (such as an accounting clerk) attempts to run accounting on entries of the closed fiscal period, the system will not run the accounting request. Functionality on the Automated Accounting and the Process Scheduler pages prevents the process request from occurring.

When you close or reset an entry or entries in a series of entries, the system enforces closing or resetting the entries in a certain logical order. This is to maintain the integrity of your Treasury Management accounting entries. You can also reset (open) any fiscal period that may have been closed in error. The

system tracks and displays your most recent action for each fiscal period row on the Audit Detail page, providing an activity log.

In addition, individual business units can maintain their own Treasury Management close cycle calendars, independent of the close cycle performed for the general ledger. This means that one of your Treasury business units can close using a weekly calendar, while another Treasury business unit can close using a monthly calendar.

## Prerequisites

Before configuring the Fiscal Period Accounting Summary page:

- Confirm that only those users who need access to this page have access permission, as defined in the permission lists associated with their user profile.
- Verify that the Treasury business units that you will use in this page are defined with a calendar ID on the Treasury Options page (BUS\_UNIT\_OPT\_TR).

## Related Links

"Defining Business Calendars (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Application Fundamentals*)"

[Defining Treasury Business Unit Options](#)

PeopleTools: Security Administration

## Maintaining Fiscal Period Closure

Use the Fiscal Period Summary page (TR\_FISCPRD\_CLS) to close or lock down the accounting for a specified fiscal period, in preparation for end-of-period financial-report generation and analysis.

This prevents other users from rerunning Treasury Management accounting processes for the closed fiscal period. You can also reset a fiscal period that has been closed in error.

### Navigation

Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Fiscal Period Summary

When you add rows to existing fiscal period information, the system automatically populates the Fiscal Year and Period fields with the next chronological period.

---

**Note:** Rows must be closed in ascending entry order, from first entered row to last entered row. For example, if you want to close Fiscal Year 2002, Period 2, you must first close Fiscal Year 2002, Period 1. Conversely, rows must be reset in descending entry order. In the previous example, you need to reset (or open) Fiscal Year 2002, Period 2, before you can reset Fiscal Year 2002, Period 1.

---

To close a fiscal period:

1. Enter the business unit and a calendar ID. Click Add.
2. Select a fiscal year.
3. Select an accounting period.
4. If you want to close this fiscal period, select the Close Acctg (close accounting) check box.

To reset a closed fiscal period:

1. Click Reset. The system enables the Fiscal Year and Period fields, and automatically deselects the Close Acctg (close accounting) check box.
2. In Reset Reason, overwrite any existing text with the reason for the fiscal period reset.

The Audit Detail page lists audit information for each row.

**Create Dttm (creation date and time)** Indicates the entry creation date and time.

**Last Dttm (last changed by date and time)** Indicates the most recent edit date and time of the entry.

**Reset Dttm (reset date and time)** Indicates the most recent reset date and time of the entry.

# Processing VAT Transactions in Treasury Management

---

## Understanding VAT Processing in Treasury Management

The VAT functionality in Treasury Management enables you to automatically process VAT accounting entries for VAT applicable transactions. Your use of VAT in Treasury Management deals in large part with setting defaults and applying these at the business unit, bank, bank branch, and accounting template levels. The objective is to calculate and create a variety of VAT accounting entries to record not only the tax, but also simultaneously record the recoverable, nonrecoverable, and rebate portions of the VAT at the accounting line level.

For PeopleSoft applications, primarily all of the VAT calculation values are derived from the VAT global defaulting architecture. The VAT defaulting architecture uses VAT Drivers, which are certain information elements on a VAT transaction that determine or "drive" the VAT processing for that transaction. (See the section Treasury Management VAT Drivers Table in this chapter for a list of Treasury specific VAT drivers.) To establish a VAT defaulting hierarchy, you must first define the overall VAT environment for your system, and then define Treasury Management VAT driver defaults on the global setup pages. For Treasury Management VAT processing, these global setup pages are accessed from the Bank Information, Bank Branch Information, Accounting Templates, and Treasury Options pages.

Treasury Management transaction sources affected by VAT are fees and interest sources. You generate or enter these transactions on the External Transactions - Treasury VAT Processing page or the Enter Fees (Fee Generator) page. When force reconciling transactions in the Automatic Reconciliation Exceptions (Bank Statement Processing) page, VAT transactions are created, where applicable, as the balancing external transaction is created (likewise, in the Bank Statement Accounting process, VAT transactions are created for any applicable external transaction created).

Though VAT is applicable to both goods and services, Treasury Management records VAT only on service transactions. As such, the Physical Nature field shown on certain pages always displays the value *Services*.

Once the setup, transactional, and accounting information is in the system, you can also run inquiries and reports on your VAT information.

As shown in the illustration, the four Treasury Management setup pages derive VAT calculation values from the primary default architecture. These VAT values are then used by the system when calculating VAT for Treasury Management accounting entries.

---

**Important!** Refer to the following documentation before establishing the primary VAT defaulting hierarchy for your system and setting up VAT for calculating Treasury Management transactions.

---

See "Understanding VAT (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Global Options and Reports*)".

Here's how to work with VAT in Treasury Management, from start to finish:

1. Define all VAT setup information, both on general system and Treasury Management specific pages.
2. Create VAT entries on either the External Transactions or Fee Generator pages (or automatically through the Automatic Reconciliation Exception page or the Bank Statement Accounting process).
3. Process VAT accounting through the Automated Accounting page.
4. View VAT information on VAT Accounting Summary or VAT Inquiry pages.
5. Process VAT transactions through the system using the VAT Transaction Loader page.
6. Create VAT reports.

---

## Prerequisites

You need to establish VAT processing options in both your PeopleSoft system and in General Ledger.

### Related Links

"Understanding General Ledger VAT Setup and Processing (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: General Ledger*)"

---

## Setting Up VAT for Treasury Management

Although the Treasury VAT Options and VAT Defaults links display on the Treasury VAT setup pages (the VAT Defaults link on the Bank Information, Bank Branch Information, and Accounting Template pages; both links on the Treasury Options page), you can access the Treasury VAT Options and VAT Defaults pages only when the selected business unit is VAT-enabled.

This section discusses how to:

1. Define Treasury business unit VAT processing defaults.
2. Define bank VAT processing defaults.
3. Define bank branch VAT processing defaults.
4. Define Treasury accounting template VAT processing defaults.

## Pages Used to Set Up VAT for Treasury Management

<b>Page Name</b>	<b>Definition Name</b>	<b>Navigation</b>	<b>Usage</b>
Treasury VAT Options	TRV_BU_UNIT_OPT_TR	Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Business Unit Related, Treasury, Treasury Options  Click Treasury VAT Options on the Treasury Options page.	Define specific VAT processing options for a Treasury business unit.  The Treasury VAT Options link is enabled only if the General Ledger business unit representing the Treasury business unit is linked to a VAT Entity.
VAT Defaults Setup (for Treasury business units)	VAT_DEFAULTS_DTL	Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Business Unit Related, Treasury, Treasury Options  Click VAT Defaults on the Treasury Options page.	Specify default VAT options for a Treasury business unit.  The VAT Defaults link on the Treasury Options page is enabled only if the General Ledger business unit representing the Treasury business unit is linked to a VAT entity.
VAT Defaults Setup (for banks)	VAT_DEFAULTS_DTL	Banking, Banks and Branches, Bank Information  Click VAT Defaults on the Bank Information page.	Specify VAT default options at the bank level.
Bank Branch Information	BANK_BRNCHPNL	Banking, Banks and Branches, Bank Branch Information	Set up the bank branch and define VAT registration options.
VAT Defaults Setup (for bank branches)	VAT_DEFAULTS_DTL	Banking, Banks and Branches, Bank Branch Information  Click VAT Defaults on the Bank Branch Information page.	Specify default VAT information for a bank branch.
Template	TRA_TMPL_DETL	Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Accounting Templates	Define general accounting template and template line information, including VAT template line information.
VAT Defaults Setup (for accounting templates)	VAT_DEFAULTS_DTL	Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Accounting Templates  Click VAT Defaults on the Template page.	Define VAT default processing options for a Treasury Management accounting template.  The Treasury VAT Defaults link is enabled only for BSP and Fee source type accounting templates.

## Prerequisites

Before specifying Treasury Management VAT options for a treasury management business unit, you must enable VAT for that business unit. A treasury management business unit is VAT-enabled after you link the general ledger business unit representing the treasury business unit to a VAT Entity.

### Related Links

"Understanding General Ledger VAT Setup and Processing (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: General Ledger*)"

"Understanding VAT (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Global Options and Reports*)"

## Treasury - VAT Options Page

Use the Treasury VAT Options page (TRV\_BU\_UNIT\_OPT\_TR) to define specific VAT processing options for a Treasury business unit.

### Navigation

Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Business Unit Related, Treasury, Treasury Options

Click Treasury VAT Options on the Treasury Options page.

### Image: Treasury - VAT Options page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Treasury - VAT Options page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

**VAT Edit Msgs (VAT edit messages)** VAT edit messages are used to indicate if VAT tolerance messages are errors, warnings, or not displayed. This is a business unit-only default and applies directly to a transaction.

- *Error Message*: A message displays, and you must correct the tolerance error to proceed with a transaction.
- *Warning*: A message displays indicating a transaction exceeds tolerance settings.
- *None*: No message displays.

### Prorate Non-Recoverable VAT

Select this check box to record non-recoverable VAT amounts to an expense account.

**Allocate Non-Recoverable VAT**

Select this check box to allocate non-recoverable VAT using ChartField Inheritance logic.

---

**Note:** You can select either to allocate or prorate nonrecoverable VAT transactions, but you cannot select both check boxes.

---



---

## Editing VAT External Transaction Details

This section discusses how to edit VAT external transaction details.

### Editing VAT on Treasury External Transactions

Using the External Transactions page, you can add VAT-applicable external transactions, and specify VAT options for those transactions on the Treasury VAT Processing page. To access this page, you must complete the following fields on the External Transactions page:

- Bank ID
- Account # (account number)
- Transaction amount
- Transaction code
- Transaction date
- Transaction reference ID
- Accounting template ID

See "External Transactions Page (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Banks Setup and Processing*)".

When you click the VAT link, the system verifies that the business unit is VAT enabled, the Tran Code (transaction code) is *Fee*, and a VAT applicable accounting template is selected. (The system determines the default business unit and bank branch information for VAT by the specified bank account number, and uses this information to populate the Business Unit field on the External Transactions page.) The Treasury VAT Processing page displays only if these conditions are met.

## Pages Used to Edit VAT External Transaction Details

<b>Page Name</b>	<b>Definition Name</b>	<b>Navigation</b>	<b>Usage</b>
External Transactions	BNK_RCN_TRAN_UPDT	Banking, Reconcile Statements, External Transactions	Enter external transaction information and VAT information.
Treasury VAT Processing	TRV_VAT_TRAN_SEC	Click the VAT link on the Transactions Detail tab of the External Transactions page.	Specify VAT transaction details for an external transaction.

## Effects of Changing VAT Defaults

The Treasury VAT Processing page displays VAT Defaults in descending order of impact. When you change multiple VAT defaults and click the Adjust Affected VAT Defaults button, specific fields will or will not be adjusted. You should work top-down, clicking Adjust Affected VAT Defaults at the appropriate time(s) to avoid adjustments to VAT Defaults that you overrode but not did not memorize.

For example, if you override Supplier Registration Country and click Adjust Affected VAT Defaults, the system adjusts all VAT Defaults except Supplier Registration Country and Supplier Registration ID. Then you override Place of Supply Driver and click Adjust Affected VAT Defaults again. The system adjusts all VAT Defaults except Service Type, Place of Supply Driver, Supplier Registration Country, and Supplier Registration ID.

## Treasury VAT Processing Page

Use the Treasury VAT Processing page (TRV\_VAT\_TRAN\_SEC) to specify VAT transaction details for an external transaction.

## Navigation

Click the VAT link on the Transactions Detail tab of the External Transactions page.

### Image: Treasury VAT Processing page (1 of 2)

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Treasury VAT Processing page (1 of 2). You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

Treasury VAT Processing				
<a href="#">Return to External Transactions page</a>				
Bank ID	Account #	Reference	Tran Date	Accounting Template ID
00001	00000000001	EXT013	11/15/2000	BSP-BANKFEEVAT
VAT Entity FRA01V				
Expand All Sections		Collapse All Sections		
▼ Physical Nature				
Physical Nature Services				
▼ VAT Locations				
Bank Location Country FRA				
VAT Defaults				
▼ VAT Registrations				
Reporting Country FRA		Defaulting State		
Bank Registration Country FRA		Registration ID FR 57391338076		
Exception Type		Certificate ID		
▼ VAT Controls				
Calculation Type Inclusive		<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Prorate Non-Recoverable		
Rounding Rule Natural Round		<input type="checkbox"/> Allocate Non-Recoverable		
Use Type COMM				
Recovery Source Automatically calculated				
Rebate Source Automatically calculated				

**Image: Treasury VAT Processing page (2 of 2)**

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Treasury VAT Processing page (2 of 2). You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

**VAT Treatments**

Place of Supply Country  State

Treatment Domestic Service Purchase

**VAT Details**

Applicability Taxable

VAT Code FR1  Record Output VAT

Tax Rate 19.6000

Transaction Type FASD

**Adjust/Reset VAT Defaults**

Adjust Affected VAT Defaults Click this button if you want the system to adjust the VAT Defaults on this page affected by changes you have made to this page. All changes you have made to VAT Defaults that affect other VAT Defaults will be retained.

Levels This level only Reset All VAT Defaults Click this button if you want the system to reset all the VAT Defaults. All changes you have made to VAT Defaults will be lost.

**VAT Calculations**

Basis Amount	1000.00 FRF	Basis Amount Base	1000.00 FRF
Tax Rate	19.6000	Calculated Amount Base	196.00 FRF
Calculated Amount	196.00 FRF	Override VAT Amount Base	0.00 FRF
Override VAT Amount <input type="text" value="0.00"/>	FRF	Recorded Amount Base	196.00 FRF
Recorded Amount	196.00 FRF	Recovery Amount Base	196.00 FRF
Recovery Percent	100.00	Rebate Amount Base	0.00 FRF
Rebate Percent	0.00		
Recovery Amount	196.00 FRF		
Rebate Amount	0.00 FRF		

Recalculate

**Note:** You can edit fields on this page only if the accounting entry has not been reconciled.

**Expanding and Collapsing Sections**

To manage your VAT data more efficiently, you can expand and collapse sections on this VAT page.

**Expand All Sections**

Click the expand button to scroll to and access every section on the page. You can also expand one or more sections by clicking the arrow next to the section's name.

**Collapse All Sections**

Click to collapse all sections displaying only the header information. If you expand one or more sections, you can click the arrow next to the section's name to collapse the section.

**Drivers**

**Physical Nature**

Displays *Services*, as all Treasury VAT processing is only performed on services.

**Bank Location Country**

Displays the country in which the bank is located. The default value is the country that you specified for the bank branch location. This is analogous to the Ship From country.

## Registrations

### Reporting Country

Displays the VAT registration country of the beneficiary (*buyer*) of the service. The VAT defaulting routine retrieves the country value from the VAT entity, as either the service country, the business unit location country, or the country set as the home country.

### Defaulting State

Specify a state within the Reporting Country. If the Reporting Country tracks VAT by state, then VAT default values may be defined at the state level.

### Bank Registration Country

Displays the VAT registration country of the provider (*seller*) of the service—the registration country of the bank branch. The default value comes from the bank branch.

### Bank Registration ID

Displays both the country code and VAT registration number.

The two-character country code for the VAT registration country is display only. In addition to the three-character code (for example, Bank's Country) this two-character code is often required as part of the actual registration ID.

The system derives the default VAT registration ID number from the applicable bank branch. You can override this number.

However, PeopleCode validation routines ensure the number is valid according to country-specific checksum algorithms.

### Exception Type

Select from the following:

- *Exonerated*: Select if the VAT entity is permanently excused from paying VAT.
- *None*:
- *Suspended*: Select if the VAT entity is temporarily excused from paying VAT.

### Certificate ID

Enter the VAT certificate ID number issued by certain governments to show proof of an exception.

## VAT Controls

### Calculation Type

Indicates whether the amount that you enter on a transaction is *Inclusive* (default value) of the VAT or *Exclusive*. If *Exclusive* is selected, the system calculates the VAT charge and adds it to the transaction amount. However, if the calculation type is *Exclusive*, and if you change the VAT amount on the detail transaction, the system changes the transaction amount according to the calculation type. The system retrieves the field value using the VAT default hierarchy, but you can override it.

### Rounding Rule

Specify the rule you want to use:

- *Nat Rnd* (natural rounding): Amounts are rounded normally (up or down) to the precision specified for the currency code. For example, for a currency defined with two decimal places, 157.4659 would round up to 157.47, but 157.4649 would round down to 157.46.
- *Up*: Rounds up and limits the rounding precision to one additional decimal place. For example, for a currency defined with two decimal places, 157.4610 would round up to 157.47, but 157.4609 rounds to 157.46.
- *Down*: Rounds down.

The VAT rounding rule you specify affects the currency numbers stored in the database as well as how currency numbers print on the reports. The VAT rounding rule affects only VAT amounts.

**Allocate Non-Recoverable VAT**

If selected, indicates that the system allocates nonrecoverable VAT using ChartField Inheritance logic.

**Prorate Non-Recoverable VAT**

If selected, indicates that the system records nonrecoverable VAT to an expense account.

**Use Type**

Defaults from the VAT defaulting hierarchy. You can override the values in this field. The field is mandatory when Applicability is set to *Taxable*.

**Recovery Source**

Options specified on the VAT Default Setup page at the business unit level determine if you can edit this field.

- If the displayed value is *Automatic*, this VAT percentage is automatically calculated by the system. You can not override this value.
- If *Manual*, you can edit the Recovery Percent field in the Calculations group box.

**Rebate Source**

Options specified on the VAT Default Setup page at the business unit level determine if you can edit this field.

- If the displayed value is *Automatic*, this VAT percentage is automatically calculated by the system. You can not override this value.
- If *Manual*, you can edit the Rebate Percent field in the Calculations group box.

See [Treasury - VAT Options Page](#).

**VAT Treatments**

**Place of Supply Country**

Displays the country that is the supplier of record for the service.

<b>State</b>	Select a state within the defined Place of Supply Country. If the Place of Supply Country tracks VAT by state, then VAT default values may be defined at the state level.
<b>Treatment</b>	<p>VAT treatment determines which default values should be applied, and also controls, to some extent, the availability of some VAT-related fields.</p> <p>See "VAT Defaults (<i>PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Global Options and Reports</i>)".</p> <p>Select from the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Domestic Service Purchase</i></li> <li>• <i>EU Service Purchase</i></li> <li>• <i>Outside Scope</i></li> <li>• <i>Self-Assess Service Import</i></li> </ul>
<b>VAT Details</b>	
<b>Applicability</b>	<p>Displays a default value derived from the accounting template. You can override the values in this field.</p> <p>See "Taxable Status and VAT Rates (<i>PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Global Options and Reports</i>)".</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Exempt</i></li> <li>• <i>Exonerated</i></li> <li>• <i>N/A</i></li> <li>• <i>Outside</i></li> <li>• <i>Suspend</i></li> <li>• <i>Taxable</i></li> <li>• <i>VAT Only</i></li> </ul>
<b>VAT Code</b>	Displays the default value derived from the appropriate VAT defaulting hierarchy depending on the defined Treatment and/or defined Applicability. You can override the values in this field. When you click the Recalculate button, the system uses the VAT defaulting hierarchy to update fields in the Calculations group box.
<b>Record Output</b>	The default comes from the accounting template. You can edit this field.

Select this option to record and report one or more types of output VAT (Output, Output Intermediate, Output for Purchases) on transactions containing this VAT driver value.

### Transaction Type

Displays the assigned VAT transaction type. VAT transaction types classify and categorize transactions at a more detailed level for both VAT reporting and accounting.

See "VAT Reporting and Accounting (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Global Options and Reports*)".

See "Reviewing VAT Field Descriptions by VAT Driver (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Global Options and Reports*)".

See "Understanding VAT Transaction Type Setup (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Global Options and Reports*)".

## Adjust or Reset VAT Defaults

Adjusting or resetting VAT defaults will only affect the fields within this VAT Defaults group box:

- Adjust Affected VAT Defaults

If you changed any fields on this page, these changes may impact VAT defaults on this page. For accuracy and consistency, click this button if you want the system to adjust the VAT defaults that are affected by your changes. All changes you have made to VAT Defaults on this page that affect other VAT Defaults on this page will be retained.

Click the *i* (information) button to list the fields that will be adjusted.

---

**Note:** PeopleSoft recommends that you always click the Adjust Affected VAT Defaults button after changing any defaults on the VAT page.

---

- Levels

The levels affected when you click the Reset All VAT Defaults button may be different depending the application you are working with and the type of VAT page you are working on.

Select the level:

- *All lower levels*

Select this field value to reset all VAT defaults at lower levels for this page.

---

**Note:** Reset completely redetermines the VAT defaults. This does not necessarily mean they will be reset to their original values. For example, the user may not have changed any VAT default values, but if a VAT driver field was changed, pressing Reset will redetermine all defaults based on the new driver value.

---

- *This and all lower levels*

Select this field value to reset all VAT defaults on this VAT page and at any lower levels of this page.

- *This level only*

Select this field value to reset all VAT defaults on this VAT page.

- **Reset All VAT Defaults**

Click this button if you want the system to reset the VAT defaults based the Levels value you selected. Any changes you have previously made to VAT defaults will be lost.

## VAT Calculations

Except for Entered Amount, all fields in this section are display only and the Recalculate function populates them.

<b>Basis Amount</b>	Displays the VAT basis amount in transaction currency.
<b>Basis Amount Base</b>	Displays the VAT basis amount in the base currency.
<b>Tax Rate</b>	Displays the VAT tax rate.
<b>Calculated Amount</b>	Displays the calculated VAT amount in the transaction currency.
<b>Calculated Amount Base</b>	Displays the calculated VAT amount in base currency. The system uses the transaction currency for the entered VAT amount, based on the exchange rate that is applicable to the transaction.
<b>Override VAT Amount</b>	Enter the override amount to recalculate the VAT amount. This amount displays in the transaction currency.
<b>Override VAT Amount</b>	Displays the recalculated override VAT amount in the base currency.
<b>Recorded Amount</b>	Displays the transaction currency amount stored in the system VAT tables.
<b>Recorded Amount Base</b>	Displays the base currency amount stored in the system VAT tables.
<b>Recovery Percent</b>	Displays a system-calculated value, based on the selected Use Type.
<b>Rebate Percent</b>	Displays a system-calculated value, based on the selected VAT Use Type.
<b>Recovery Amount</b>	Displays the VAT recovery amount in the transaction currency.
<b>Recovery Amount Base</b>	Displays the VAT recovery amount in the base currency
<b>Rebate Amount</b>	Displays the calculated VAT rebate amount in the transaction currency.
<b>Rebate Amount Base</b>	Displays the calculated VAT rebate amount in the base currency.

See "VAT Recoverability (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Global Options and Reports*)".

## Creating VAT Transactions for Fees

The Enter Fees page generates various types of fees, as opposed to the External Transactions page, which only generates bank statement fees. To generate VAT, you first define VAT options for specific fee codes. When you create fee entries with the VAT-enabled fee codes, the system automatically generates VAT accounting and displays it on the fee entry's Treasury VAT Processing page.

This section discusses how to:

1. Define VAT-applicable fee codes.
2. Enter fees.
3. View VAT options for a fee entry.

### Pages Used to Create VAT Transactions for Fees

<i>Page Name</i>	<i>Definition Name</i>	<i>Navigation</i>	<i>Usage</i>
Fee Codes	FA_FEE_CD_PNL	Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Treasury, Fee Codes, Fee Codes	Set up fee codes.
Enter Fees	FEE_GENERATOR_PNL	Cash Management, Fees and Transfers, Enter Fees, Enter Fees	Create fees for deal, facility, EFT, and letter of credit sources.
Treasury VAT Processing	TRV_VAT_FEE_SEC	Click VAT on the Enter Fees page.	Specify VAT transaction details for a fee. This page displays only when the specified fee code is VAT applicable.  This page is the same as the Treasury VAT Processing page for external transactions.

## Creating VAT Transactions Using Automatic Reconciliation

This section discusses creating VAT using PeopleSoft Automatic Reconciliation.

The system creates VAT automatically when you force reconcile a fee or interest through reconciliation, if the accounting template has a VAT applicable line. The force reconciliation function inserts transactions into the Bank Reconciliation Transaction table (BNK\_RCN\_TRAN) and the VAT record (TRV\_VAT\_TRAN). It also generates a Treasury accounting event. For VAT fees to be reconciled on the bank side and system side, you must select a statement activity type for the bank statement processing template.

**Note:** For VAT applicable fees to display on the Automatic Reconciliation Exceptions page, you must first process the transactions using the Automatic Reconciliation Manager page.

## Page Used to Create VAT Using Automatic Reconciliation

<i>Page Name</i>	<i>Definition Name</i>	<i>Navigation</i>	<i>Usage</i>
Automatic Reconciliation Exceptions	BNK_RCN_VUE_UNR	Banking, Analyze Exceptions, Auto Reconciliation Exceptions	Force an automatic reconciliation to process VAT-applicable transactions.

### Related Links

"Automatic Reconciliation Page (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Banks Setup and Processing*)"

## Forcing the Reconciliation of VAT-Applicable Transactions

Use the Automatic Reconciliation Exceptions page (BNK\_RCN\_VUE\_UNR) to force an automatic reconciliation to process VAT-applicable transactions.

### Navigation

Banking, Analyze Exceptions, Auto Reconciliation Exceptions

---

**Note:** For VAT applicable fees to be created and reconciled on the Automatic Reconciliation Exception page, the VAT Treatment must be *Inclusive*. Reconciliation does not occur if the system algorithm determines the VAT Treatment is *Exclusive*. To reconcile these types of fees, you must enter them on the External Transactions page, and then use the Semi Manual Reconciliation page to complete the reconciliation.

---

### Related Links

"Understanding Reconciliation Exceptions (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Banks Setup and Processing*)"

---

## Managing VAT Accounting

The only VAT accounting activity you need to perform is setting the VAT option on the accounting template. To enable automated VAT processing, VAT attributes and VAT amounts are recorded on a shadow table (VAT Transaction Record table, TRV\_VAT\_TRAN) associated with the VAT accounting lines. This process works in the background. Once you process VAT transactions through Automated Accounting process (TR\_ACCTG), the system automatically generates the necessary accounting entries and VAT accounting lines based on data in the VAT Transaction Record.

This section discusses how to:

1. Process VAT entries with Automated Accounting.
2. Review VAT accounting entries.
3. Review Treasury VAT information.

## Pages Used to Manage VAT Accounting

<b>Page Name</b>	<b>Definition Name</b>	<b>Navigation</b>	<b>Usage</b>
Automated Accounting	TRA_ACCTG_REQ	Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Automated Accounting	Run the Automated Accounting process, which creates accounting entries and prepares them for Journal Generator process (FSPGJGEN).
Accounting Summary	TRA_ENT_SUM_PNL	Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Accounting Summary	View line by line accounting events. You can retrieve information according to ad-hoc search criteria and navigate to all functional areas of accounting.
Accounting Entries	TRA_ACCTG_LINE_1	Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Accounting Entries  Click VAT on the Accounting Entries tab.	Review and possibly adjust automated accounting entries, or create manual accounting entries online.
Treasury VAT Information	TRV_ACCTG_LINE_VAT	Click VAT on the Accounting Entries – Accounting Entries tab.	Use the Treasury VAT Information page to view VAT information for a specific accounting line.

## Processing VAT with Automated Accounting

Use the Automated Accounting page (TRA\_ACCTG\_REQ) to run the Automated Accounting process, which creates accounting entries and prepares them for Journal Generator process (FSPGJGEN).

### Navigation

Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Automated Accounting

To process VAT:

1. Specify the Business Unit and Template.
2. Enter a Fiscal Year and Period, or specify an Acctg Events End Date (accounting events end date).
3. Select the Bank Stmt/Trans (bank statement/transaction), Facility Fees , Deal Fees , L/C (letter of credit), or EFT Fees check boxes.

### Related Links

"Automatic Reconciliation Page (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Banks Setup and Processing*)"

## Reviewing VAT Accounting Entries

Use the Accounting Entries page (TRA\_ACCTG\_LINE\_1) to review and possibly adjust automated accounting entries, or create manual accounting entries online.

## Navigation

Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Accounting Entries

Click VAT on the Accounting Entries tab.

### Image: Line Detail tab - Treasury Accounting Entries page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Line Detail tab - Treasury Accounting Entries page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

**Accounting Entries**

Unit FRA01      Accounting ID 000000024  
 Bank ID 00001      Account # 0000000001  
 Transaction Reference ID EXT018  
 Acctg Date 11/15/2000      Description OFFLINE ACCOUNTING BUILD - BSP  
 \*Status Final  
 Error Status None  
 Acctg Template       Doc Type   
 Combo Template TREASURY       Requires Review  
 Created By      Last Changed By  
 Create Dttm      Last Dttm

---

**Summary Totals**

1,175.00 DRs      -1,175.00 CRs      0.00 Net

**Accounting Entries**      Personalize | Find | |      First 1-3 of 3 Last

Line Detail | Chartfields | Additional Details | Journal | Document Sequencing

Line	GL Unit	Amount	Currency	Exchg Rate	Exch Rt Dtl	Base Amount	Base Currency	IU Anchor		
1	FRA01	-1,175.00	FRF	1.00000000		-1,175.00	FRF	<input type="checkbox"/>		
2	FRA01	1,000.00	FRF	1.00000000		1,000.00	FRF	<input type="checkbox"/>	VAT	
3	FRA01	175.00	FRF	1.00000000		175.00	FRF	<input type="checkbox"/>	VAT	

Update Accounting      Attachments (0)

When the Automated Accounting process is complete, you can review the created accounting entries and VAT transactions. The VAT link displays on the Accounting Entries page when the accounting line has VAT information.

### Line

As the example above shows, the Automated Accounting process created three accounting entries. Line 3 is the VAT amount. Click a Line link to access the Accounting Entries page and review the VAT transaction detail.

---

**Note:** The number of VAT accounting lines created varies, depending on the accounting scenario.

---

**Note:** The number and types of accounting entries depends on the VAT Treatment and whether or not any of the VAT is recoverable or subject to rebate.

---

The system obtains the ChartFields used to create each accounting entry from the VAT accounting template (which is defined by VAT Code, VAT Transaction Type, and optionally the General Ledger business unit). Additionally, for nonrecoverable VAT, the ChartFields used are also dependent upon whether or not the nonrecoverable amount is being prorated or allocated to the associated expense account. If the nonrecoverable amount is not prorated or allocated to the associated expense account, the system obtains the non-account ChartFields from the VAT accounting template.

In situations when the VAT accounting entries have two different business units—one for the Transaction General Ledger business unit (Unit field in the Accounting Entries page header), and one for the Distribution General Ledger business unit (GL Unit field in Accounting Entries - Line Detail tab), you can direct the system to inherit either business unit. You specify this option during implementation on the VAT Business Unit Option page (VAT\_BU\_OPT). During the Automated Accounting process, if the system registers two different business units in use, it refers to the options specified on this page. The system then enters the correct inherited business unit into the GL Unit field of each entered distribution line of the system generated VAT accounting entries.

---

**Note:** Accounting entries that the Automated Accounting process creates and distributes to General Ledger are display only and you *cannot* adjust them on this page. You must adjust VAT accounting through the General Ledger journal.

---

### **Related Links**

[Automated Accounting Page](#)

"Understanding General Ledger Journal Entries (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: General Ledger*)"

"Understanding VAT (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Global Options and Reports*)"

## **Treasury VAT Information Page**

Use the Treasury VAT Information page (TRV\_ACCTG\_LINE\_VAT) to use the Treasury VAT Information page to view VAT information for a specific accounting line.

## Navigation

Click VAT on the Accounting Entries – Accounting Entries tab.

### Image: Treasury VAT Information page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Treasury VAT Information page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

VAT Amounts			
VAT Rate	17.5000	Entered VAT Amount	0.00
VAT Amount	175.00	Entered VAT Base Amount	0.00
VAT Base Amount	175.00	VAT Calculated Amount	175.00
VAT Basis Amount	1,000.00	VAT Calculated Base Amount	175.00
VAT Basis Base Amount	1,000.00	VAT Rebate Amount	0.00
VAT Recovery Amount	175.00	VAT Rebate Base Amount	0.00
VAT Recovery Base Amount	175.00		

**Note:** Treasury Management VAT functionality is currently limited to VAT on bank fees and other fees, recording only input VAT or the combination of input and output VAT. As such, it is unlikely that you will be using either the *VO* or *VO NT* types for your VAT transactions.

#### VAT Applicability

Displays the default value derived from the accounting template.

#### Record Input VAT

This field is based on the defined VAT treatment. This check box is selected by default.

#### Record Output VAT

This check box is selected by default if the defined VAT treatment is *EU Services Purchases* or *Self-Assessed Services Imports*.

#### VAT Code

Displays the default value derived from the appropriate VAT defaulting hierarchy—this is also dependent on the VAT Treatment and/or VAT Applicability.

#### VAT Transaction Type

Displays the default value derived from the appropriate VAT defaulting hierarchy—this is also dependent on the VAT Treatment and/or VAT Applicability.

<b>VAT Calculation Type</b>	Displays <i>Inclusive</i> or <i>Exclusive</i> .
<b>VAT Declaration Date</b>	Displays the default value derived from the transaction date.
<b>Accounting Entry Type</b>	Displays the VAT accounting entry type.  VAT distribution account types define the different types of VAT accounting entries that may be required. Treasury Management only uses the following VAT distribution account types: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>VI</i>: VAT Input</li> <li>• <i>VIR</i>: VAT Input Recoverable</li> <li>• <i>VIN</i>: VAT Input Non-Recoverable</li> <li>• <i>VIB</i>: VAT Input Rebate</li> <li>• <i>VINT</i>: VAT Input Non-Taxable</li> <li>• <i>VOP</i>: VAT Output on Purchase</li> <li>• <i>VO</i>: VAT Output</li> <li>• <i>VONT</i>: VAT Output Non-Taxable.</li> </ul>
<b>Expense Non-Recov VAT (expense nonrecoverable VAT)</b>	Displays one of the following values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Y</i> (yes): Indicates the system expenses nonrecoverable VAT to the expense account.</li> <li>• <i>N</i> (no): Indicates the system separates nonrecoverable VAT.</li> </ul>
<b>Distribution Status</b>	Indicates if the transaction has been loaded to the VAT Transaction Loader. Displays one of the following values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>DISTRIBUTED</i>: Indicates the transaction has been loaded.</li> <li>• <i>IGNORE</i>: Indicates the system is not to load the transaction.</li> <li>• <i>NOT DISTRIBUTED</i>: Indicates the transaction is eligible to be loaded, but has not yet been loaded.</li> <li>• <i>UNDEFINED</i>: Indicates the transaction requires additional processing before the system transfers it to the loader.</li> </ul>
<b>VAT Rate</b>	Displays the VAT percentage that is applied to the transaction.
<b>VAT Amount</b>	Displays the VAT amount in the transaction currency.
<b>VAT Base Amount</b>	Displays the VAT amount in the base currency.
<b>VAT Basis Amount</b>	Displays the VAT basis amount in transaction currency.
<b>VAT Basis Base Amount</b>	Displays the VAT basis amount in the base currency.
<b>VAT Recovery Amount</b>	Displays the VAT recovery amount in the transaction currency.

<b>VAT Recovery Base Amount</b>	Displays the VAT recovery amount in the base currency.
<b>Entered VAT Amount</b>	The default value is zero (0). If either the VAT calculation type is <i>Inclusive</i> , or both Record Input VAT and Record Output VAT check boxes are selected, this field is set to zero and unavailable. You can override this default value by selecting <i>Exclusive</i> for the calculation type.  This is the actual VAT amount in transaction currency that prints on the external document. If it is not equal to the calculated VAT amount (and not equal to zero), tolerance checking is performed.
<b>Entered VAT Base Amount</b>	Displays the entered VAT amount in base currency. The system uses the transaction currency for the entered VAT amount, based on the exchange rate that is applicable to the transaction.
<b>VAT Calculated Amount</b>	Displays the calculated VAT amount in the transaction currency.
<b>VAT Calculated Base Amount</b>	Displays the calculated VAT amount in the base currency.
<b>VAT Rebate Amount</b>	Displays the calculated VAT rebate amount in the transaction currency.
<b>VAT Rebate Base Amount</b>	Displays the calculated VAT rebate amount in the base currency.

---

**Note:** This page is display only. Once the Automated Accounting process creates the VAT accounting entries and distributes them to General Ledger, you cannot adjust the entries on a Treasury application page. You must use the General Ledger Journal Entry page to adjust VAT accounting entries.

---

### Related Links

[Editing VAT External Transaction Details](#)

"Editing Journal Entries (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: General Ledger*)"

"VAT Environment Setup (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Global Options and Reports*)"

---

## Processing Final Treasury Management VAT Transactions

Once you have run all the individual processes to finalize the transactions, you should:

1. Run the VAT Transaction Loader process (FS\_VATUPDFS) to load the VAT information into the VAT Transaction Table.
2. Run the VAT Report Extract process (VAT1001) to extract the data from the VAT Transaction Tables to reporting tables, where the data are available for final reporting to the tax authorities.

Once the VAT Report Extract process is complete, you are ready to create a variety of reports on your VAT information. We discuss this information in the *PeopleSoft Global Options and Reports 9.1 PeopleBook*.

**Related Links**

"Loading the VAT Transaction Table (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Global Options and Reports*)"

"Generating VAT Reports (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Global Options and Reports*)"

## Chapter 14

# Performing In-House Banking Activities

---

## Prerequisites

Before you can perform in-house banking (IHB) activities, you must first:

- Set up internal banks for each business unit you intend to use to internally exchange funds.
- Define internal account information. On the Internal Account Information page you must:
  - Generate the schedule defined on Internal Account Information page (required to run interest accrual calculation process).
  - Specify both debit and credit rate index information (required to run interest accrual calculation and interest schedule generation processes).
  - Adjust the opening balances for both Service and Owner of an internal account, as needed. (The opening balances default to zero on setup.)
- Check that an accounting template that is setup for internal account interest accruals is installed.

## Related Links

"Defining Internal Account Information (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Banks Setup and Processing*)"

"Setting Up Bank Statement Processing (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Financial Gateway*)"

---

## Managing In-House Banking Activities

This section discusses how to:

- Automatically calculate interest accruals using the IHB Interest Accruals (in-house banking interest accruals) Application Engine process (TR\_TRINTACU).
- View activity on your internal accounts.
- Generate schedules for interest accrual.

## Pages Used to Manage In-House Banking Activities

Page Name	Definition Name	Navigation	Usage
Generate Schedules	SCHEDULE_CREATE	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Click Generate Schedule on the Internal Accounts - Account Information page.</li> <li>Set Up Financials/Supply Chain, Product Related, Treasury, Generate Schedules</li> </ul>	Create an interest accrual schedule. The frequency of the schedule determines the frequency with which the interest is posted to the internal account balance.
Calculate Interest Accruals	TR_AE_RUNCNTL	Cash Management, In-House Banking, Calculate Interest Accruals	Run the IHB Interest Accruals process to calculate the amount of interest.
Internal Account Activity	BNK_INT_ACCT_BAL	Cash Management, In-House Banking, Review Internal Account Activity	View data that are related to activity on your internal accounts.

### Calculate Interest Accruals Page

Use the Calculate Interest Accruals page (TR\_AE\_RUNCNTL) to run the IHB Interest Accruals process to calculate the amount of interest.

#### Navigation

Cash Management, In-House Banking, Calculate Interest Accruals

#### Image: Calculate Interest Accruals page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Calculate Interest Accruals page. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

The screenshot shows the 'Calculate Interest Accruals' page with the following details:

- User ID:** DVP1
- Run Control ID:** CALC\_INT\_ACCRUALS
- Process Monitor:** (button)
- Program Name:** TR\_TRINTACU
- IHB Interest Accruals:** (text)
- Last Run:** (button)
- Process Origin:** Other Source
- Process Instance:** (text)
- Status:** Not Yet Processed
- Process Frequency:** Process Once (dropdown)
- Market:** United States (dropdown)
- Parameters:** (grid with search and navigation buttons)
- State Record:** TR\_INTACU\_AET
- Bind Variable Name:** ACCTG\_TMPL\_ID (with search icon)
- Value:** INTERNAL\_INTACC (with search icon)

#### Bind Variable Name and Value/Date

In the Parameters grid is an Application Engine run control function that enables you to specify the variable for which you are setting the value. You can add records and specify as many bind variable names as are pertinent to the job.

- ACCT\_TMPL\_ID:** When you use this bind variable name, enter an accounting template in the corresponding Value field. PeopleSoft provides *INTERNAL\_INTACC* as a default accounting template.

- *END\_DT*: When you use this bind variable name, enter an end date in the Date field. Accounting events and cash flow entries will be created with the specified end date. The system processes and updates records only once for the end date.

---

## Generating the In-House Bank Statement Report

This report shows balance, debit, credit, and activity information for a selected bank over a specified date range.

### Page Used to Generate the In-House Bank Statement Report

<i>Page Name</i>	<i>Definition Name</i>	<i>Navigation</i>	<i>Usage</i>
In-House Bank Statement	RUN_TRC3005	Cash Management, In-House Banking, In-House Bank Statements	Lists transaction and interest accrual activity for a specified bank and account during a defined time frame.



# Using the Treasury Dashboard

---

## Understanding the Treasury Dashboard

Organizations face complex challenges in controlling and streamlining financial processes in order to improve the bottom line. The lack of visibility into cash positions and daily operational tasks on the part of Treasury managers has created a need for a dashboard to efficiently manage their return on cash. The Treasury Dashboard will provide managers with a unique view of the cash position for the organization. The dashboard provides the cash position by bank or by currency, investment mix, department mix and payment by source. The Treasury Dashboard is a necessary business intelligence tool that enables managers to effectively manage cash within their organizations, saving them time and money. Dashboards streamline the work of the treasurer by providing enormous value as well as a central place to monitor the cash position, payments and investments.

The Treasury Dashboard consists of a series of components which display cash management, deal management, and operational data in summary, detail, and chart formats. These components enable executives and managers to gain a clear visual concept of the financial state of the organization in order to manage and monitor spending in real time. The Treasury Dashboard consists of these dashboards:

- Cash Management Dashboard
  - Cash Position by Bank
  - Cash Position by Transaction Currency
  - Cash Position by Source Set
  - Cash Position by Business Unit
  - Cash Position by Worksheet Line Item
- Deal Management Dashboard
  - Investment Mix
  - Debt Mix
  - Fixed versus Floating Rate Investments
  - Fixed versus Floating Rate Debt
  - Open Foreign Exchange Contracts
- Payment Dashboard
  - Payments by Source

- Payments by Status
  - Payments by Bank
  - Payments by Payment Method
- 
- Bank Statement Load Dashboard

## Cash Management Dashboard

The Cash Management Dashboard hosts the following charts:

- Cash Position by Bank
- Cash Position by Transaction Currency
- Cash Position by Source Set
- Cash Position by Business Unit
- Cash Position by Worksheet Line Item

To display the Cash Position data, you set up a configuration to identify the worksheet, date range, position source set, and position currency.

Cash Position chart displays data that are available for the configured values. It does not run the cash position process.

### Cash Position by Bank

Cash Position by Bank chart displays cash position amounts for each bank. Detail information appears in a grid when you click the chart.

### Cash Position by Transaction Currency

The Cash Position by Transaction Currency chart displays the cash position amounts based on each type of currency. Detail information appears in a grid when you click the chart.

### Cash Position by Source Set

The Cash Position by Source Set chart displays the cash position amount for the source set for a period of time. Detail information appears in a grid when you click the chart.

### Cash Position by Business Unit

Cash Position by Business Unit chart displays cash position amounts for each Business Unit. Detail information appears in a grid when you click the chart.

### Cash Position by Worksheet Line Item

Cash Position by Worksheet Line Item chart displays cash position amounts for each line item. Detail information appears in a grid when you click the chart.

## Deal Management Dashboard

The Deal Management Dashboard hosts the following charts:

- Investment Mix
- Debt Mix
- Fixed versus Floating Rate Investments
- Fixed versus Floating Rate Debt
- Open Foreign Exchange Contracts

You access the Dashboard Configuration - Deals page to identify the type of data that you want to display on Deal dashboards. This configuration requires that you enter a start and end date and then select a previously defined time interval. You select the time interval and apply a previously defined calendar to this interval. You also enter the number of days that would classify an investment/debt as short term, select the currency that you want to display on each of the Deal Management dashboards, and select the exchange rate information.

### Investment Mix

The Investment Mix chart can be used to compare the amounts of an organization's long and short term investments based on the time interval selected and the number of days that classify an investment as short term entered when you set up the configuration for this dashboard. An organization's investments may include long and short term investment deals in various forms of securities. These data are derived from investments that are set up for an organization in PeopleSoft Deal Management.

Detail information appears in a grid when you click the chart.

### Debt Mix

The Debt Mix chart can be used to compare the amounts of long term and short term debt held by your organization based on the time series that you select and the number of days that you enter that qualify a debt as short term on the Dashboard Configuration - Deals page.

Detail information appears in a grid when you click the chart.

### Fixed versus Floating Rate Investments

An investment that earns money based on a fixed interest rate means that the amount of interest earned on the investment by the organization is based on an interest rate that typically stays the same over the life of the investment. An investment that earns money based on a floating interest rate means that the amount of interest earned on the investment over the life of the investment changes periodically.

The Fixed versus Floating Rate Investments chart displays the organization's investments in fixed interest rate earning investments, and floating interest rate earning investments over a specific period of time. This time period is based on a time series that you select for this dashboard on the Dashboard Configuration - Deals page.

Detail information appears in a grid when you click the chart.

## Fixed versus Floating Rate Debt

The Fixed versus Floating Rate Debt chart displays an organization's borrowings on fixed rate basis and floating rate basis over a specified period of time. This time period is based on a time series that you select for this dashboard on the Dashboard Configuration - Deals page.

Detail information appears in a grid when you click the chart.

## Open Foreign Exchange Contracts

A foreign exchange contract is a commitment to buy or sell a specified amount of foreign currency on a fixed date and rate of exchange. These contracts are used usually by importers as a hedge against exchange rate inflation. The Open Foreign Exchange Contracts chart displays the amount of open foreign currency exchange contract bought or sold by an organization.

Detail information appears in a grid when you click the chart.

See "Entering Foreign Exchange Deals Examples (*PeopleSoft FSCM 9.2: Deal Management*)".

## Operational Dashboards

The operational dashboards include these:

- Payments Dashboard
- Bank Statement Load Dashboard

The Payments Dashboard displays total payment amounts based on a specified payment source, payment status, bank, and payment method.

### Payments by Source Chart

The Payments by Source Dashboard enables you to select a business unit and specify a date or range of dates on the Dashboard Configuration - Payments by Source page and display the total amount of payments depending on whether the source of the payments in the system is AP (accounts payable), AR (accounts receivable), BPEL (BPEL source), CM (cash management), DM (deal management), or Expenses.

Detail information appears in a grid when you click the chart.

### Payments by Status Chart

The Payments by Status chart enables you to select a business unit and specify a date or range of dates on the page and display the total amount of payments based the payment status of each payment.

Detail information appears in a grid when you click the chart.

### Payments by Bank Chart

The Payments by Bank chart enables you to select a business unit and a date or range of dates and display the total amount of payments based on each bank affiliated with your organization.

Detail information appears in a grid when you click the chart.

## Payments by Payment Method Chart

The Payments by Payment Method chart enables you to select a business unit and a date or range of dates and display the total amount of payments based on the payment method used, such as ACH (Automated Clearing House), EFT (electronic file transfer), and wire transfer.

Detail information appears in a grid when you click the chart.

## Status of Bank Statement Load Chart

The loading of bank statement information is an integral part of the reconciliation, bank statement accounting, and cash position processes. The system processes previous day statements that are used for reconciliation and accounting, current day statements for cash position worksheets, and account analysis statements for bank fee analysis. The configuration page allows you to exclude a Bank Statement Type or Bank Information.

The Status of Bank Statement Load chart displays the status of Bank Statements by bank that are not loaded, ready to be reconciled, and completed reconciliation.

Detail information appears in a grid when you click the chart.

---

## Configuring and Displaying Treasury Dashboards

This section discusses how to configure and display Treasury Dashboards.

### Pages Used to Configure and Display Treasury Dashboards

<i>Page Name</i>	<i>Definition Name</i>	<i>Navigation</i>	<i>Usage</i>
Dashboard Configuration - Cash Position	TR_DASH_CP_CFG	Treasury Dashboards  Click the Cash Forecast Trend link, or after displaying the charts, click the Update Configuration link on the Treasury Dashboards page.	Configure the Cash Management dashboard to display cash position data in these charts: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Cash Position by Bank</li> <li>• Cash Position by Transaction Currency</li> <li>• Cash Position by Source Set</li> <li>• Cash Position by Business Unit</li> <li>• Cash Position by Worksheet Line Item</li> </ul>

<b>Page Name</b>	<b>Definition Name</b>	<b>Navigation</b>	<b>Usage</b>
Dashboard Configuration - Bank Statement Load	TR_DASH_BSL_CFG	Treasury Dashboards  Click the Status of Bank Statement Loads link, or after displaying the chart, click the Update Configuration link on the Treasury Dashboards page.	Configure the dashboard to display the Status of Bank Statement Loads chart.
Dashboard Configuration - Payment by Source	TR_DASH_02_CFG	Treasury Dashboards  Click the Payments link or, after displaying the Dashboard, click the Update Configuration link on the Treasury Dashboards page.	Configure the Payments dashboard to display these charts: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Payments by Payment Source</li> <li>• Payments by Payment Status</li> <li>• Payments by Bank</li> <li>• Payments by Payment Method</li> </ul>
Dashboard Configuration - Deals	TR_DASH_03_CFG	Treasury Dashboards  Click the Deals link, or after displaying the charts, click the Update Configuration link on the Treasury Dashboards page.	Configure the Deals dashboard to display these charts: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Investment Mix</li> <li>• Debt Mix</li> <li>• Fixed versus Floating Rate Investments</li> <li>• Fixed versus Floating Rate Debt</li> <li>• Open Foreign Exchange Contracts</li> </ul>
Dashboard Configuration - Time Series	TR_DASH_03_CFG2	Click the Define Time Series link on the Dashboard Configuration - Deals page.	Select a time series to apply to the Fixed vs. Floating Rate Investments and Fixed vs. Floating Rate Debt charts.

## Dashboard Configuration - Cash Position Page

Use the Dashboard Configuration - Cash Position by Bank page (TR\_DASH\_01\_CFG) to configure the Cash Management dashboard to display cash position data.

## Navigation

Treasury Dashboards

Click the Cash Forecast Trend link.

### Image: Dashboard Configuration - Cash Position page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Dashboard Configuration - Cash Position page.

The screenshot shows a configuration page for 'Cash Position'. The fields are arranged in two columns. The first column contains 'SetID' (SHARE), 'Value From Date' (10/01/2012), 'Position Source Set' (FORECAST), and 'Transaction Currency'. The second column contains 'Worksheet ID' (CASH FORECAST), 'Value To Date' (10/05/2012), and 'Position Currency' (USD). Each field has a search icon. At the bottom, there are three navigation links: 'Save and go back to dashboard', 'Return to dashboard', and 'Return to menu'.

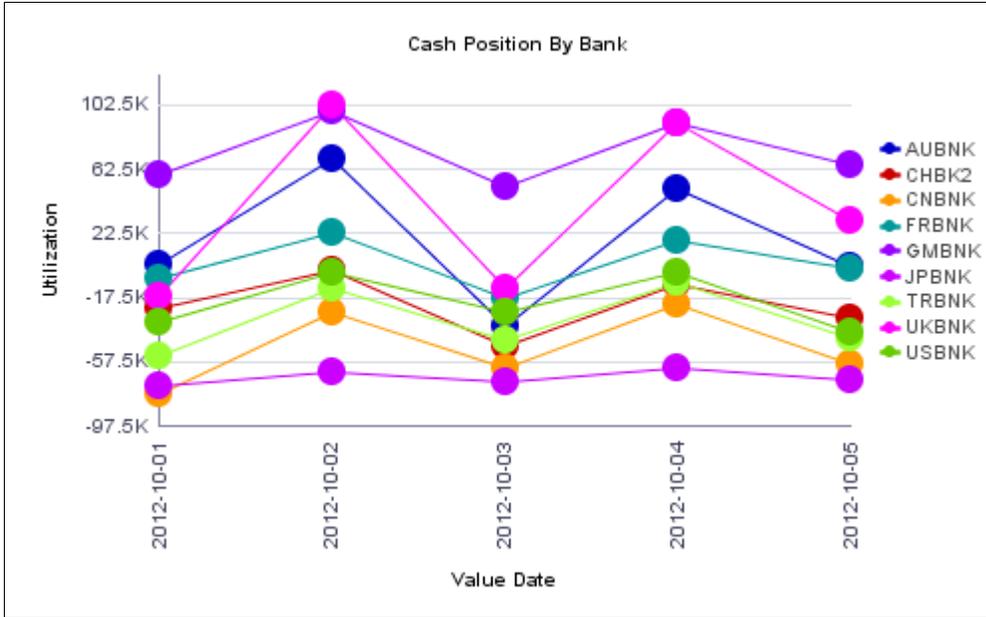
<b>Worksheet ID</b>	Identify the worksheet.
<b>Value From Date and Value To Date</b>	Identify the date range.
<b>Position Source Set</b>	Enter the position source set.
<b>Position Currency</b>	Enter the position currency.
<b>Transaction Currency</b>	Select the currency that you want to appear on the Cash Position by Bank or Cash Position by Transaction Currency chart.
<b>Save and go back to dashboard</b>	Click this link to save the configuration and return to the Treasury Dashboards page to display the selected dashboard based on the configuration.
<b>Return to dashboard</b>	Click this link to return to the selected dashboard on the Treasury Dashboards page after the configuration has been saved.
<b>Return to menu</b>	Click this link to return to the Treasury Dashboards menu.

### Cash Position By Bank Chart

Use the Cash Position By Bank chart to see the cash position by bank.

**Image: Cash Position By Bank chart**

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Cash Position By Bank chart.



Click on a chart point to access detail information. The information appears in a grid in a new window.

**Image: Cash Position by Bank detail grid**

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Cash Position by Bank detail grid.

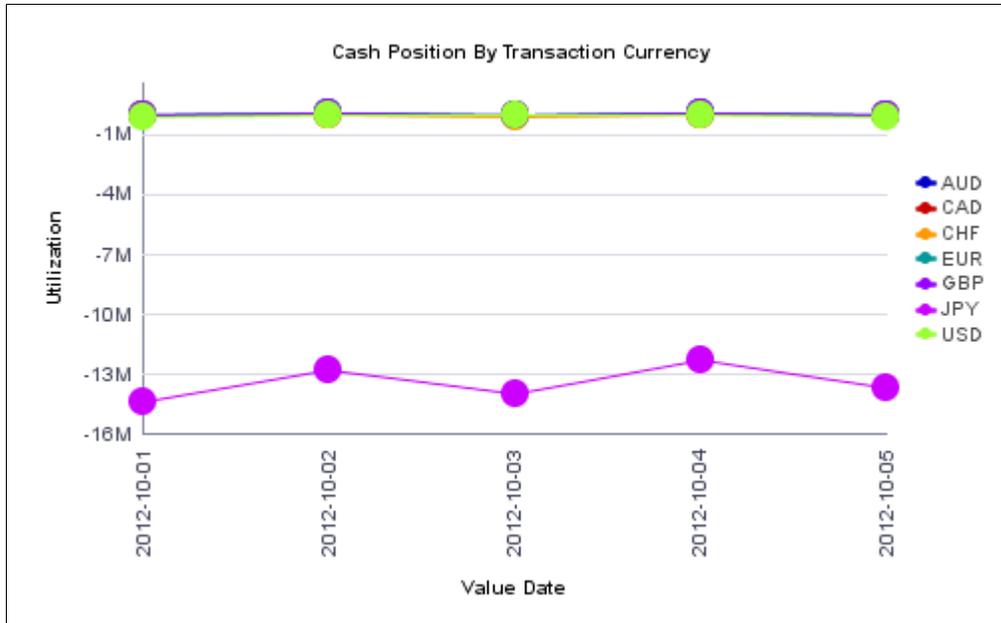
Cash Position by Bank							
Detail							
SetID	Cash Flows Worksheet ID	Position Source Set	Display Values	Position Currency	Value Date	Utilization	
1	SHARE	CASH FORECAST	FORECAST	SHARE FRBNK	USD	10/04/2012	17,577.26
<b>Total</b>							17,577.26

### Cash Position by Transaction Currency Chart

Use the Cash Position by Transaction Currency chart to see the cash position by transaction currency.

**Image: Cash Position By Transaction Currency chart**

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Cash Position By Transaction Currency chart.



Click on a chart point to access detail information. The information appears in a grid in a new window.

**Image: Cash Position by Currency detail grid**

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Treasury Dashboards - Cash Position by Currency page (2 of 4).

Cash Position by Currency					
Detail				Personalize   Find   View All   [Print Icon]   First 1 of 1 Last	
SetID	Cash Flows Worksheet ID	Position Source Set	Currency Code	Value Date	Utilization
1 SHARE	CASH FORECAST	FORECAST	JPY	10/04/2012	-12,237,399
Total					-12,237,399

### Cash Position by Source Set Chart

Use the Cash Position by Source Set chart to see the cash position amount for the source set for a period of time.

Click on a chart point to access detail information. The information appears in a grid in a new window.

### Cash Position by Business Unit Chart

Use the Cash Position by Business Unit chart to see cash position amounts for each Business Unit.

Click on a chart point to access detail information. The information appears in a grid in a new window.

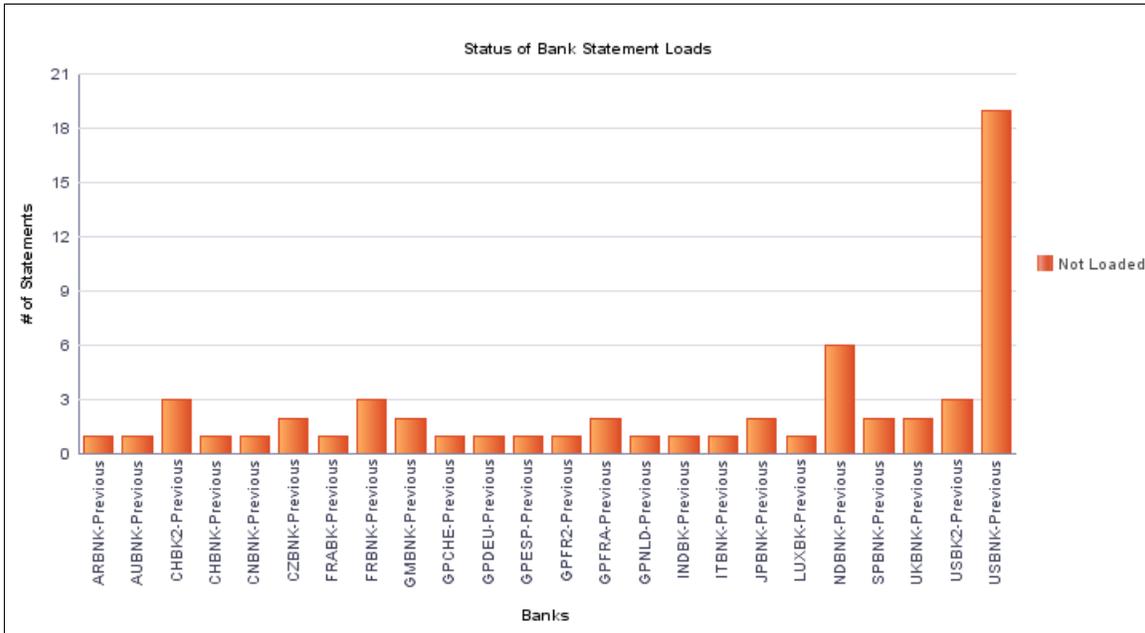


### Status of Bank Statement Loads Chart

Use the Status of Bank Statement Loads chart to see the number of Bank Statements by bank that are not loaded, ready to be reconciled, and completed reconciliation.

#### Image: Status of Bank Statement Loads chart

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Status of Bank Statement Loads chart.



Click on a chart bar to access detail information. The information appears in a grid in a new window.

#### Image: Bank Statement Load detail grid for a bank

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Bank Statement Load detail grid for a bank. You can find definitions for the fields and controls later on this page.

Bank Statement Load					
Detail					
Bank Statement Type	As Of Date	Bank Code	External Bank ID	Bank Account #	Cycle Status
Previous Day	03/07/2013	CHBK2	00700	115201849174	Not Loaded
Previous Day	03/07/2013	CHBK2	00700	115201849175	Not Loaded
Previous Day	03/07/2013	CHBK2	00700	115201849173	Not Loaded

### Dashboard Configuration - Payment by Source Page

Use the Dashboard Configuration - Payment by Source page (TR\_DASH\_02\_CFG) to configure the payments charts

## Navigation

### Treasury Dashboards

Click the Payments link or, after displaying the charts, click the Update Configuration link on the Treasury Dashboards page.

### Image: Dashboard Configuration - Payment by Source page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Dashboard Configuration - Payment by Source page.

**Dashboard Configuration - Payment by Source**

Date Options:

Start Date:

End Date:

Business Unit		View 1   <input type="button" value="Refresh"/>	1 of 1
1	<input type="text" value="FRAE1"/> <input type="button" value="Search"/>	<input type="button" value="+"/>	<input type="button" value="-"/>

Payment Source		View 1   <input type="button" value="Refresh"/>	1-3 of 3
1	<input type="text" value="AP"/> <input type="button" value="Search"/>	<input type="button" value="+"/>	<input type="button" value="-"/>
2	<input type="text" value="CM"/> <input type="button" value="Search"/>	<input type="button" value="+"/>	<input type="button" value="-"/>
3	<input type="text" value="DM"/> <input type="button" value="Search"/>	<input type="button" value="+"/>	<input type="button" value="-"/>

[Save and go back to dashboard](#) [Return to dashboard](#) [Return to menu](#)

### Date Options

Select one of these values.

- *Today*

Payments by source display on the chart based on your system's current date.

- *Specific Date*

Select this option and the Start Date and End Date fields are enabled. Select the start and end dates to which the payment data applies.

### Business Unit

Select one or more business units to which the payment data that appears on the dashboard applies.

Leave this field blank and the system will display payment data on the dashboard for all business units in your system.

### Payment Source

Select one or more payment sources to which the payment data that appears on the dashboard applies.

Leave this field blank and the system will display payment data on the dashboard for all payment sources.

### **Payments by Payment Source Chart**

Use the Payments by Payment Source chart to view payments by source.

Click on a chart point to access detail information. The information appears in a grid in a new window.

### **Payments by Payment Status Chart**

Use the Payments by Payment Status chart to view payments by status.

This chart uses the Dashboard Configuration - Payment by Source page to display the total payment amount based on the status of the payments.

Click on a chart point to access detail information. The information appears in a grid in a new window.

### **Payments by Bank Chart**

Use the Payments by Bank to view payments by bank.

This chart uses the Dashboard Configuration - Payment by Source page to configure the data for Payments by Bank to display the total payment amounts for each of your organization's banks that have payments associated with them.

Click on a chart point to access detail information. The information appears in a grid in a new window.

### **Payments by Payment Method Chart**

Use the Payments by Payment Method chart to view payments by method of payment, for example, EFT, direct debit, or wire transfer.

## **Dashboard Configuration - Deals Page**

Use the Dashboard Configuration - Deals page (TR\_DASH\_03\_CFG) to configure to display the investment mix, debt mix, fixed versus floating rate investments, fixed versus floating rate debt, and open foreign exchange contracts dashboards.

## Navigation

Treasury Dashboards

Click the Deals link, or after displaying the charts, click the Update Configuration link on the Treasury Dashboards page.

### Image: Dashboard Configuration - Deals page

This example illustrates the fields and controls on the Dashboard Configuration - Deals page.

**Dashboard Configuration - Deals**

Start Date   End Date

Time Interval

Short Term Days

Display Currency

**Exchange Rate Information**

Market Rate Index

Rate Type

Currency Effective Date

[Save and go back to dashboard](#) [Return to dashboard](#) [Return to menu](#)

#### Start Date and End Date

Select a start and end date to apply to the data that appears on the Fixed Rate vs. Floating Rate chart.

#### Time Interval

Select the appropriate time interval for which you want the chart to see data.

#### Define Time Series

Define monthly, quarterly, half-yearly or yearly time intervals based on business calendars.

---

**Important!** Open Foreign Exchange Contracts do not use time intervals.

---

## Investment Mix Chart

Use the Investment Mix chart to view short-term and long-term investments.

Click on a chart point to access detail information. The information appears in a grid in a new window.

## Debt Mix Chart

Use the Debt Mix page (TR\_DASH\_DEAL) to display the investment mix deals detail and summary data.

Click on a chart point to access detail information. The information appears in a grid in a new window.

### **Fixed vs. Floating Rate Investments Chart**

Use the Fixed vs. Floating Rate Investments chart to view fixed versus floating rate investments.

This chart displays the fixed rate versus the floating rate investment amounts within a selected time series.

Click on a chart point to access detail information. The information appears in a grid in a new window.

### **Fixed vs. Floating Rate Debt Chart**

Use the the Fixed vs. Floating Rate Debt chart to view fixed versus floating rate debts.

This chart compares the total amount of debt accumulated based on a fixed interest rate versus a floating interest rate within a selected time series.

Click on a chart point to access detail information. The information appears in a grid in a new window.

### **Open Foreign Exchange Contracts Chart**

Use the Open Foreign Exchange Contracts page to view open FX contracts.

This chart displays the amount of open foreign currency exchange contract bought or sold by an organization on a given date.

Click on a chart point to access detail information. The information appears in a grid in a new window.

## **Dashboard Configuration - Time Series Page**

Use the Dashboard Configuration - Time Series page (TR\_DASH\_03\_CFG2) to select a time series to apply to the Fixed vs. Floating Rate Investments and Fixed vs. Floating Rate Debt dashboards.

### **Navigation**

Click the Define Time Series link on the Dashboard Configuration - Deals page.



# Configuring Batch Processes for Cash Management

---

## Configuring Temporary Tables for Batch Processing

When you run batch processes in parallel, you risk data contention and deadlocks on temporary tables. To avoid this, PeopleTools enables you to dedicate specific instances of temporary tables for each process. When PeopleSoft Application Engine manages a dedicated temporary table instance, it controls the locking of the table before use and the unlocking of the table after use.

When you decide how many temporary table instances to dedicate for a process, consider the number of temporary tables that the process uses. More instances result in more copies of the temporary tables on the system. For example, if a process uses 25 temporary tables and you have 10 instances for a process, you will have 250 temporary tables on the system.

If you run processes in parallel and all of the dedicated temporary table instances are in use, the performance of the process decreases. You need to find a balance that works for your organization.

---

**Note:** When you specify the number of instances, PeopleSoft Application Designer displays a list of the temporary tables for the process. Use the list to determine how many temporary tables each process uses.

---

Specify how many temporary table instances to dedicate for each of the following batch processes that can run in parallel in Cash Management:

- Bank Statement Accounting (TR\_STMTACCTG).
- IHB (in-house banking) Interest Accruals (TR\_TRINTACU)
- Netting Auto Selection (TR\_NET\_ASEL).
- Netting Closing (TR\_NET\_ARCLS {library run from AP\_APY2015}).
- Netting Closing (TR\_NET\_CLOSE {library run from AP\_APY2015}).
- Cash Position/Position Monitor (TR\_POS\_TOTAL).
- Pool Transaction Information (TRP\_TXN\_XFM)
- Investment Pool Income Distribution (TRP\_INC\_DIST)
- PeopleSoft Cash Management to JD Edwards General Accounting integration (TR\_JRNL\_INT)

The PeopleTools documentation discusses the usage of temporary tables in detail and describes how to specify the number of instances. See the product documentation for *PeopleTools: Application Engine*.

If you run any of the General Ledger COBOL processes, also configure the temporary tables for those processes. The documentation for *PeopleSoft General Ledger* discusses how to do this in detail.



## Appendix A

# Delivered Workflows for Cash Management

---

## Delivered Workflows for Cash Management

This section discusses Cash Management workflows. The workflows are listed alphabetically by workflow name.

### Settlement Selection and Settlement Approval

This section discusses the Settlement Selection and Settlement Approval workflows.

Note that these workflows are separate workflows that use the same pages and processes.

#### Description

<i>Information Type</i>	<i>Description</i>
Event Description	When you select a settlement on the Select Settlements page, or approve a settlement on the Approve Settlements page.  <b>Note:</b> The Select Settlements and Approve Settlements page have the same object name (STL_SELECTION).
Action Description	Routes names of selected or approved settlements to an assigned user's worklist.
Notification Method	Worklist
Active or Inactive	Active

#### Workflow Objects

<i>Information Type</i>	<i>Description</i>
Approval Rule Set	Execute Treasury Settlements
Business Process	Managing Cash (TR_MANAGE_CASH)
Activity	Execute Treasury Settlements
Role	In PeopleTools Application Designer, you can edit the delivered approval rule set to change the assigned roles.



## Appendix B

# Cash Management Reports

## Cash Management Reports: A to Z

This table lists the BI Publisher reports provided with Cash Management, sorted alphanumerically by report ID.

<b>Report ID and Report Name</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Navigation</b>	<b>Run Control Page</b>
FSX3003 Fees & Interest	View miscellaneous transaction details for a specified bank ID, bank account, and statement ID number.	Cash Management, Reports, Fees and Interest	RUN_FIN3003
TRX1000 Accounting Entries	View comprehensive accounting entry information for a specified business unit and accounting ID.	Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Reports, Accounting Entries Report	RUN_TRC1000
TRX1001 Substitution Rule Definition	List detailed information for a Substitution Rule: overall definition information, field names and test/substitution values.	Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Reports, Substitution Rule Definition	RUN_TRX1001
TRX1002 Substitution Rule Templates	List all accounting templates associated with a substitution rule.	Cash Management, Treasury Accounting, Reports, Substitution Rule Templates	RUN_TRX1002
TRX1010 Settlement Instructions	View settlement instruction information for all settlement IDs of a specified setID.	Cash Management, Reports, Settlement Instructions	RUN_TRC1010
TRX1014 Cash Flow Settlements	List bank, account, and settlement information for cash flows of a specified business unit and time period.	Cash Management, Reports, Cash Flow Settlements	RUN_TRC1014
TRX3005 In-House Bank Statement	Lists transaction and interest accrual activity for a specified bank and account during a defined time frame.	Cash Management, In-House Banking, In-House Bank Statements	RUN_TRC3005
TRX4000 Netting Balance List	Lists comprehensive balance information for all nets of a specified netting status and time period.	Cash Management, Reports, Netting Balance List	RUN_TRC4000

<b>Report ID and Report Name</b>	<b>Description</b>	<b>Navigation</b>	<b>Run Control Page</b>
TRX4010 Netting Advice Balance Summary	Lists total receivable, total payable, and total net amounts for a specified netting status and time period. The amounts are formatted for faxing.	Cash Management, Report, Netting Advice Summary	RUN_TRC4010
TRX4020 Netting Advice Balance Detail	Lists detailed information (such as accounts payable/ accounts receivable association, business unit, gross amount, and net amount) for all nets of a specified netting status and timeframe.	Cash Management, Report, Netting Advice Detail	RUN_TRC4020
TRX4050 Fee Structures	Shows comprehensive fee structure information for a specified bank code, including the fee description, type, minimum and maximum ranges, and rate and price information.	Banking, Account Analysis, Fee Structures Report	RUN_TRC4050
TRX4100 Participant Positions by Pool	Lists the positions of investment pools and the positions of each pool's participants for a specified business unit.	Cash Management, Reports, Participant Positions by Pool	RUN_TRC4100
TRX5000 Cash Sweep Structure	Lists detailed information for a cash sweep structure, includes the master bank account, overall cash sweep processing attributes, sub-accounts, sub-account processing attributes and audit information.	Cash Management, Cash Sweep, Reports, Cash Sweep Structure	RUN_TRX5000
TRX5001 Cash Sweep Bank Accounts	Lists all of the cash sweep structures associated with a given bank account and whether the account is the master bank account or subaccount in the structure.	Cash Management, Cash Sweep, Reports, Cash Sweep Bank Accounts	RUN_TRX5001
TRX5002 Cash Sweep Summary	Summarizes cash sweep amounts within a cash sweep structure by bank account.	Cash Management, Cash Sweep, Reports, Cash Sweep Summary	RUN_TRX5002
TRX5003 Denied Cash Sweep Payments	Run the Denied Cash Sweep Payments report.	Cash Management, Cash Sweep, Reports, Denied Cash Sweep Payments	RUN_TRX5003